DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 113 924 FL 004 890

AUTHOR Sebeok, Thomas A.
TITLE Spoken Hungarian. Books One and Two.
PUB DATE 45
NOTE 499p.
AVAILABLE FROM Spoken Language Services, Inc., P.O. Box 783, Ithaca, N.Y. 14850 (HC $12.00, Key to Exercises for Units 1-30 $1.50, Records $47.00, Complete Course: Book, Key, Records $55.00)

EDRS PRICE MF-$0.92 Plus Postage. HC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS Audiolingual Skills; Autoinstructional Aids; Conversational Language Courses; Grammar; *Hungarian; *Instructional Materials; *Language Instruction; Oral Communication; Pronunciation; *Second Language Learning; Speech Skills; *Textbooks; Uncommonly Taught Languages; Vocabulary

ABSTRACT

This is one of a series of self-teaching textbooks initially prepared for the Armed Forces and now offered to the public. Book 1 is divided into two main parts, each consisting of five learning units and one review unit. Each unit centers around a particular topic and is divided into the following sections: basic sentences, with hints on pronunciation; word study and review of basic sentences; further review of basic sentences; listening (pronunciation exercises); and two sections on conversation. A "finder list" follows each unit, listing all the vocabulary introduced in the unit. Book 2 is divided into three main sections, each consisting of five learning units and a unit of review. The unit format is similar to that in Book 1. The emphasis is on speaking rather then on reading or writing, and each unit in both books is designed to be used with a native speaker of the language or to be accompanied by recordings. A Hungarian-English, English-Hungarian glossary closes the text. (CLK)

****
* Documents acquired by ERIC include many informal unpublished *
* materials not available from other sources. ERIC makes every effort *
* to obtain the best copy available. Nevertheless, items of marginal *
* reproducibility are often encountered and this affects the quality *
* of the microfiche and hardcopy reproductions ERIC makes available *
* via the ERIC Document Reproduction Service (EDRS). EDRS is not *
* responsible for the quality of the original document. Reproductions *
* supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made from the original. *
****

ED113924
FL004890

Spoken Hungarian

by THOMAS A. SEBEOK

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL BY MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
Spoken Language Services, Inc
TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE COPYRIGHT OWNER."

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH,
EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
EDUCATION
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY

E

Spoken Language Services, Inc.

2

The Armed Forces edition of this book was published by the Linguistic Society of America and the Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies.

Copyright, 1944 and 1945, by Linguistic
Society of America

03-017600-X

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America

Book One

GENERAL FOREWORD

This is one of a series of self-teaching textbooks in more than thirty languages initially prepared and published for the Armed Forces and now offered to the general public. Like every other book in the series, it is the product of team-work between numerous collaborators. The authors of the various books have conformed throughout to the patterns developed by the experience of the group.

A brief review of the origin and growth of the program to produce these texts will not only be of general interest in itself but will also provide some indications of the manner in which they may be most efficiently used as well as some of the limitations of their employment.

Early in 1942, within a month of Pearl Harbor, the Joint Army and Navy Committee on Welfare and Recreation began consideration of the means whereby large numbers of troops might be instructed in the colloquial forms of the numerous languages spoken in the areas in which they were likely to be employed. A survey of materials already available for such instruction confirmed their suspected inadequacy. Many of the pertinent languages had never been taught in the United States; few of them had ever been studied or described by competent linguists. Only the unusual textbook was designed to teach the spoken forms to linguistically untrained students, and even when a book was available, it was, as often as not, written in French, German, or Dutch, or for some other reason, not susceptible of general use. Consequently, the first necessity was a program of basic implementation which would provide materials, as nearly uniform throughout the various idioms as practicable, for elementary teaching of spoken language to Americans without special linguistic training or, indeed, aptitude. The form of the materials had to be such that they could be used for self-instruction in situations where no competent teachers were available.

There had been little study of most of these languages in America. But the Army and Navy fortunately did not have to start completely from scratch, for several months previously the American Council of Learned Societies had organized its Intensive Language Program for the purpose of developing teachers, teaching materials, and instruction in all languages not normally taught in the United States, yet likely to be necessary in the war effort. Most of the competent technical linguists in the country were gradually being absorbed into this Intensive Language Program through their membership in the Linguistic Society of America, that constituent of the Council most concerned with this subject-matter. The Joint Army-Navy Committee drew the Intensive Language Program into its deliberations and planned a development of language instruction for the Armed Forces. Responsibility for the prosecution of this development was entrusted to the Army Education Branch of what is now the Information and Education Division, A.S.F., functioning through its subsidiaries, the Language Section and the Editorial Staff of the United States Armed Forces Institute. These in turn called upon the Intensive Language Program of the Council for coöperation in the production of materials, a coöperation which has since been so intimate that it is impossible to tell what proportion of any single operation is the responsibility of each.

The series of more than thirty language textbooks is one result of this coöperative effort. Each textbook is designed to provide materials for approximately the first two hundred hours of language study. It is divided into thirty learning units, the first twelve of which are accompanied by twenty-four double faced recordings of the foreign language material contained in them. Mastery of the thirty units will give the student not only a sufficient general vocabulary to perform all the language operations necessary for everyday life but enough skill in the manipulation of this vocabulary to provide adequate control of it. It is with respect to this latter—manipulation of the elements known—that most language instruction is weak. While the primary emphasis is upon the spoken tongue, the student should have begun reading well before the conclusion of the thirtieth unit, normally probably at about the twelfth, excepting in those cases where the spoken and the written forms are widely divergent.

The group responsible for the creation of this series believes that ideally one learns a foreign language most efficiently when taught intensively by a bi-lingual trained technical linguist while resident in the country to which the language is native. Since this happy state of affairs hardly ever exists, in practice recourse must be had to various successive approximations to it.

approximations in which one or more of the desirable elements is attenuated or entirely wanting. This present series—text and records—is designed to be useful at the very lowest level of language learning, that is to say to the single student working by himself. In this case, the text takes the place of the trained linguist, and the records double for the native-speaker. Naturally, better results are obtained when, either in individual or classroom work, a native-speaker is available and utilized as the texts direct. Here the text takes the place of the trained linguist; the records are still very valuable but not absolutely essential. These latter are the conditions under which the series has most commonly been successfully used. So on for successive approximations to the ideal, and even when this is reached, the selected materials and the pedagogic devices provided by these texts will be useful.

Prosecution of the war created the need for these materials to teach *spoken* language. Perhaps it is not to be assumed that under peacetime conditions the demand for speaking, as against reading or writing, competence will be of the same order. Fortunately the several competences are not incompatible; indeed, a very substantial body of proof exists that the acquisition of spoken competence in a foreign language is the most efficient first step towards the others. In addition there seems reason to believe that the second-half of the twentieth century will see much increased concern for instruction in *speaking* foreign languages, not only as the road to *reading* them but because the acquisition and the possession of colloquial control of a language not one's own is a humanistic educational experience in its own right not requiring justification by other criteria, because properly taught it is the most easily acquired of the several competences, because the multitude of foreign language broadcasts will dispose of the alleged uselessness of teaching spoken language to students who will never visit the countries in question, and because many more Americans than ever before will exercise their trades and professions abroad.

The coöperative nature of this enterprise can hardly be over-emphasized; not only has practically every listed author coöperated in the production of elements of the series other than his own, but also many of the most valued collaborators do not appear as authors at all. Linguistic scientists provided the descriptive analyses of the several languages; professional language teachers furnished pedagogical devices; specialists in education assisted in ordering the materials in accordance with the best principles of learning; printers, editors, and textbook designers contributed their specialized competences; technicians in the recording of sound made possible success in the exceedingly exacting operation of keying the records to the printed texts. Under such conditions it would seem almost invidious to cite the names of those collaborators, in addition to authors, whose contributions are more readily identifiable than those of others. Yet for the sake of the record, perhaps this should be done. The Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies, without which this series would not have been possible or would have been of completely different character, owes its existence to Mortimer Graves, Administrative Secretary of the Council. Colonel Francis T. Spaulding, Chief of the Army Education Branch above referred to, saw the implications of teaching language to American troops and assumed the responsibility for developing a program to this end. The detailed planning and construction of the series now presented owes more to Major (then Lieutenant) Henry Lee Smith, Jr., Chief of the Language Section in the Education Branch than to anyone else. Constant liaison with the Intensive Language Program was maintained through J. Milton Cowan, its director during the preparation of the series. William E. Spaulding directed the Editorial Staff of the United States Armed Forces Institute. The dean of American linguistic scientists, Leonard Bloomfield of Yale University, gave unstintingly in many ways—ways as difficult to appreciate too highly as they are to describe succinctly. Almost the same may be said of Lt. Morris Swadesh, Lt. Charles Hockett, Robert A. Hall, Jr., Norman A. McQuown, Doris Goss: José Padín, and others who served from time to time on a special advisory and editorial board.

The series is offered in the hope that it may modestly conduce to the improvement of teaching the speaking of foreign languages to Americans. The authors make no claim to perfection, indeed they are rather appalled at the task which they set themselves, and their pride in completing it under the existent conditions is tinctured with humility at the thought of the imperfections which must sooner or later come to light. But through the discovery of these imperfections will come progress, and nobody will be more greatly pleased than the collaborators on this enterprise if, a decade from now, the teaching of spoken foreign languages in America shall have reached such a developed stage that their first efforts will seem obsolete.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE

This book began in the summer of 1943 as a solo performance. The first twelve units were hardly completed and recorded when the opportunity presented itself to the author to test the materials while teaching Hungarian in the Army Specialized Training Program at Indiana University. The book grew, thereafter, unit by unit, week by week, under the benefit of constant criticism on the part of the trainees. To their patience with the growing pains of a frankly experimental course, to their hearty, cooperative enthusiasm, this work owes whatever animation it may have. My three Hungarian assistants, who served as Guides in the Army course — Mrs. Martha Neufeld, Miss Adrienne Segedy and Miss Elizabeth Sugar — have variously contributed their wits as well as native tongues. Professor Bela Bachkai's profound and minute knowledge of Hungarian affairs was available to draw upon at all times. Mrs. Maria Török, Head of the Hungarian Desk at the Language Section, Information and Education Division, A.S.F., whose dramatic verve supplies the colloquial sprightliness of the later units, and Pfc. Georges Faludy, on temporary duty with the Language Section, whose poetic imagination enhances them, devoted several weeks of their valuable time to a thankless task of rechecking and revising. Professor Robert A. Hall, Jr., saw the book through the press and improved, by his knowledge of Hungarian linguistics, the 'Word Study' sections particularly.

Because of the necessity for prompt publication of this first edition for the U.S.A.F.I., certain minor imperfections which were judged relatively unimportant were not smoothed out. The student is referred to the Hungarian Grammar by Robert A. Hall, Jr. (*Language Monograph* No. 21, published by the Linguistic Society of America, 1944), to be used at the completion of this course as a guide to advanced study.

Thomas A. Sebeok

February 1, 1945

INTRODUCTION

1. What We Are Trying to Do. This course in spoken Hungarian is designed as an introduction to the Hungarian language. It contains all the essential grammatical materials for learning to speak everyday Hungarian, and its vocabulary, though small, is built around a number of the most useful common situations and current topics. It is based on the principle that you must *hear* a language if you are to understand it when spoken, and that you must practice *specking* it in order to master its sounds and forms.

A teacher of Hungarian will not always be available for those whom this book is written for. So the course has been made as nearly self-teaching as possible. This manual covers the course completely and requires no other reference material. It explains in detail what the group is to do, and provides the material to work with.

2. The Hungarian Language is spoken by about thirteen million people in Hungary, and the adjoining section of Slovakia, Rumania, and Yugoslavia.

Variations in language are perfectly natural and are found in every language in the world. When these variations are small they are nothing to worry about. All the people you meet in Hungary will understand the kind of Hungarian presented in this manual, and a great many of them, especially in the larger towns and cities and among the fairly well educated, will speak it exactly as you find it here. The people in the country areas and even some of the people in the cities may, however, speak a slightly different kind of Hungarian. So do not be surprised if the pronunciation you hear does not quite match what is given to you in this manual or what you hear in this course. Imitate the person with whom you are speaking. He, in turn, will do his best to pronounce so that he can be understood. Likewise, do not be surprised at the use of gestures; they are a normal accompaniment to the language; use the gestures yourself, if you can imitate them.

3. How to Use This Manual. To help you in learning to speak Hungarian, you need only a native speaker of the language and this book. The two must be used together, and neither one is of any use without the other.

This manual is organized so that it can be used for study by yourself or in a group. The group may or may not have a regular teacher; if you have none, choose one of your own number (called the *Group Leader*) to lead the others and to direct the work.

4. A Native Speaker is the only good source of first-hand knowledge of the pronunciation and usage of any language. The method used in this manual requires a native speaker of Hungarian, preferably one who can be on hand throughout the course, or next best, the voice of a native speaker recorded on phonograph records which are supplied with this manual. But even when a native speaker is present during the course, the records can always be used for additional practice between the regular meetings of the group. The native speaker of Hungarian is referred to as the Guide. He will give you the Hungarian to imitate, and will check your work; but he is *not* the teacher and should not be asked to explain the material. The manual will furnish the explanations, as far as explanations can be given. For the most part, one has to accept languages as they are — what is said is correct, but why it isn't said another way, no one can answer. The Guide should be neither overeducated, nor too uneducated. He should speak naturally and without affectation.

5. The Book is divided into parts consisting of five learning units and one review unit each. Each unit contains several sections. It is expected that the group will spend about fifty minutes on each section. Some of this time will be spent working individually on the materials, but for the most part the group will meet as a whole with the Leader and the Guide. The time schedule gives only a general idea, since the ability and previous preparation of the group members, the time they have to work by themselves, and other differences of rate of work will largely determine how much time is needed on any part. Here are the main divisions:

A. Basic Sentences (with Hints on Pronunciation)
B. Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences
C. Further Review of Basic Sentences
D. Listening In
E. Conversation
F. Further Conversation

These six sections are followed in each learning unit by a Finder List containing all the new words in the particular unit.

6. The Basic Sentences in each unit are arranged so as to give you a number of new words and a number of new ways of saying things; first broken up into words or short phrases, and then combined in complete sentences. On the printed page, they are presented in parallel columns, with the English equivalents on the left, the Aids to Listening (a representation in our alphabet of the Hungarian sounds) in the center in Part I, and the ordinary Hungarian spelling on the right throughout the manual.

Always work through the Basic Sentences with the Guide or the phonograph records in the manner described in Unit I. Never try to read them by yourselves until you have been through them several times with the Guide or records to imitate. You are to learn these expressions by heart, so the more you concentrate on them in the group, the less work will be left for you to do on your own.

7. The Aids to Listening represent the sounds of Hungarian in the letters of our alphabet. They do not attempt to represent a letter by letter transcription of the Hungarian alphabet; instead each letter or group of letters stands for one sound, and whenever this sound occurs it will be represented in the same way. Though Hungarian spelling is more consistent than our English spelling. you will learn the sounds fastest if you follow the Aids to Listening as the Guide reads the Hungarian. After you are familiar with the sounds, you can begin to work on reading the conventional spelling.

8. The Hints on Pronunciation are to help you to speak as nearly as possible like a native Hungarian. No language has sounds exactly like any other; and in Hungarian you will find some sounds that are unlike any in English. The Hints on Pronunciation will point out some of the differences between English and Hungarian pronunciation of similar sounds and will tell you something about how to make the unfamiliar sounds. You can then imitate the Guide in special practice on the sounds discussed. These practice sections will follow the first reading of the Basic Sentences. On the next repetition of the Basic Sentences you can watch for other examples of the sounds practiced.

9. Pronouncing to be Understood. Of course the better you can pronounce Hungarian, the more easily Hungarians can understand you. You must get away from your English speech habits as much as possible. The Hints on Pronunciation should help you with the more difficult points, but for the most part you must rely on imitating the speech of the Guide as completely as possible. Some of you will be better mimics than others, but you must all imitate tones of voice, gestures and all other peculiarities of pronunciation that you can detect. A thorough-going imitation of your Guide will please him with its accuracy rather than offend him. Remember that when you are talking to foreigners, it is the differences between your speech and theirs that seem funny to you; if they imitated your speech more closely, you'd forget that they were foreigners. Put your whole effort into a complete imitation of your Guide, and take advantage of every opportunity to mimic him, either working with the group, or reciting alone.

10. The Native Speaker is Always Right. If the manual or the records indicate a pronunciation different from that of your Guide, follow the Guide. No two speakers of any language say exactly the same things in exactly the same way. Your Guide is a native speaker, understood by other speakers of Hungarian, and from him you can learn much more about the pronunciation than you can from reading the Aids to Listening or listening to the records. You can watch his lips and facial expressions and gestures as he talks. Use him always as the model for your Hungarian.

v

11. The Word Study gives you new uses and new combinations of materials studied up to that point. You are taught how words are built up, so that you can make other forms on the same pattern, and can express more than the set phrases you have memorized. The phrases you learn are the models used for the Word Study, so that much of the discussion is merely pointing out ways of expression with which you are very likely already familiar.

12. The Listening In gives you a number of conversations, anecdotes, or stories, which use the vocabulary and constructions you have learned. No new vocabulary is introduced, but you meet new combinations and can test your understanding of the language by trying to interpret it as the Guide speaks and you repeat after him. The conversations in this section will give you further models for practicing your own conversations.

13. Conversation represents the principal aim of the course. You should know by heart all the material of the Basic Sentences, and all the work covered in previous units. Then, when you take part in the conversation, try to talk as easily and naturally as you can, and see how much you can say, how many different things you can talk about, using only the material given so far. It is important especially at the beginning of the course, that you should keep close to the models that you have learned, but change the subject of discussion as much as you can. Do not ask the Guide for new materials besides those given here. You have enough to learn thoroughly without adding to it.

14. In Speaking Hungarian do *not* think out what you want to say in English and try to translate it into Hungarian. Instead, think in terms of the expressions you have memorized that apply to the situation. Keep the conversation going by asking questions in turn as well as answering them. Avoid long and complicated sentences, or you will find yourself lapsing into English word-order and English habits of speech. Use instead patterns that you are sure of, and try always to think of how the Guide would say them.

When you are talking to a Hungarian who uses words and expressions that you do not know, try to ask him in Hungarian to explain what he means. You will learn more this way. Take advantage of every opportunity during the course and after you have completed it, to talk with speakers of Hungarian in their language. Carry along a notebook and jot down new phrases that you want to remember. During spare time waiting for someone, you can review the material. Always listen closely to the pronunciation of native speakers, and imitate them. As soon as you relax and forget to try to talk like them, you will lapse back into the English habits that you have been practicing all your life.

CONTENTS

PART ONE

UNIT — Page

1. Getting Around. Pronunciation: General description of simpler vowels and consonants. 1

2. Meeting People. Pronunciation: Vowels **ü, ö, ő.** 27
   Word Study: **-t** suffix of direct object. 34

3. What's Your Trade? Pronunciation: **dy, ddy, y, yy.** 44
   Word Study: **-k** suffix of plurality (and **-k** plus **-t**). Hungarian surnames. **vagyok** *I am* with and without **én** *I;* omission of "to be" in equational sentence. 51

4. Where Are You From? Pronunciation: **r, dy, st, ty, tty.** 63
   Word Study: Vowel harmony, front and back vowels, and **i** and **é**. **ban/-ben, -ra/-re, -ba/-be, -ul/-ül, -nál/-nél.** 72

5. Let's Talk about the Weather. Pronunciation: **ch, tts**; long consonants; summary of conversion to Conventional Spelling. 84
   Word Study: 2nd sg **te,** polite **ön,** also **maga** and their omission, 3rd pers **ő**; **-val/-vel, -tól/-től, -ig.** 94

6. Review. 105

PART TWO

UNIT | Page

7. A PLACE TO LIVE. Pronunciation: Hungarian **zs, tc, s, sz, z.** 112
Word Study: **-kor, -ból/-ből;** noun stems, vowel and consonant and subgroups addressing a letter. 119

8. SPRUCING UP. Pronunciation: long vowels **é, á, ó, ő; ö, ő, ü; r;** long and double consonants; combinations, i.e. unvoicing before voiceless, and voicing before voiced **sz + s** and **z + s = ss** between vowels. 129
Word Study: possessive suffixes; **-hoz/-höz/-hez, -ról/-ről** numerals by tens (**-van/-ven**); **-ba/-be.** 139

9. LET'S EAT. Pronunciation: combinations: **t + s, d + s, ty + s, gy + s = ccs** or **cs; t, d, ty, gy + zs = cc** or **c; t, d, ty, gy + z = ddz** or **dz; t, ty + j = tty** or **ty; d, gy + j = ggy** or **gy; n, ny + j = nny; l + j = jj. ö, ő, ü.** 150
Word Study: possessive suffixes with plural nouns, reference to tables in appendix. **ez, az** plus endings. 157

10. SEEING THE SIGHTS. Word Study: numbers cardinal and ordinal. **-szor/-ször/-szer; -nak/-nek; -on/-ön/-en.** Table of nine suffixes. 167

11. SHOPPING. Word Study: infinitive ending **-ni,** with possessive endings. Telling time, giving dates. Prepositional relations with pronouns. 185

12. REVIEW. 207

PART ONE

UNIT 1

GETTING AROUND

To the Group Leader: Each *Unit* of this course is divided into six *Sections.* It is suggested that the group spend not less than fifty minutes on each Section.

Before you get the group together to work on this first unit, read carefully the following material up to the heading *Useful Words and Phrases* on page 4. When the group meets, read the material aloud to them or have some other member of the group do the reading. The students will follow the reading with their books open. Be sure that your Guide, or the phonograph and records, are ready before the group meets for work on Section A. See that the Guide is supplied with a copy of the manual *Utasitások a Vezető Számára*, which tells him just what he is to do and gives him the Hungarian he is to speak to the group.

You should look through all of the sections of the unit, reading the directions carefully, so that you will have in mind the general plan of the work. Always get clearly in mind the directions for a section before you take that section up in group meeting.

This unit gives you the most immediate and necessary expressions that you will need in meeting people, asking your way, buying things, and counting. The amount of learning and memorizing required for the first unit is considerably greater than that for any later unit. You are given such a large dose at the start because this unit is meant to be a kind of "language first aid" which gives you enough useful expressions to enable you to make ordinary wants known and to carry on a simple conversation in Hungarian from the very start.

All but a few of these words and phrases are selected from the phonograph records for the *Hungarian Language Guide* (Introductory Series) (TM 30–316). If you have worked with these records, the present unit will serve as a review.

SECTION A — USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

In the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* which follows, the English equivalent of these words and phrases is given at the left of the page. Opposite, in the middle column, is a simplified spelling of the Hungarian which will help you in getting the sounds. In the third column is the ordinary or *conventional* Hungarian spelling. The

Leader of the group will first read the *English Equivalent* and pause for the *Guide* to speak the Hungarian. Every member of the group then repeats after the Guide. The Guide will then say the Hungarian a second time and everybody will repeat after him as before. The Leader will then read the next English equivalent and the Guide and group will follow the procedure indicated.

If no Guide is available, the ***phonograph records*** provided for the course should be used. When the group is ready, the Leader will begin playing the appropriate record and the group will repeat right after the Hungarian speaker during the silences on the record. The phonograph records can be used with profit even in cases where a Guide is available because they can be heard between meetings of the group, whenever it is convenient to you; they furnish additional practice in hearing Hungarian; you may listen only to those portions which you have found difficult; and the records may be played as often as you wish. In case the speaker on the record has a Hungarian pronunciation different from that of your Guide, use the records only for listening and understanding and not for imitating.

Whether you are working with a Guide or only with the phonograph records, you must repeat each Hungarian word and phrase in a loud, clear voice, trying at all times to imitate the pronunciation as closely as you can. Keep constantly in mind the meaning of the Hungarian you are about to hear, glancing at the English equivalent whenever you need to remind yourself. When you are hearing the Hungarian, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening*. But whenever the written form seems to you to differ from the spoken sound, follow the spoken sound always.

Learning to understand and pronounce a language is not really hard. Every one of us learned to do this as a child, and all over the world children learn to speak all kinds of languages without any trouble. The difficulty that an adult faces in learning a foreign language as you are now learning Hungarian, is that the adult already has a set of habits for pronouncing his own language and this makes it harder for him to learn new ones than for a child who is starting from scratch. That is why it is so important that you should not be afraid of mimicking even when what you hear may sound strange to you. Don't be afraid to let yourself go. You will never learn to speak a language if you don't plunge right in as soon as you can. Never mind if you do make mistakes at first. The important thing is for you to try to say the words and phrases. Imitate your Guide with the same spirit and enthusiasm that you use in mimicking a person whose speech sounds peculiar to you. You will find that if you do this, your Guide will not think you are making fun of him; instead he will probably smile because what you have said to him sounds like Hungarian.

In the first five units, do not attempt under any circumstances to pronounce the Hungarian before you have heard it. You will only make trouble for yourself if you try to guess the pronunciation by "reading" the *Aids to Listening* or the conventional Hungarian spelling.

If you are working with a Guide who does not understand English, ask the Leader of your group to demonstrate for you and the Guide what hand signals are to be used to let the Guide know when you want him to read more slowly or to repeat. They are as follows:

1. Index finger raised: BEGIN
2. Hand raised, palm toward the Guide: STOP
3. Palm down, hand moved slowly in semi-circle: SLOWER
4. Beckoning with index finger: REPEAT
5. Hand held palm up and moved quickly up and down: LOUDER

Remember that each phrase you say has a real meaning in Hungarian and hence you should always act as though you were really saying something to someone else. You will learn fastest if, when your book is open, you follow these steps:

1. Keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening* as you listen to the Hungarian being spoken.
2. Repeat immediately what you have heard.
3. Keep in mind the meaning of what you are saying.

Begin the words and phrases as soon as your Guide is ready or when the Leader of your group is ready to play the first phonograph record.

To the Group Leader: Give the members of the group a chance to ask questions about the instructions. Make sure that everyone understands just what he is to do. Then have the students go through the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* once with the books open, repeating in unison after the Guide. Following this first practice, read with the group the *Comment on the Aids to Listening* on page 7. Make sure that everyone understands it.

Now go through the list a second time, much as you did before. And finally, go through it a third time, but let the students take turns repeating individually after the Guide—a sentence to a student. Indicate the order in which the repetitions are to go, who is first, who next, and so on. Continue this individual repetition as long as the fifty-minute period permits. Then, just before dismissing the group, read with them the paragraph headed *Check Yourself* on page 7.

Here are some hints that will make the work of the group more effective:

1. Insist that everyone speak up. Don't allow any mumbling! Each member of the group must be able to hear what is being said at all times.
2. Indicate to the Guide that he is to repeat whenever the pronunciation is bad and to keep on repeating until he gets a pronunciation that sounds like Hungarian.
3. Urge everyone to mimic to the limit every sound, every inflection, even the mannerisms of the Guide.
4. Keep the work moving. Don't let it drag at any time. See that everyone is listening, not only to the Guide, but to himself and to the others as they repeat after the Guide.
5. Go through all the work yourself. Repeat with the others and take your turn at the individual repetitions.

1. Useful Words and Phrases

Here is a list of useful words and phrases you will need in Hungarian. *You should learn these by heart.*

Greetings and General Phrases

NOTE: Words enclosed in brackets [ ] are not expressed in the Hungarian. Words enclosed in parentheses ( ) help to explain the meaning of the Hungarian but are not necessary in English. Words enclosed in single quotation marks ' ' are literal or word-for-word equivalents.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Record Side 1A, beginning.		
Good morning!	YOO‿reg-gelt!	Jó reggelt!
Good day!	YOO‿na-pot!	Jó napot!
Good evening!	YOO‿eš-teet!	Jó estét!
Good-bye!	VI-sont-LAA-taaš-ra!	Viszontlátásra!
How are you?	HODY‿van?	Hogy van?
thank you	KÖ-sö-nöm	köszönöm
well	YOOL	jól
I am	VA-dyok	vagyok
Thank you, I'm well.	KÖ-sö-nöm, YOOL‿VA-dyok.	Köszönöm, jól vagyok.
Please.	KEE-rem.	Kérem.
I beg your pardon!	BO-čaa-na-tot‿KEE-rek!	Bocsánatot kérek!
It doesn't matter.	NEM‿bay.	Nem baj.

With pleasure.	SI-ve-šen.	Szivesen.
Yes.	I-gen.	Igen.
No.	NEM.	Nem.
I understand.	ER-tem.	Értem.
Yes, I understand.	I-gen, EER-tem.	Igen, értem.
I don't understand.	NE-m‿EER-tem.	Nem értem.
what	MIT	mit
you say	MOND	mond
What do you say?	MIT‿MOND?	Mit mond?
please	KEE-rem	kérem
speak	BE-seey-yen	beszéljen
more slowly	LAŠ-šab-ban	lassabban
Please speak more slowly.	KEE-rem BE-seey-yen‿LAŠ-šab-ban.	Kérem beszéljen lassabban.
do you speak	BE-seel	beszél
English	ANG-go-lul	angolul
Do you speak English?	BE-see-l‿ANG-go-lul?	Beszél angolul?
gentleman	UR	ur
Mr. Kovács	KO-vaa-č‿UR	Kovács ur
lady	UR-as-sony	urasszony
Mrs. Kovács	KO-vaač-NEE	Kovácsné
Miss Kovács	KO-vaač‿KIŠ-as-sony	Kovács kisasszony

where	HOL	hol
is there	VAN	van
a restaurant	edy‿VEN-deeg-löö	egy vendéglő
Where is there a restaurant?	HOL‿va-n‿edy‿VEN-deeg-löö?	Hol van egy vendéglő?
the hotel	a‿SAAL-lo-da	a szálloda
Where is the hotel?	HO-l‿a‿SAAL-lo-da?	Hol a szálloda?
the hotel	a‿SAAL-lo-daat	a szállodát
I'm looking for it	KE-re-šem	keresem
I'm looking for the hotel.	a‿SAAL-lo-daat‿KE-re-šem.	A szállodát keresem.
the railroad station	a-z‿AAL-lo-maaš	az állomás
Where is the railroad station?	HO-l‿a-z‿AAL-lo-maaš?	Hol az állomás?
the toilet	a‿KLO-zet	a klozet
Where is the toilet?	HO-l‿a‿KLO-zet?	Hol a klozet?

Record Side 1B, beginning.

To the right	YOBB-ra	Jobbra.
It's to the right.	YOBB-ra‿van.	Jobbra van.
To the left.	BAL-ra	Balra van.
Straight ahead.	E-dye-ne-še-n‿E‿löö-re.	Egyenesen előre.
Here.	ITT.	Itt.
There.	OTT.	Ott.
Which is the way to . . .?	MER-re‿van . . .?	Merre van . . .?

After you have gone through the *Useful Words and Phrases* once, read the following:

2. Comment on the Aids to Listening

The best way to learn any language is to listen to a native speaker of it, and then copy exactly what he says. That is why we ask you to listen carefully to your Guide (or the speaker on the records) and imitate him as exactly as you can. It would be ideal if you could remember everything he says simply by listening and repeating. However, most of us need to have something on paper to remind us of what we have heard. This is what the *Aids to Listening* are meant for. They are simply an attempt to put down systematically on paper the sounds that you hear on the records or that your Guide will probably say. Remember, however, that they are only *aids* to listening. The listening itself is still the most important thing; the printed material is just a reminder.

In the Aids to Listening capital letters are used to show which syllables in a word or phrase are most strongly accented, that is, spoken the loudest. For example, we would write for English: *mister JONES will conDUCT the SERvice;* or: *his CONduct is VERy BAD.* Notice that words like *MISter, WILL, THE, HIS, IS* are strongly accented if they stand all alone, but they are usually not accented in a sentence.

The hyphen (-) is used to divide a word into the parts that it is made up of. This often affects the pronunciation. For example, when you say the word KÖ-sö-nöm, you clearly finish the KÖ- before you begin the -sö-nöm, and never say anything like KÖS- plus -ö-nöm. This is as if we wrote English *understand* with a hyphen: *under-STAND,* to show a foreigner that he was not to say anything like *unders-TAND.*

This hyphen occurring at the end of a line carries over to the next line.

Now go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* again with your book open, following the same procedure as before. Repeat each word and phrase, immediately after hearing it, in a loud, clear voice. Let yourself go and say the phrases right out.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* once more with your book open, but this time, take turns letting each member of your group repeat individually until everybody has taken part. Keep on the alert. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so with enthusiasm and try to mimic him as best as you can until he is satisfied with your pronunciation. When you have satisfied him, you can be sure that you are speaking understandable Hungarian. Continue this individual repetition as long as time permits. If you are using only the phonograph records, your Leader will see to it that you repeat and that everyone gets the most out of this individual performance.

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* at least twice in unison and at least once more individually?

Did you repeat each word and phrase in a loud, clear voice immediately after hearing it?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even when it was different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Hungarian?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

Here are other useful words and phrases which you will want to use immediately if you are in a country in which the people speak Hungarian. These are being given to you as a "language first aid." *Learn them by heart.*

In working with this material, follow the same procedure that you used with the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Section A. After you have gone through the list once, repeating in unison, read the following *Hints on Pronunciation.* Run through the *Pronunciation Practices.* Then go through the list a second and a third time, as in Section A.

SECTION B—USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES (*Cont.*)

1. Useful Words and Phrases (*Cont.*)

Record Side 1B

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
what is it	MI	mi
this	EZ	ez
What's this?	MI‿EZ?	Mi ez?
that	AZ	az
Where is that?	HOL‿VA-n‿AZ?	Hol van az?
how	HODY	hogy
does one say	MOND-dyaak	mondják
this	EST	ezt
in Hungarian	MA-dya-rul	magyarul
How do you say this in Hungarian?	HODY‿MOND-dyaa-k‿EST MA-dya-rul?	Hogy mondják ezt magyarul?

what	MIT	mit
you want	A-kar	akar
What do you want?	MI-t‿A-kar?	Mit akar?
a stamp	edy‿BEE-yeg	egy bélyeg
I want	A-ka-rok	akarok
I want a stamp.	edy‿BEE-ye-ge-t‿A-ka-rok.	Egy bélyeget akarok.
a cigarette	ety‿TSI-ga-ret-ta	egy cigaretta
I want a cigarette.	ety‿TSI-ga-ret-taa-t‿A-ka-rok.	Egy cigarettát akarok.
a match	edy‿DYU-fa	egy gyufa
I want a match.	edy‿DYU-faa-t‿A-ka-rok.	Egy gyufát akarok.
to eat	EN-ni	enni
I should like	SE-ret-neek	szeretnék
I should like to eat.	EN-ni‿SE-ret-neek.	Enni szeretnék.
to buy	VEN-ni	venni
I should like to buy.	VEN-ni‿SE-ret-neek.	Venni szeretnék.
how is it necessary	HOTY kell	hogy kell
to pronounce	KI-MON-da-ni	kimondani
this word	ES-t a SOOT	ezt a szót
How do you pronounce this word?	HOTY‿kell‿KI-MON-da-ni‿ES-t‿a‿SOOT?	Hogy kell kimondani ezt a szót?

Foods

Bread.	KE-nyeer.	Kenyér.
Water.	VIZ.	Viz.

Meat.	HUŠ.	Hus.
Potatoes.	BUR-go-nya.	Burgonya.
Coffee.	KAA-vee.	Kávé.
Milk.	TEY.	Tej.
Beer.	ŠÖR.	Sör.
Do you want coffee?	KAA-vee-t‿A-kar?	Kávét akar?
I want milk.	TE-ye-t‿A-ka-rok.	Tejet akarok.
Please, give me beer.	ŠÖRT KEE-rek.	Sört kérek.

Record Side 2A, beginning.

Here it is.	TEŠ-šeek.	Tessék.
please give me some water	KEE-re-m‿AD-dyon ety‿kiš‿VIZ	kérem adjon egy kis viz
Please, give me some water.	KEE-re-m‿AD-dyon‿ety‿kiš‿VI-zet.	Kérem adjon egy kis vizet.

Price

How much is it?	MI-be‿KE-rül?	Mibe kerül?
How much do you want?	MEN-nyit‿PA-ran-čol?	Mennyit parancsol?
How many do you want?	HAA-nyat‿PA-ran-čol?	Hányat parancsol?
How much is this?	EZ MEN-nyi-be‿KE-rül?	Ez mennyibe kerül?

[It is] too expensive.	TUL DRAA-ga.	Tul drága.
This is cheap.	E-z‿OL-čoo.	Ez olcsó.
It's one pengő.	ETY‿PENG-göö-be‿KE-rül.	Egy pengőbe kerül.
Give me the cheaper one.	KEE-re-m‿a-z‿ÖL-čoob-bat.	Kérem az olcsóbbat.
Very expensive.	NA-dyon‿DRAA-ga.	Nagyon drága.
its price	a-z‿AA-ra	az ára
Its price is ten fillér.	TIS‿FIL-leer a-z‿AA-ra.	Tiz fillér az ára.

Time

What time is it?	HAA-ny‿OO-ra‿van?	Hány óra van?
It's two o'clock.	KEE-t‿OO-ra‿van.	Két óra van.
At what time.	HAA-ny‿OO-ra-kor.	Hány órakor.
At three.	HAA-rom-kor.	Háromkor.
does the train arrive	EER-ke-zi-k‿a‿VO-nat	érkezik a vonat
What time does the train arrive?	HAA-ny‿OO-ra-kor EER-ke-zi-k‿a‿VO-nat?	Hány órakor érkezik a vonat?
At four-fifty.	NEE-dy‿ÖT-ven-kor.	Négy ötvenkor.
when	MI-kor	mikor
does the train start	IN-du-l‿a‿VO-nat	indul a vonat
When does the train start?	MI-ko-r‿IN-du-l‿a VO-nat?	Mikor indul a vonat?
What time does the movie start?	HAANY-kor‿KEZ-döö-di-k‿a MO-zi?	Hánykor kezdődik a mozi?

Numbers

One.	EDDY.	Egy.
Two.	KET-töö.	Kettő.
Three.	HAA-rom.	Három.
Four.	NEEDY.	Négy.
Five.	ÖT.	Öt.
Six.	HAT.	Hat.
Seven.	HEET.	Hét.
Eight.	NYOLTS.	Nyolc.
Nine.	KI-lents.	Kilenc.
Ten.	TIZ.	Tiz.
Hundred.	SAAZ.	Száz.
Thousand.	E-zer.	Ezer.
Two and two are four.	KET-töö mek‿KET-töö AZ‿ NEEDY.	Kettő meg kettő az négy.

After you have gone through these *Useful Words and Phrases* once, read the following

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: The following section is divided into three parts, and each part is to be taken up separately. First, read through with the group the introductory material and the explanations given in the first part. Then have the Guide read the *Examples* with the group repeating after him, first in unison, and then individually. Don't go on to the next part until everyone has a reasonable control over the items of pronunciation that are being taught. Follow this procedure with each of the three parts.

You will find that the *Examples* are all given on the phonograph records. Between each set of examples there is a clear space of record or *spiral*, so that you can play each set as often as is necessary.

As you have already noticed, Hungarian has a lot of sounds that are just like the ones we use in English; you won't have to learn these, because you already know them. There are also a number of sounds that are almost like our English ones, but still not quite the same. Finally, there are a few sounds that are totally different from anything we have in English.

If you want to speak understandable Hungarian, you will of course have to learn to say these last two kinds of sounds. The only way to learn them is to listen to the way your Guide (or the speaker on the records) says them, and to imitate him as well as you can. To help you imitate him we shall give you a few *Hints on Pronunciation*. These will cover, in small doses, the sounds that differ completely from those we use in English, as well as the ones that differ only a little.

In the Aids to Listening each letter or combination of letters stands for one sound only and not for many different sounds as in English. Here are some of the vowel sounds:

PRACTICE 1

Record Side 2B, beginning.

AIDS	NEAREST ENGLISH SOUND	EXAMPLES	
a	a sound between that of the *a* in *ball* and the *a* in *father*; some speakers use this sound in English *gone*	HAT	'*six*'
aa	a sound between that of the *a* in *father* and the *a* in *cat*; some speakers use this sound in *ask*	DRAA-ga	'*expensive*'
e	a sound about like *e* in *bet*	EDDY	'*one*'
ee	a sound like *ei* in *eight*, but long and without any suggestion of *y* as in *grey*	HEET	'*seven*'
i	a sound between that of *i* in *hit* and *i* in *machine*	I-gen	'*yes*'
o	a sound like *ou* in *ought*, but shorter	NYOLTS	'*eight*'
oo	a sound like *o* in *note*, but long and without any suggestion of *w* as in *low*	YOO	'*good*'
u	a sound between that of *u* in *put* and *u* in *rule*	UR	'*gentleman*'

Be careful to make the vowels written single short, a, e, i, o, u and those written double long, aa, ee, oo.

Most of the consonant letters are pronounced about as in English. Here are some of them:

PRACTICE 2

Record Side 2B, after 1st spiral.

AIDS	NEAREST ENGLISH SOUND	EXAMPLES	
ts	about like the *ts* in *cats*, but it may appear at the beginning of a word	NYOLTS	'eight'
č	about like the *ch* in *child*	KO-vaač	'Kovács'
g	like *g* in *go*, never like *g* in *gin*	DRAA-ga	'expensive'
dy	about like *d* and *y* run together as some people pronounce the *d* in *duke*, even at the end of a word	EDDY	'one'
y	like *y* in *yes*	YOO	'good'
		BEE-yeg	'stamp'
ny	about like *ny* in *canyon*	NYOLTS	'eight'
š	about like *s* in *sure* and *sugar*	ŠÖR	'beer'
s	about like English *s* in *so*	KÖ-sö-nöm	'thank you'
ty	about like *t* and *y* run together or as some people pronounce the *t* in *tune*, even at the end of a word	ety‿kiš‿VIZ	'a little water'

Wherever double consonants are written, except at the end of a word, just as in English the *mm* of *roommate* is longer than the *m* of *roomer.*

PRACTICE 3

Record Side 2B, after 2nd spiral.

AIDS	NEAREST ENGLISH SOUND	EXAMPLES	
gg	as in *big game*	REG-gelt	*'morning'*
tt	as in *hot time*	KET-töö	*'two'*

In Hungarian a word is always accented on the first syllable. In phrases like YOO‿NA-pot 'good day,' the accent falls heavily on YOO, more weakly on NA- in NA-pot. If you remember, however, to place the stress on the first syllable you will usually be right. Listen to the Guide and imitate him.

PRACTICE 4

Record Side 2B, after 3rd spiral.

AIDS

KÖ-sö-nöm
SAAL-lo-da
YOO‿na-pot

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* at least twice in unison and at least once more individually?

Did you apply what you learned about the vowel sounds in *Hints on Pronunciation?*

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even when it was different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Hungarian?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

If your group has time for outside assignments, sections marked *Individual Study* may be done between meetings of the group. Otherwise use them as independent study during a group meeting.

1. Covering the English (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Cover up the English. Read the Hungarian aloud. Keep your voice down if you are working with the rest of the group. Follow your Guide's pronunciation as nearly as you can remember, and test yourself to see if you can recall the meaning of each word and phrase. Check the expressions you are not sure about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the English and find their meaning. Repeat this procedure at least three times or until you are satisfied that you know every expression.

2. Review of Useful Words and Phrases

To the Group Leader: Read again for your information the numbered suggestions just preceding *Useful Words and Phrases* on page 3. Your Guide has been directed in his manual to pay particular attention to the correct pronunciation of the sounds. He may ask members of the group to repeat words or phrases a good many times in an effort to get a pronunciation that is more nearly correct. See that they listen closely, that they repeat promptly and loud enough so that everyone can hear them, and that they imitate the Guide to the last detail.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B twice. The first time have the members of the group repeat individually after the Guide with books open. The second time, have them close their books. The Guide will give each Hungarian expression twice as before. Let the students take turns giving the English equivalent the first time they hear the Guide speak the Hungarian and repeating the Hungarian as usual the second time. This will help them to check on the meaning of all Hungarian expressions in *Useful Words and Phrases.*

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. The first time you go through the list, take turns repeating the Hungarian after the Guide. Keep your book open, and get all the help you can from the Aids to Listening. Pay particular attention to what you have learned about the pronunciation of the vowels. Make every effort to satisfy your Guide with your pronunciation.

The second time you go through the list, check up on the meaning of the Hungarian. Keep your books closed and take turns giving the English equivalent the first time you hear the Hungarian expression and repeating the Hungarian as usual the second time. If you have any trouble with the English, you should find time for more individual study of the *Useful Words and Phrases*, covering the English and checking up on the meaning when you read the Hungarian aloud.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Listening In

To the Group Leader: The conversations which appear in this section will be read to the group by the Guide or played on the phonograph records. English equivalents are omitted from the *Listening In* material so that students can get practice in understanding spoken Hungarian which uses the vocabulary they know. Meaning, therefore, is to be emphasized.

The first time you go through the conversations, have the Guide repeat a conversation, if necessary to help clear up the meaning, before you go on to the next conversation. If you have no Guide, lift the needle of the phonograph at the end of each conversation and let the students discuss the meaning of any sentences that are not understood.

Go through the conversations a second time without stopping. Pay about equal attention to pronunciation and meaning.

Finally, assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Give everyone a chance. Suggest that the actors actually take the parts, stand up and move around, sit at a table in the restaurant, stand behind the counter in the store, etc. Keep it moving. Get everyone to speak up! Take a part yourself.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversation and repeat after him. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Hungarian immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check up on the meaning of what you have heard and said. Ask someone in the group to give you the English equivalent of any expression you do not understand. Almost all the words and the expressions you have had in *Useful Words and Phrases* occur in the following conversations.

Record Side 2B, after 4th spiral.

1. *Asking Information.*

John:	BO-čaa-na-tot‿KEE-rek, HOL‿va-n‿edy‿ VEN-deeg-löö?	Bocsánatot kérek, hol van egy vendéglő?
KO-vaač UR:	YOBB-ra‿va-n‿edy‿VEN-deeg-löö.	Jobbra van egy vendéglő.

John:	NE-m‿EER-tem MIT MOND.	Nem értem mit mond.
	KEE-rem BE-seey-yen‿LAŠ-šab-ban	Kérem beszéljen lassabban.
Kovács ur:	E-z‿a-z‿AAL-lo-maaš.	Ez az állomás.
	BAL-ra‿va-n‿ety‿SAAL-lo-da.	Balra van egy szálloda.
	YOBB-ra‿va-n‿edy‿VEN-deeg-löö.	Jobbra van egy vendéglő.
John:	I-gen, EER-tem.	Igen, értem.
	KÖ-sö-nöm.	Köszönöm.
	VI-sont-LAA-taaš-ra.	Viszontlátásra.
Kovács ur:	SI-ve-šen.	Szivesen.
	YOO‿NA-pot.	Jó napot.

2. *In the Restaurant.*

KIŠ-AS-sony:	YOO‿REG-gelt.	Jó reggelt.
	HODY‿van?	Hogy van?
John:	KÖ-sö-nöm, YOOL‿VA-dyok.	Köszönöm, jól vagyok.
	EN-ni‿SE-ret-neek.	Enni szeretnék.
	KEE-rem AD-dyon‿ety‿kiš‿VI-zet.	Kérem adjon egy kis vizet.
Kisasszony:	MI-t‿A-ka-r‿EN-ni?	Mit akar enni?
	van‿HUŠ, BUR-go-nya, KE-nyeer, KAA-vee.	Van hus, burgonya, kenyér, kávé.
John:	TE-ye-t‿A-ka-rok.	Tejet akarok.
(*after eating*)		
	MI-be‿KE-rül?	Mibe kerül?
Kisasszony:	HAA-rom‿PENG-göö a-z‿AA-ra.	Három pengő az ára.
	KÖ-sö-nöm.	Köszönöm.

John:	SI-ye-šen. KIŠ-AS-sony, HAANY-kor KEZ-döö-di-k‿a MO-zi?	Szivesen. Kisasszony, hánykor kezdődik a mozi?
Kisasszony:	HAA-rom-kor‿KEZ-döö-dik.	Háromkor kezdődik.
John:	KÖ-sö-nöm. YOO‿NA-pot.	Köszönöm. Jó napot.

3. *In a Store.*

John:	YOO‿EŠ-teet. BE-see-l‿ANG-go-lul?	Jó estét. Beszél angolul?
Kisasszony:	NEM.	Nem.
John:	NEM‿bay! MI‿EZ? HODY‿MOND-dyaa-k‿EST‿MA-dya-rul?	Nem baj! Mi ez? Hogy mondják ezt magyarul?
Kisasszony:	MI-t‿A-kar? edy‿BEE-ye-get?	Mit akar? Egy bélyeget?
John:	I-gen. HOTY‿kell KI-MON-da-ni‿ES-t‿a‿SOOT? "BEE-ye-get"?	Igen. Hogy kell kimondani ezt a szót? "Bélyeget"?
Kisasszony:	I-gen. MEN-nyit PA-ran-čol?	Igen. Mennyit parancsol?
John:	EZ MEN-nyi-be‿KE-rül?	Ez mennyibe kerül?
Kisasszony:	E-z‿ety‿PENG-göö-be‿KE-rül. AS‿TIS‿FIL-leer.	Ez egy pengőbe kerül. Az tiz fillér.

John:	TUL‿DRAA-ga.	Tul drága.
	KEE-re-m‿a-z‿OL-čoob-bat.	Kérem az olcsóbbat.
	KÖ-sö-nöm.	Köszönöm.
	HAAny‿OO-ra-ko-r‿EER-ke-zi-k‿a‿VO-nat?	Hány órakor érkezik a vonat?
Kisasszony:	NEE-dy‿ÖT-ven-kor.	Négy ötvenkor.
	YOO‿NA-pot.	Jó napot.
John:	VI-sont-LAA-taaš-ra.	Viszontlátásra.

2. Check Yourself

Is there any expression in any of these conversations that you do not understand now? If there is, find the meaning of it or ask other members of your group before you proceed. If no one knows, refer to the *Useful Words and Phrases*.

Go through the conversations once more following the same plan as before. Imitate carefully and be sure to keep in mind the English equivalent of everything you are saying in Hungarian.

Finally go through the conversations again but this time take turns. The leader will assign parts and the exercise is to continue at least until everyone has had a chance to speak one of the parts. Keep this going as long as you have time. When your turn comes, speak clearly and with enthusiasm. Put yourself in the situation and let yourself go. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so until he is satisfied with your pronunciation.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in sections A and B. Cover up the Hungarian. Read the English silently and test yourself to see if you can speak the Hungarian for each word and phrase. Check the expressions you are uncertain about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the Hungarian and review them. Go through the list once more and continue for at least three times or until you can give the Hungarian readily for all the expressions. To make sure of this, pick out expressions at random and see if you can speak out the Hungarian quickly. Speak the Hungarian aloud and try to imitate your Guide's pronunciation as well as you can remember it.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Go to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Read to the group the English equivalent of the Hungarian expressions. Call on different students not in any fixed order, asking for the correct Hungarian for the English. For instance, say to A, "HODY‿MOND-dyaak‿MA-dya-rul: *Where is the hotel?*" The students are to respond with their books closed. The Guide will indicate by a negative sign whenever he hears a Hungarian expression that is wrong, or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the expression correctly. Any group member who has difficulty in giving the correct Hungarian should be told to review the *Useful Words and Phrases* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not spend any time talking about the *why* of the Hungarian; stick to the *how*.

There are two precautions which the Leader must observe in all exercises of this sort and in the conversation practice throughout the course. Be sure that everyone understands them. They are as follows:

1. Every Hungarian expression must be given smoothly and completely before the student's performance can be considered satisfactory. If there is an error in the first attempt, ask the student to give the expression over again in complete form. If he fumbles badly turn to someone else.
2. Everyone must speak loud enough, so that all can hear. Every student should be encouraged to call out "Louder, please!" if he can't hear. Check on this occasionally by pointing to the student who is listening to someone else's Hungarian, and ask "What did he say?"

If you do not observe these precautions, much time and effort may be wasted in group meetings.

In this section you are going to have your first chance to engage in conversation in Hungarian. This, of course, is the most useful part of the entire unit, and the part you should do with the greatest amount of pep and realism. Do it half-heartedly and you lose most of the value of the unit. Do it earnestly and enthusiastically and you will find that you can readily say a great number of things in Hungarian, fluently and correctly. Read the instructions carefully, get everything you are to do straight in your mind, and then plunge in.

In order to fix in your mind the expressions you will need in the conversation, check yourself on your ability to speak the Hungarian you have learned. By now you should not have to grope for it. The Leader of the group will ask you to supply in turn the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents which he reads from the *Useful Words and Phrases*. If you have done a thorough job of recalling the Hungarian when you are looking only at the English equivalents, as suggested in Section E, you will have no difficulty in responding promptly and smoothly when you hear the English. Your Guide will let you know if your Hungarian expressions are not correct. If you have no Guide, the members of the group should be ready to correct faulty expressions.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: Read the following directions with the class. Encourage the students to strike out for themselves. Spend all the time you can on free conversation practice in an effort to get to the point where students can speak easily and smoothly with a minimum of *ums* and *ers*.

The Leader will assign parts and will ask you to take turns in pairs, carrying on the following conversations. The two persons who are talking together should stand up and act out their parts, speaking as smoothly and naturally as possible. Make it real and get some fun out of it. The Guide will help you if your Hungarian is wrong or if your pronunciation is bad. The Leader will prompt you if you are not sure what comes next in your part.

1. Asking Directions

1. You walk up to a stranger, beg his pardon, and ask where the railroad station is.
2. He answers that it's straight ahead.
3. You ask him what he said ('how please?').
4. He repeats.
5. You beg his pardon, say you don't understand him, and ask him please to speak slowly.
6. He repeats very slowly that that's the railroad station over there, straight ahead, and asks whether you understand.
7. You say you understand, and thank him.
8. He says you're welcome.

Go through this conversation twice more, asking first for the hotel and then the restaurant, and have the stranger reply by saying that the hotel is here to the right, the restaurant there to the left.

2. At a Restaurant

1. You walk into a restaurant, sit down, say good morning (or evening) to the waitress, and ask how she is.
2. She says she's fine, and asks how you are.
3. You say you're fine too. You'd like to eat.
4. She asks what you'd like.
5. You ask how the meat is.
6. She says it's very good.
7. You say good, you'd like meat and potatoes.
8. She asks whether you'd like wine or beer.

9. You say beer, please.
10. After you've eaten, you ask her how much that costs.
11. She says it's 3 pengő and 10 fillér.
12. You pay, saying here it is.
13. She thanks you, and you both say good-bye.

If it is so desired, particularly when the group is too large to give everybody a chance to participate in the conversation, the exercise should be continued for a longer time. It is also a good practice to give people who are having difficulties a second trial.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

To the Group Leader: You can tell from the work that you did on conversation in Section E, whether or not the group needs to spend more time in preparing for successful conversation. If necessary, spend the first part of this section in individual study, having members of the group say the Hungarian of the *Useful Words and Phrases* when they have the English expression covered. Check up on their vocabulary as in Section E. Then continue the work with conversation which you started in Section E.

In this section you are to continue taking part in conversation. If the work didn't go well in Section E, take time to go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* again with the English covered and to give the Hungarian of the English expressions as your Leader asks for it.

Put everything you can into the conversations. Act your part; don't hesitate to talk for fear of making a mistake. You'll make plenty of mistakes at first, but the important thing is to practice talking. You can't correct an error until you have made it.

Try out your Hungarian whenever you get a chance. Don't wait for meetings of the group to practice what you have learned. Pair off between meetings and see what you can do with Hungarian greetings and conversation. When you are alone, run over the list of Hungarian expressions you know. Review them in your mind. Try saying them. See how much you can improve your pronunciation and control of the language in whatever time you can find between meetings of the group. Make this a regular practice throughout the course.

FINDER LIST

This is a complete alphabetical list of all the words and expressions used in this unit. The conventional spelling is enclosed in parentheses after each entry. This list is for reference only, but you should know all of these before going on to the next unit.

a (a) "the"
AAL-lo-maaš (állomás) "station"
AA-ra (ára) "its price"
AD-dyon (adjon) "give me"

A-kar (akar) "wants, you want"
A-ka-rok (akarok) "I want"
az (az) "the, that"
BAL-ra (balra) "to the left"
BE-see-l‿ANG-go-lul (beszél angolul) "speaks English"
BO-čaa-na-tot‿KEE-rek (bocsánatot kérek) "I beg your pardon"
BUR-go-nya (burgonya) "potatoes"
C — listed under *ts*
DRAA-ga (drága) "expensive"
DYU-fa (gyufa) "match"
EDDY (egy) "one, a"
E-dye-ne-šen (egyenesen) "straight"
EER-ke-zik (érkezik) "arrives"
EER-tem (értem) "I understand you"
E-löö-re (elõre) "ahead"
EN-ni (enni) "to eat"
E-zer (ezer) "thousand"
EZ "this"
FIL-leer (fillér) "fillér, penny (hundredth of a pengõ)"
Gy — listed under *dy*
HAANY (hány) "how many"
HAA-ny‿OO-ra‿van (hány óra van) "what time is it?"
HAA-nyat‿PA-ran-čol (hányat parancsol) "how many do you want?"
HAANY-kor (hánykor) "when, at what time?"
HAA-rom (három) "three"
HAA-rom-kor (háromkor) "at three"
HAT (hat) "six"
HEET (hét) "seven"
HODY (hogy) "how"
HOL (hol) "where"
HUŠ (hus) "meat"
I-gen (igen) "yes"
IN-du-l‿a‿VO-nat (indul a vonat) "the train starts"
ITT (itt) "here"
J — listed under *y*
KAA-vee (kávé) "coffee"
KEE-rem (kérem) "please"
KE-nyeer (kenyér) "bread"
KE-re-šem (keresem) "I'm looking for it"
KE-rül (kerül) "costs"
KET-töö (kettõ) "two"

KEZ-döö-di-k‿a‿MO-zi (kezdődik a mozi) "the movie begins"
KI-lents (kilenc) "nine"
KI-MON-da-ni (kimondani) "pronounce"
KIŠ-AS-sony (kisasszony) "Miss"
KLO-zet (klozet) "toilet"
KÖ-sö-nöm (köszönöm) "thank you"
LAŠ-šab-ban (lassabban) "more slowly"
MA-dya-rul (magyarul) "in Hungarian"
MEG (meg) "and, plus"
MEN-nyit‿PA-ran-čol (mennyit parancsol) "how much do you want?"
MER-re van . . . (merre van . . .) "which is the way to . . .?"
MI-be‿KE-rül (mibe kerül) "how much is it?"
MI-kor (mikor) "when"
MI EZ (mi ez) "what's this?"
MI-t‿A-kar (mit akar) "what do you want?"
MIT‿MOND (mit mond) "what do you say?"
MO-zi (mozi) "movie"
NA-dyon‿DRAA-ga (nagyon drága) "very expensive"
NEM (nem) "no, not"
NEM‿bay (nem baj) "it doesn't matter"
NE-m‿EER-tem (nem értem) "I don't understand you"
NEEDY (négy) "four"
NYOLTS (nyolc) "eight"
OL-čoo (olcsó) "cheap"
OL-čoob-bat (olcsóbbat) "the cheaper one"
OO-ra (óra) "hour"
OTT (ott) "there"
ÖT (öt) "five"
PA-ran-čol (parancsol) "orders, wants"
PENG-göö (pengő) "pengő (unit of Hungarian money, worth about 17½¢ before the war)"
SAAL-lo-da (szálloda) "hotel"
SAAZ (száz) "hundred"
SE-ret-neek (szeretnék) "I should like"
SI-ve-šen (szivesen) "with pleasure"
ŠÖR (sör) "beer"
ŠÖRT‿KEE-rek (sört kérek) "please give me beer"
Sz — listed under *s*
TEŠ-šeek (tessék) "here it is"
TEY (tej) "milk"

TE-ye-t‿A-ka-rok (tejet akarok) "I want milk"

TIZ (tiz) "ten"

TUL‿DRAA-ga (tul drága) "too expensive"

UR (ur) "Mr., gentleman"

UR-AS-sony (urasszony) "lady"

VA-dyok (vagyok) "I am"

VEN-deeg-löö (vendéglő) "restaurant"

VEN-ni (venni) "to buy"

VI-sont-LAA-taaš-ra (viszontlátásra) "good-bye"

VIZ (viz) "water"

VO-nat (vonat) "train"

YOBB-ra (jobbra) "to the right"

YOO (jó) "good"

YOO‿EŠ-teet (jó estét) "good evening"

YOOL (jól) "well"

YOO‿NA-pot (jó napot) "good day"

YOO REG-gelt (jó reggelt) "good morning"

UNIT 2

MEETING PEOPLE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: Adopt the following steps as a standard practice in conducting this course:

1. Before each meeting of the group, be sure to read carefully and get clearly in mind the instructions covering those sections of a unit which you expect to take up in the group meeting.
2. Before each group meeting, see that the Guide is available with his *Utasitások a Vezető Számára* or that phonograph and records are ready.
3. Have the members of the group read together the instructions that precede each piece of work they are to do before they begin it. Let one member of the group read these instructions aloud while the others follow the reading in their books.
4. Take time, following the reading of all instructions, to make sure that everyone understands exactly what he is to do.

In Section A of Unit 2 follow the same procedure as that outlined for *Useful Words and Phrases* of Section A in Unit 1. Go through the *Basic Sentences* once with everyone repeating in unison after the Guide or phonograph record. Then take up the *Hints on Pronunciation* which follow. Come back to the *Basic Sentences* and go through them once more, with repetitions in unison after the Guide. Pay particular attention to those items of pronunciation you have been working on. Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* a third time with solo repetition. The Guide will call for as many repetitions as may be necessary to get a pronunciation that sounds to him like Hungarian.

Make everyone speak loudly and clearly. Keep the work moving. Don't let it drag.

Begin this section by listening, in the manner already outlined in Section A of the preceding unit, to the *Basic Sentences* which follow. Be sure to keep in mind the meaning of the Hungarian by reading silently the English equivalent. As you listen to the Hungarian, keep your eye on the *Aids to Listening*. This will help you imitate accurately the pronunciation you are hearing. Repeat each word and phrase loudly and clearly right after you hear it. As you pronounce the Hungarian, do so as though you really meant what you are saying. Do not forget that these words and phrases convey a real meaning and it is up to you to say them as though you were actually using them. Go through the sentences in unison and with your book open.

The *Basic Sentences* are set up as conversations so that you may hear and speak the Hungarian as you would hear and speak it if you were talking with Hungarian people.

Although numerous characters are introduced in these *Basic Sentences*, it is not important for you to try to keep in mind just who they are or their relationship to one another. You are concerned rather with *what* they say and *how* they say it.

1. Basic Sentences

Paul Green meets Mr. Alexander and his daughter Eve.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Record Side 3A, beginning.		
Paul	*paal*	*Pál*
if	ha	ha
I'm not mistaken	nem‿ča-loo-dom	nem csalódom
your name	a-z‿ön‿ne-ve	az ön neve
Mr. Alexander	šaan-do-r‿ur	Sándor ur
If I'm not mistaken, your name is Mr. Alexander.	ha‿nem‿ča-loo-dom, a-z‿ön‿ne-ve šaan-do-r‿ur.	Ha nem csalódom, az ön neve Sándor ur.
I believe	ast‿hi-sem	azt hiszem
yesterday	teg-nap	tegnap
we met	ta-laal-kos-tunk *	találkoztunk
at the Smiths'	a‿ko-vaa-čeek-naal	a Kovácséknál
I believe we met at the Smiths' yesterday.	ast‿hi-sem tegnap talaal-kos-tun-k‿ a‿ko-vaa-čeek-naal.	Azt hiszem tegnap találkoztunk a Kovácséknál

*The speaker on the record uses the rapid speech form ta-laa-kos-tunk. Listen to your Guide and imitate him.

Mr. Alexander	*šaan-do-r ur*	*Sándor ur*
Of course!	per-se!	Persze!
I remember.	em-leek-sem.	Emlékszem.
How are you?	hody‿van?	Hogy van?
	paal	
Well, thank you.	kö-sö-nöm yool.	Köszönöm jól.
it is permitted	sa-bad	szabad
for me to ask you	önt‿keer-nem	önt kérnem
for a favor	ety‿si-veš-šeeg-re	egy szivességre
May I ask you for a favor?	sa-ba-d‿önt‿keer-ne-m‿ety‿si-veš-šeeg-re?	Szabad önt kérnem egy szivességre?
	šaan-do-r‿ur	
What can I do for you?	mit‿pa-ran-čol?	Mit parancsol?
	paal	
please tell me	ké-rem mond-dya‿meg‿ne-kem	kérem mondja meg nekem
how is it necessary	ho-dyan‿kell	hogyan kell
a gentleman	ed-dy‿u-rat	egy urat
to address	mek-soo-li-ta-ni	megszólitani
Please tell me, how must one address a gentleman?	ké-rem mond-dya‿meg‿ne-kem, ho-dyan‿kel-l‿ed-dy‿u-rat mek-soo-li-ta-ni?	Kérem mondja meg nekem, hogyan kell egy urat megszólitani?
	šaan-do-r‿ur	
for example	peel-daa-ul	például
if the person in question	ha‿a-z‿il-le-töö	ha az illető
stranger	iš-me-ret-len	ismeretlen
For example, if he is a stranger:	peel-daa-ul, ha‿a-z‿il-le-töö‿iš-me-ret-len:	Például, ha az illető ismeretlen:
My honored sir.	tis-tel-t‿u-ram.	Tisztelt uram.

or	vady	vagy
conversation	be-seed	beszéd
during	fo-ya-maan	folyamán
Or during conversation:	vady‿be-seet‿foyamaan:	Vagy beszéd folyamán:
Record Side 3B, beginning.		
you	ma-ga	maga
(he) wants coffee	kaa-vee-t‿a-kar	kávét akar
Do you want coffee?	ma-ga‿kaa-vee-t‿a-kar?	Maga kávét akar?
	paal	
Thank you, I understand.	kö-sö-nöm, eer-tem.	Köszönöm, értem.
(he) would introduce me	be-mu-tat-na	bemutatna
to your daughter	a‿laa-nyaa-nak	a lányának
Would you introduce me to your daughter?	be-mu-tat-na‿a‿laa-nyaa-nak?	Bemutatna a lányának?
	šaan-do-r‿jur	
With pleasure!	si-ve-šen!	Szivesen
just	eep-pen	épen
here she comes	itt‿yön	itt jön
Here she comes now.	eep-pe-n‿itt‿yön.	Épen itt jön
Eve, I beg you	ee-va, keer-lek	Éva kérlek
come here	dye-re‿i-de	gyere ide
Eve, please come here.	ee-va‿keer-lek, dye-re‿i-de.	Éva kérlek, gyere ide.
I should like	se-ret-neem	szeretném
to introduce	be-mu-tat-ni	bemutatni
Mr. Paul Green	grin paa-l‿u-rat	Green Pál urat
from New York	nu‿yorg-bool	New Yorkból
I should like to introduce Mr. Paul Green from New York.	se-ret-neem be-mu-tat-ni grin paa-l‿u-rat nyu‿yorg-bool.	Szeretném bemutatni Green Pál urat New Yorkból.

Eve	*ee-va*	*Éva*
Glad to meet you.	ö-rü-lök.	Örülök.
I saw you at the Smiths'.	laat-ta-m‿ön-t‿a‿ko-vaa-čeek-naal.	Láttam önt a Kovácséknál.
do you understand	eer-t‿ön	ért ön
in Hungarian	ma-dya-rul	magyarul
Do you understand Hungarian?	eer-t‿ön ma-dya-rul?	Ért ön magyarul?
I speak	een‿be-see-lek	én beszélek
in English	ang-go-lul	angolul
I speak English.	een‿be-see-lek ang-go-lul.	Én beszélek angolul.
	paal	
yes	i-gen	igen
I understand Hungarian	eer-tek ma-dya-rul	értek magyarul
Yes, I understand Hungarian.	i-gen, eer-tek ma-dya-rul.	Igen értek magyarul.
but	de	de
please speak more slowly	kee-rem be-seey-yen‿laš-šab-ban	kérem beszéljen lassabban
But please speak more slowly.	de‿kee-rem be-seey-yen‿laš-šabban.	De kérem beszéljen lassabban.

Record Side 4A, beginning.

Mr. Alexander, what time does the movie start?	šaan-do-r‿ur, haany-kor kez-döö-di-k‿a‿mo-zi?	Sándor ur, hánykor kezdődik a mozi?
	sán-do-r‿ur	
I believe	ast‿hi-sem	azt hiszem
it begins at eight	nyolts-kor kez-döö-dik	nyolckor kezdődik
I believe it begins at eight.	ast‿hi-sem nyolts-kor kez-döö-dik.	Azt hiszem nyolckor kezdődik.

	paal	
Miss Alexander please come with me to the movies	šaan-dor kiš-as-sony ké-rem yöy-yön‿ve-lem a‿mo-zi-ba	Sándor kisasszony kérem jöjjön velem a moziba
Miss Alexander, please come to the movies with me.	šaan-dor‿kiš-as-sony, kee-rem‿yöy-yön ve-le-m‿a‿mo-zi-ba.	Sándor kisasszony, kérem jöjjön velem a moziba.
	ee-va	
Very gladly!	na-dyon‿si-ve-šen!	Nagyon szivesen!
	saan-do-r‿ur	
Have a good time!	yoo‿mu-la-taašt!	Jó mulatást!
	paal	
Thank you. Good-bye.	kö-sö-nöm. vi-sont-laa-taaš-ra.	Köszönöm. Viszontlátásra.

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: The explanations preceding each *Practice* should be read by the group and discussed before the *Practice* is attempted. The practice for *Hints on Pronunciation* is in the Guide's Manual and on the phonograph records. Follow the same procedure in working with the practice material that you have followed with the *Basic Sentences*. Go through as many times as may be necessary to give each member of the group reasonable control of the item of pronunciation that is being taught. Have the group repeat after the Guide, first in unison, then individually.

As you have noticed, some Hungarian vowel sounds are more or less like certain vowel sounds we have in English. On the other hand, there are some vowel sounds which are like nothing we have in English. Be careful not to substitute ordinary English sounds for these foreign sounds; in order to make the necessary distinctions between words, you must master the foreign sounds.

In Hungarian there is a sound which is indicated in spelling by the letter *ü*. To an English-speaking person, this sound seems to be somewhere between the sound of *ou* (as in *group*) and of *ee* (as in *beet*): and, in fact, this new sound is like both. Pronounce *ee* as in *beet*; now, without moving your tongue from that position, round your lips and push them out very far and pronounce the Hungarian *ü*-sound. Practice this sound in the following word:

PRACTICE 1

Record Side 4A, after 1st spiral.

ke-rül	*kerül*

Repeat twice

There is another sound, represented by the letter *ö*. This sound is pronounced somewhat in the same way as *ü*, but your jaw should be more relaxed, your mouth more open, and the tip of your tongue farther down, away from the roof of your mouth, and behind the bottom teeth. Put your tongue in position to make a sound like the *e* of *let*; now, without moving your tongue from that position, round your lips, but do not stick them out quite so far as you did for the *ü*-sound. With your tongue and lips in this position, you can make the Hungarian *ö*-sound.

PRACTICE 2

Record Side 4A, after 2nd spiral.

ön	*ön*	yöy-yön	*jöjjön*
önt	*önt*	kö-sö-nöm	*köszönöm*
yön	*jön*	öt	*öt*
ö-rü-lök	*örülök*	šör	*sör*

Finally, the sound represented in the Aids to Listening by öö and in conventional spelling by the letter *ő* is like the *ö*-sound, but pronounced with your tongue in the position for Hungarian *ee* (that is, somewhat higher in your mouth), your lips stuck out a little bit further, and holding the sound about ***twice as long*** as you did for *ö*.

PRACTICE 3

Record Side 4A, after 3rd spiral.

il-le-töö	*illető*	kez-döö-dik	*kezdődik*
e-löö-re	*előre*	ket-töö	*kettő*
ven-deeg-löö	*vendéglő*	peng-göö	*pengő*

If you are uncertain about any of the points of pronunciation which have been discussed, ask your Guide to repeat the words and phrases with which you are having trouble, and try to correct your pronunciation. Remember that the discussion and written examples are at best an imperfect representation of the sounds. They are only intended as an aid to you.

When you are satisfied that you can pronounce correctly all the sounds, go through the *Basic Sentences* taking turns and with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eyes on the spelling and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally go through the *Basic Sentences*, again taking turns but with your book closed. Listen carefully to your Guide and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice with your book open and then at least once more with your book closed?

Did you repeat each word and phrase immediately after hearing it in a loud, clear voice?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even if it seemed different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Hungarian?

If your Guide asked you to repeat, did you do so eagerly and with plenty of pep as many times as necessary until he was satisfied with what you were saying?

Are you satisfied that you can pronounce the eleven Hungarian vowels?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Basic Sentences*, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

If your group has time for outside assignments, do the *Word Study* between meetings of the group. Otherwise make it independent study in the group meeting.

In this section we take up some of the words and expressions you have just learned and examine them to see how the language is built. First read the words and expressions in each list and make sure that you understand what they mean. Then read the comment which follows each list. This should make clear to you just how the words function and how they are put together.

If there are any points that are not clear to you, make note of them and ask about them at the next meeting of the group. Follow the same procedure with each list and each comment.

kaa-vee	kávé	coffee	kaa-vee-t_a-kar?	kávét akar?	do you want coffee?
šör	sör	beer	šört_kee-rek.	sört kérek.	please give me beer.
ön	ön	you	laat-ta-m_önt.	láttam önt.	I saw you.

Hungarian words, like English words, are divided into certain classes, such as *nouns*, *verbs*, and so forth. You have already learned a number of Hungarian nouns, such as *ka-vee* ("coffee"), *šör* ("beer"), and others; you have also learned the *pronoun ön* ("you").

In the examples above, the words in the left-hand column are given in the simple form in which you first learned them; in the right-hand column, each of the words is used as a *direct object* of a verb (*a-kar*, meaning "do you want", *kee-rek* "please give me", *laat-tam* "I saw"). You will notice that, in the right-hand column, the nouns *kaa-vee* and *šör* and the pronoun *ön* all have *-t* added. A sound or sounds added to a word in this way is called a *suffix*; here, the *-t* is called the *suffix of the direct object*, and must always be added to every noun when it is used as the direct object of a verb.

Notice also that in these words the *-t* is added directly to the end of the word; this is almost always the case with words that end in certain consonant sounds (such as *l*, *n*, *ny*, *r*, *š*, *s*) which themselves have a vowel before them, and with words ending in any vowel sound, except short *a* or *e*. So, we would make *ven-deeg-lööt* "restaurant" from *ven-deeg-löö*, *hušt* "meat" from *huš*, *kiš-as-sonyt* "Miss" from *kiš-as-sony*: *Šaan-dor_ki-šas-sonyt laat-tam* "I saw Miss Alexander."

edy_bee-yeg egy bélyeg	a stamp	edy_bee-ye-get_a-ka-rok. egy bélyeget akarok.	I want a stamp
ety_kiš_viz egy kis viz	a little water	kee-re-m_ady-dyon ety_kiš_vi-zet. kérem adjon egy kis vizet.	please give me some water
tey tej	milk	te-ye-t_a-ka-rok. tejet akarok.	I want some milk

If a noun ends in any other consonant than those mentioned above, however, when the direct object suffix *-t* is added to the noun, an extra vowel is placed between the noun itself and the suffix; we call this vowel an *auxiliary vowel*. For the nouns given above, the auxiliary vowel used is *-e-*. It is advisable to learn the noun together with its auxiliary vowel and direct object suffix as one word, so that you won't have to stop and think every time you want to use a noun in this way.

bo-čaa-na-tot kee-rek.	bocsánatot kérek.	I beg your pardon
se-ret-neem‿be-mu-tat-ni grin paa-l‿u-rat.	szeretném bemutatni Green Pál urat.	I should like to introduce Mr. Paul Green

Other vowel sounds also are used as auxiliary vowels: *bo-chaa-nat* ("pardon") has *-o-*, *ur* ("Mr., gentleman") has *-a-*. Still other words have *-ö-*; thus, for *öt* ("five") we have *ö-töt*. In the same way, the word *nap* ("day"), which you have had in the expression *yoo‿na-pot* (shortened from *yoo‿na-pot ki-vaa-nok* "I wish you good day") has the direct object form *na-pot*; *klo-zet* ("toilet") has *klo-ze-tot*.

yoo‿eš-teet.	jó estét.	good evening
a‿saal-lo-daat ke-re-šem.	a szállodát keresem.	I am looking for the hotel

If the noun ends in the short vowels *-e-* (like *eš-te* "evening") or *-a-* (like *saal-lo-da* "hotel"), you (so to speak) fuse the auxiliary vowel with the final vowel and get, of course, a long vowel: thus, *eš-te* + *e-t* gives *eš-teet*, *saal-lo-da* + *a-t* gives *saal-lo-daat*. In the same way, *bur-go-nya* ("potatoes") gives *bur-go-nyaat*, *oora* ("hour") gives *oo-raat*, etc.

Finally, numerals may also be direct objects of a verb, and must then take this suffix *-t*, under precisely the same conditions as the nouns do. Thus, for *ket-töö* ("two") we have *ket-tööt*, for *needy* ("four") we have *nee-dyet*, for *hat* ("six") we have *ha-tot*, and so forth. The following numerals, however, vary somewhat from the regular pattern:

haa-rom	három	"three"	haar-mat
heet	hét	"seven"	he-tet
tiz	tiz	"ten"	ti-zet
saaz	száz	"hundred"	saa-zat
e-zer	ezer	"thousand"	ez-ret

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study

Read aloud several times all the examples given you in the *Word Study*. Then cover the English and see if you know the meaning of every item. Repeat the operation until you are sure that you know every expression.

As a final test, cover the Hungarian and see if you can speak out the Hungarian expressions by simply looking at the English. Skip about and test yourself thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph record. Go through them as many times as you can, taking turns repeating the Hungarian individually. Try it with books closed and see how you get along without the help of the *Aids to Listening*. But *always* keep in mind the meaning of the Hungarian you are hearing and speaking. As you go through the *Basic Sentences* be on the lookout for examples of the points in *Word Study* you have just covered.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph record. For the detailed procedure to be followed read again the instructions given above for the review of the first half of *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Here is your chance to find out just how well you have learned the meaning of the Hungarian expressions you have had up to this point. Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Section A and cover the English. Read the Hungarian aloud and see whether you can supply the English equivalents of the words and phrases. Mark those you are not sure about and after reading the list through, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Cover the English again and repeat the procedure until you can go through the entire list giving all the meanings without difficulty.

When you are satisfied that you can go through the *Basic Sentences*, giving the meaning for any expression you say in Hungarian, try the following exercise:

3. What Would You Say?

For each of the following situations outlined in English, give the Hungarian equivalent that seems to you most suitable. Practice the sentences aloud so that you can rattle them off without hesitation when called on.[4] Do not write anything down. Be sure you understand all the possibilities listed.

1. *You are being introduced to a young lady and you say:*	
a) ö-rü-lök.	a) örülök.
b) yoo‿mu-la-taašt.	b) Jó mulatást.
2. *She asks you to do her a favor by saying:*	
a) eer-t‿ön ma-dya-rul?	a) Ért ön magyarul?
b) sa-ba-d‿önt keer-nem?	b) Szabad önt kérnem?
3. *You then ask in reply:*	
a) mit‿pa-ran-čol?	a) Mit parancsol?
b) hody‿van?	b) Hogy van?
4. *When she tells you what she would like you to do, you reply:*	
a) na-dyon‿si-ve-šen.	a) Nagyon szivesen.
b) em-leek-sem!	b) Emlékszem!
5. *She asks you if you remember Mrs. Brown and you say:*	
a) i-gen, em-leek-sem.	a) Igen, emlékszem.
b) eer-tem.	b) Értem.
6. *She asks you if you know the whereabouts of Mrs. Brown; you say:*	
a) ast‿hi-sem.	a) Azt hiszem.
b) dye-re‿i-de.	b) Gyere ide.
7. *Then you suddenly see Mrs. Brown and say:*	
a) eep-pe-n‿itt‿yön.	a) Épen itt jön.
b) a-z‿ön‿ne-ve.	b) Az ön neve.
8. *The young lady wants to know when you first met Mrs. Brown and you tell her:*	
a) teg-nap.	a) teg-nap.
b) peel-daa-ul.	b) például.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Read the English describing the situations in *What Would You Say?* of Section C, and call on different students, not in any fixed order, to speak the Hungarian which the situation calls for. Encourage the students to give the Hungarian, if they can, without reading it from the simplified spelling in their books. Then ask different members of the group to give the meaning in English of the different Hungarian expressions listed for each situation.

Go back to the last exercise in the preceding section. The Leader will ask different members of the group to speak the Hungarian to be used in each of the situations given. Other members of the group will criticize the choices made if they do not agree with them. The Leader will also ask for the English equivalents of all the other expressions offered as choices, taking turns around the group.

2. Word Study Check-Up

To the Group Leader: As a further check on the students' understanding of the *Word Study*, read the English equivalent of the Hungarian expressions given before each comment under *Word Study*. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, to give the correct Hungarian for the English. For instance, say to A: "HODY‿MOND-dyaak‿MA-dya-rul: *I want a stamp, I want some milk*" and so on. The Guide will at this point indicate by a negative sign whenever he hears a Hungarian expression that is wrong. If there is no Guide, the other members of the group will signal that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the right answer. Any member of the group who has difficulty in giving the correct Hungarian should be told to review the *Word Study* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not take time in this exercise to talk about the *why*. Stick to the *how*.

The Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Hungarian for the English equivalents of the expressions you studied in the *Word Study*. If you give the wrong answer, the Guide will let you know by making a negative sign; or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they think your answer is wrong. The Leader will then immediately call on someone else for the right answer. If you have difficulty in giving the correct Hungarian, review the *Word Study* thoroughly.

3. Listening In

To the Group Leader: Re-read the note *To the Group Leader* in Section D.1 of Unit 1. Follow the same procedure as outlined there. The first time you go through the conversations, check up on the meaning at the end of each conversation. Then go through all of them a second time without stopping. Finally, assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Get them to do a little acting if you can. Encourage them to speak loudly and clearly and to get into the spirit of the situation.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations and repeat after him in unison. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Hungarian immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt. Ask some other member of the group to give you the English equivalent or in case no one knows, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit and make sure that you understand everything before you proceed any further. Go through the conversations a second time, repeating after the Guide individually. Then take parts in the conversations. This exercise contains almost all the new words you have learned in this unit.

Record Side 4B, beginning.

1. *An introduction.*

John:	paa-l‿ur kee-rem, se-ret-neem‿be-mu-tat-ni šaan-do-r‿ee-vaat.	Pál ur kérem, szeretném bemutatni Sándor Évát.
	teg-nap ta-laal-kos-tunk.	Tegnap találkoztunk.
Paul:	na-dyo-n‿ö-rü-lök, šaan-dor‿ki-šas-sony.	Nagyon örülök, Sándor kisasszony.
Eve:	nem‿laat-ta-m‿ön-t‿a‿saal-lo-daa-ban teg-nap?	Nem láttam önt a szállodában tegnap?
Paul:	de‿i-gen.	De igen.
John:	ha‿yoo-l em-leek-sem paa-l‿ur nyu‿yorg-bool yön.	Ha jól emlékszem Pál ur New Yorkból jön.
Eve:	na-dyo-n‿yool‿be-seel ma-dya-rul.	Nagyon jól beszél magyarul.
Paul:	kö-sö-nöm, šaan-dor kiš-as-sony.	Köszönöm, Sándor kisasszony.
	ön‿be-see-l‿ang-go-lul?	Ön beszél angolul?

Eve:	ne-m‿eer-te-k‿ang-go-lul.	Nem értek angolul.
Paul:	nem‿bay! si-ve-šen‿be-see-lek‿ma-dya-rul. de‿kee-rem be-seey-yen‿laš-šab-ban.	Nem baj! Szivesen beszélek magyarul. De kérem beszéljen lassabban.
Eve:	na-dyon‿si-ve-šen. ha‿nem‿ča-loo-dom ö-n‿eeppe-n‿a‿mo-zi-bool yön.	Nagyon szivesen. Ha nem csalódom ön épen a moziból jön.
Paul:	i-gen. de‿hol‿va-n‿edy‿ven-deeg-löö?	Igen. De hol van egy vendéglő?
John:	as‿hi-sem yobb-ra‿va-n‿eddy.	Azt hiszem jobbra van egy.
Paul:	kee-rem yöy-yön‿ve-le-m‿edy‿ven-deeg-löö-be.	Kérem jöjjön velem egy vendéglőbe.
Eve:	per-se. vi-sont-laa-taaš-ra.	Persze. Viszontlátásra.
John:	vi-sont-laa-taaš-ra.	Viszontlátásra.

2. *Paul and Eve at the restaurant.*

Paul:	ee-va, kaa-vee-t‿a-kar vaty‿te-yet?	Éva, kávét akar vagy tejet?
Eve:	ety‿kiš‿šört se-ret-neek.	Egy kis sört szeretnék.
Paul:	een‿hušt meg‿bur-go-nyaa-t‿a-ka-ro-k‿en-ni.	Én hust meg burgonyát akarok enni.
Eve:	kee-rem, paal, ady-dyo-n‿ety‿tsi-ga-ret-taat me-g‿edy‿dyu-faat.	Kérem, Pál, adjon egy cigarettát meg egy gyufát.
Paul:	mit‿pa-ran-čol? bo-čaa-na-tot kee-rek, de‿nem‿eer-tem. Mit‿mond?	Mit parancsol? Bocsánatot kérek, de nem értem. Mit mond?
Eve:	(looking in her bag) nem‿bay. va-n‿itt ety‿tsiga-ret-ta.	Nem baj. Van itt egy cigaretta.
Paul:	oo, ér-tem. pa-ran-čoy-yo-n‿edy‿dyu-faat.	Oh, értem. Parancsoljon egy gyufát.
Eve:	kö-sö-nöm. it-t‿a‿šör, a‿huš, me-g‿a‿bur-go-nya.	Köszönöm. Itt a sör. a hus, meg a burgonya.
Paul:	kee-rek ety‿kiš‿kaa-veet.	Kérek egy kis kávét.
Eve:	paal, haany-ko-r‿eer-ke-zi-k‿a‿vo-nat?	Pál, hánykor érkezik a vonat?

Paul:	as‿hi-sem ket-töö-kor. haa-ny‿oo-ra‿van?	Azt hiszem kettőkor. Hány óra van?
Eve:	e-dy‿oo-ra‿van.	Egy óra van.
Paul:	hol‿va-n‿a-z‿aal-lo-maaš?	Hol van az állomás?
Eve:	(pointing) ot-t‿a-z‿aal-lo-maaš.	Ott az állomás.
	ha‿nem‿ča-loo-dom itt‿yö-n‿a‿ko-vaa-š‿ur a‿saal-lo-daa-bool.	Ha nem csalódom itt jön a Kovács ur a szállodából.
Paul:	nem‿si-ve-šen laa-tom.	Nem szivesen látom.
	ko-vaach nem‿be-seel ang-go-lul; ne-m‿eer-tem mit‿mond.	Kovács nem beszél angolul; nem értem mit mond.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

As in Unit I, converse on such topics as the following:

1. A meets B and talks with her about where both of them are from.
2. A man orders a meal in a restaurant and invites the waitress to a movie.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Read again the instructions given in Section F of the preceding unit. If necessary, spend the first part of the group meeting in individual study of the *Basic Sentences* or checking up on vocabulary, as in Section E. Then continue the conversations which you started in Section E.

FINDER LIST

The new words introduced in this unit, with their English equivalents, are listed below in alphabetical order for your convenience. The conventional spelling is enclosed in parentheses after each entry.

a-ki-vel (akivel) "with whom"

-ba [as in mo-zi-ba (moziba)] "into"

be-mu-tat-ni (bemutatni) "to introduce"

be-seed (beszéd) "conversation, speech"

-bool (-ból) [as in nyu‿yorg-bool (New Yorkból)] "from (inside)"

ča-loo-dom (csalódom) "I am mistaken"
de (de) "but"
dye-re i-de (gyere ide) "come here"
een (én) "I"
ep-pen (épen) "just"
eer-t‿ön (ért ön?) "do you understand?"
ee-va (Éva) "Eve"
em-leek-sem (emlékszem) "I remember"
ey-yön-ni (eljönni) "to come away"
fo-ya-maan (folyamán) "during"
gy—listed under *dy*
ha (ha) "if"
hi-sem (hiszem) "I believe it"
i-de (ide) "hither"
il-le-töö (illető) "person in question"
iš-me-ret-len (ismeretlen) "stranger"
yoo‿mu-la-taašt (jó mulatást) "have a good time"
yöy-yön (jöjjön) "come"
keer-lek (kérlek) "I ask you"
-kor (-kor) [as in nyolts-kor (nyolckor)] "at . . . time"
laat-ta-m‿önt (láttam önt) "I saw you"
ma-ga (maga) "you, yourself, self"
mek-soo-li-ta-ni (megszólitani) "to address"
mit‿pa-ran-čol (mit parancsol) "what can I do for you?"
na-dyon‿si-ve-šen (nagyon szivesen) "very gladly"
-naal (-nál) [as in ko-vaa-čeek-naal (Kovácséknál)] "at"
ne-ve (neve) "his name"
ön (ön) "you (polite)"
ö-rü-lök, (örülök) "I am glad (to meet you)"
paal (Pál) "Paul"
peel-daa-ul (például) "for example"
per-se (persze) "of course"
-re (-re) [as in si-veš-šeeg-re (szivességre)] "for (onto)"
sa-bad (szabad) "may I, it is permitted"
sa-ba-d‿önt‿keer-nem (szabad önt kérnem) "may I ask you"
se-ret-neem (szeretném) "I would like it"
si-veš-šeeg-re (szivességre) "for a favor"
šaan-dor (Sándor) "Alexander"
ta-laa(l)-kos-tunk (találkoztunk) "we met"
teg-nap (tegnap) "yesterday"
tis-tel-t‿uram (tisztelt uram) "my dear sir"
-ul (-ul) [as in ang-go-lul (angolul), ma-dya-rul (magyarul), peel-daa-ul (például)] "like, as, in"
vady (vagy) "or"
-vel (-vel) "with" [as in ee-vaa-val (Évával)]
ve-lem (velem) "with me"

UNIT 3

WHAT'S YOUR TRADE?

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: Read carefully the note to the Leader in Section A of Unit 2. Then go through the *Basic Sentences* once, and take up the *Hints on Pronunciation.* Go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually, paying special attention to pronunciation.

Go through the *Basic Sentences,* in unison, in the same way you did for Section A of the preceding unit. Be sure to put plenty of life into your repetition of the sentences. After you have gone through the *Basic Sentences* once in unison and have done the *Hints on Pronunciation,* come back to the *Basic Sentences.* Pay particular attention to the points of pronunciation you have just been working on and go through the sentences at least twice more individually.

1. Basic Sentences

John and Charles discuss the occupations of their relatives.

Record Side 5A, beginning.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
John	*yaa-noš*	*János*
Charles	kaa-roy	Károly
what is your occupation	mi‿a‿fog-lal-ko-zaa-šod	mi a foglalkozásod
Charles, what's your occupation?	kaa-roy, mi‿a‿fog-lal-ko-zaa-šod?	Károly, mi a foglalkozásod?

Charles	*ká-roy*	*Károly*
I	een	én
waiter	pin-tseer	pincér
am	va-dyok	vagyok
I'm a waiter.	een‿pin-tseer va-dyok.	Én pincér vagyok.
and	eeš	és
you	te	te
And you?	eeš‿te?	És te?
	yaa-noš	
my occupation	a-z‿een‿fog-lal-ko-zaa-šom	az én foglalkozásom
barber	bor-beey	borbély
I'm a barber.	a-z‿een‿fog-lal-ko-zaa-šom bor-beey.	Az én foglalkozásom borbély.
but my son	de‿a‿fi-am	de a fiam
student	ta-nu-loo	tanuló
But my son is a student.	de‿a‿fi-am ta-nu-loo.	De a fiam tanuló.
he	öö	ő
doesn't work	nem‿dol-go-zik	nem dolgozik
He doesn't work.	öö‿nem‿dol-go-zik.	Ő nem dolgozik.
Students don't work.	ta-nu-look nem‿dol-goz-nak.	Tanulók nem dolgoznak.
	kaa-roy	
to me	ne-kem	nekem
three	haa-rom	három
my son	fi-am	fiam
there is	van	van
I have three sons.	ne-kem‿haarom‿fi-am‿van.	Nekem három fiam van.

the one	a-z‿edy-dyik	az egyik
doctor	or-voš	orvos
One is a doctor.	a-z‿edy-dyik or-voš.	Az egyik orvos.
the other	a‿maa-šik	a másik
soldier	ka-to-na	katona
The other (is a) soldier.	a‿maa-šik ka-to-na.	A másik katona.
	yaa-noš	
Stephen	išt-vaan	István
what does he do	mi či-naal*	mit csinál
What does Stephen do?	išt-vaan mi‿či-naal?	István mit csinál?
	kaa-roy	
tailor	sa-boo	szabó
Stephen (is a) tailor.	išt-vaan sa-boo	István szabó.
and your brother	ee-š‿a‿fi-vee-red	és a fivéred
also a tailor	iš‿sa-boo	is szabó
And is your brother a tailor too?	ee-š‿a‿fi-vee-re-d‿iš‿sa-boo?	És a fivéred is szabó?

Record Side 5B, beginning.

	yaa-nos	
No, my brother isn't a tailor.	nem, a‿fi-vee-rem nem‿sa-boo.	Nem, a fivérem nem szabó.
He's a shoemaker.	öö tsi-pees.	Ő cipész.
He makes shoes.	tsi-pöö-ket‿či-nál.	Cipőket csinál.
his son	a-z‿öö‿fi-a	az ő fia
clerk	hi-va-tal-nok	hivatalnok
His son is a clerk.	a-z‿öö‿fi-a hi-va-tal-nok.	Az ő fia hivatalnok.
He works in a bank.	edy‿bang-ban dol-go-zik.	Egy bankban dolgozik.

*Note rapid speech-form of the speaker on the record *mičinaal.*

my father	a-z‿ee-n‿a-paam	az én apám
and his father	ee-š‿a-z‿öö‿ap-pya	és az ő apja
farmers	föld-mü-ve-löök	földmüvelők
My father and his father are farmers.	a-z‿ee-n‿a-paam ee-š‿a-z‿öö‿ap-pya föld-mü-ve-löök.	Az én apám és az ő apja földmüvelők.
your father	a‿te‿a-paad	a te apád
with what	mi-vel	mivel
occupies himself	fog-lal-ko-zik	foglalkozik
What is your father's business?	a‿te‿a-paad mi-vel‿fog-lal-ko-zik?	A te apád mivel foglalkozik?
	kaa-roy	
my father	a-z‿a-paam	az apám
like	mint	mint
one of my sons	a-z‿edy-dyik‿fi-am	az egyik fiam
a soldier	ka-to-na	katona
My father is, like one of my sons, a soldier.	a-z‿a-paam, min-t‿a-z‿edy-dyik fi-am, ka-to-na.	Az apám, mint az egyik fiam, katona.
My father and my son are soldiers.	a-z‿a-paam ee-š‿a‿fi-am ka-to-naak.	Az apám és a fiam katonák.
but my brother	de‿a‿fi-vee-rem	de a fivérem
is also a doctor	i-š‿or-voš	is orvos
like my other son	min-t‿a‿maa-šik‿fi-am	mint a másik fiam
But my brother is also a doctor like my other son.	de‿a‿fi-vee-re-m‿i-š‿or-voš, min-t‿a‿má-šik‿fi-am.	De a fivérem is orvos mint a másik fiam.
My brother and my son are doctors.	a‿fi-vee-rem ee-š‿a‿fi-am or-vo-šok.	A fivérem és a fiam orvosok.
	yaa-noš	
your daughter	laa-nyod	lányod
Do you have a daughter also?	laa-nyo-d‿iš van?	Lányod is van?

	ká-roy	
Yes, I have a daughter too.	i-gen, laa-nyo-m‿iš van.	Igen, lányom is van.
Julian Smith	ko-vaadž‿dyu-la	Kovács Gyula
his chambermaid	so-ba-laa-nya	szobalánya
Julian Smith's chambermaid.	ko-vaadž‿dyu-la so-ba-laa-nya.	Kovács Gyula szobalánya.
Record Side 6A, beginning.		
She's a chambermaid at the Smiths.	so-ba-laa-ny‿a ko-vaa-čeek-naal.	Szobalány a Kovácséknál.
	yaa-noš	
My daughter doesn't work.	a-z‿een‿laa-nyom nem‿dol-go-zik.	Az én lányom nem dolgozik.
She's married.	feer-neel van.	Férjnél van.
her husband	a‿feer-ye	a férje
clerk	hi-va-tal-nok	hivatalnok
Her husband is a clerk.	a‿feer-ye hi-va-tal-nok.	A férje hivatalnok.
in the bank	bang-ban	bankban
He works at the bank.	bang-ban‿dol-go-zik.	Bankban dolgozik.
	kaa-roy	
he earns	ke-reš	keres
Is he well paid?	yool‿ke-reš?	Jól keres?
	yaa-noš	
Very well.	na-dyo-ny‿yól.	Nagyon jól.
enough	e-leeg	elég
money	peenst	pénzt
He earns enough money.	e-leek‿peenst‿ke-reš.	Elég pénzt keres.
Clerks are well paid.	hi-va-tal-no-kok yool‿ke-reš-nek.	Hivatalnokok jól keresnek.

but now	de‿mošt	de most
good-bye	vi-sont-laa-taaš-ra	viszontlárásra
But good-bye now.	de‿mošt vi-sont-laa-taaš-ra.	De most viszontlátásra.
I want to buy some cigarettes.	tsi-ga-ret-taa-ka-t‿a-ka-rok ven-ni.	Cigarettákat akarok venni.
	kaa-roy	
Good-bye.	vi-sont-laa-taaš-ra.	Viszontlátásra.

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for the *Hints on Pronunciation* of *Unit II*. Have the group read and discuss the explanations, and then go through the *Practice* for each *Hint* with the Guide or phonograph record.

You have learned that in the Aids to Listening the letter combination *dy* stands for a sound like *d* and *y* run together into one sound, as some people pronounce *d* in *duke*. Notice, however, that in the following two words it is pronounced doubly long:

PRACTICE 1

Record Side 6A, after first spiral.

eddy	*egy*	edy-dyik	*egyik*

You have also heard the sound of doubly long *ddy* in some words where the conventional spelling indicated the letter *d* followed by the letter *j*, but the transcription has *ddy*.

PRACTICE 2

Record Side 6A, after 2nd spiral.

mon-dya	*mondja*	mon-dyaak	*mondják*
ad-dy on	*adjon*		

Notice that the letter combination *ly* of the conventional spelling represents simply the sound of *y*.

PRACTICE 3

Record Side 6A, after 3rd spiral.

kaa-roy	*Károly*	bee-yeg	*bélyeg*
fo-ya-maan	*folyamán*	bor-beey	*borbély*

When the letter *l* is followed by the letter *j* in conventional spelling, the two together represent a sound combination of *yy*, as in *the boy yells*.

PRACTICE 4

Record Side 6B, after 4th spiral.

be-seey-yen	*beszéljen*

In the following phrases you will hear combined the sounds in *Hints on Pronunciation* in Units 2 and 3. Review the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 2, then listen to your Guide pronounce the following, and imitate him closely:

PRACTICE 5

Record Side 6B, after 5th spiral.

kö-sö-nöm, mond-dyaa-k‿a‿föld-mü-ve-löök.
köszönöm, mondják a földmüvelők.

Kaa-roy bor-beey.
Károly borbély.

ö-rü-lök, mondy-dya‿a-z‿edy-dyik.
örülök, mondja az egyik.

öö‿mondy-dya: be-seey-yen.
ő mondja: beszéljen.

a‿bee-yeg öt‿pen-göö-be ke-rül.
a bélyeg öt pengőbe kerül.

yöy-yön, ot-t‿edy‿ven-deeg-löö.
jöjjön, ott egy vendeeglő.

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* once more individually, with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening* and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Again, do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* at least once again, this time taking turns in doing solo work. Keep your book closed, listen carefully to your Guide and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

3. Check Yourself

Did you pronounce very carefully all the vowels in each of the illustrations of this and the previous unit?

Were you especially careful in pronouncing what we have represented as the *dy* and *y* sounds?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

As in Section B. 1 of Unit 2, read the words and expressions in each list and make sure that you understand the meaning of the Hungarian. Then read the Comments which follow each list. When you have finished the *Word Study* ask other members of the group about points which are not clear to you.

COMMENT 1

ta-nu-look	students
föld-mü-ve-löök	farmers
or-vo-šok	doctors
hi-va-tal-no-kok	clerks

The above nouns both end in the sound *-k*. This sound is another suffix, like the one (*-t*) you learned about in the previous unit. This *-k* is called the *suffix of the plural*. Its function is, of course, to indicate that the word to which it has been added is plural, as opposed to singular. Thus, the noun *ta-nu-loo* means "student", and *ta-nu-look* means "students"; *föld-mü-ve-löö* means "farmer", and *föld-mü-ve-löök* means "farmers". Thus, further, *ven-deeg-löök* "restaurants", *mo-zik* "movies", *sa-book* "tailors", *yoo‿sa-book* "good tailors".

In these plurals of *or-voš* "doctor" and of *hi-va-tal-nok* "clerk", you meet again the *auxiliary vowel* before the suffix. For the above nouns, the auxiliary vowel is *-o-*, but in other words it is *-e-*; *pin-tseer* "waiter", *pin-tsee-rek* "waiters", *tsi-pees* "shoemaker", *tsi-pee-sek* "shoemakers"; the vowel is in other words *-a-*: *ur* "gentleman", *u-rak* "gentlemen", *aar* "price", *aa-rak* "prices"; still other words have *-o-*.

a-z‿a-paam ee-š‿a‿fi-am ka-to-naak.	my father and my son are soldiers.

When a noun ends in the short vowels *-a-* or *-e-*, you fuse the auxiliary vowel with this short vowel and get a corresponding long vowel. Thus in *ka-to-na* "soldier", *ka-to-naak* "soldiers"; *saal-lo-da* "hotel", *saal-lo-daak* "hotels"; *eš-te* "evening", *eš-teek* "evenings".

It should be quite evident to you from the foregoing discussion that the use of the suffix of the plural is in all respects analogous to the use of the suffix of the direct object. Again, you are advised to learn nouns with their auxiliary vowels, for it will save you time if you do so at this stage.

tsi-pöö-ket či-naal.	he makes shoes.
tsi-ga-ret-taa-ka-t‿a-ka-rok ven-ni.	I want to buy some cigarettes.

In these examples you will note at once that the nouns *tsi-pöö* ("shoe") and *tsi-ga-ret-ta* ("cigarette") are (1) in the plural and (2) objects of the verbs *či-naal* ("he makes") and *a-ka-rok ven-ni* ("I want to buy") respectively. Consequently, and in accordance with the rules you have learned, the nouns take both the plural suffix (*tsi-pöök* "shoes", *tsi-ga-ret-taak* "cigarettes"—the latter with regular lengthening of the short *-a-* to long *-aa-*), and the object suffix (*tsi-pöö-ket*, with the auxiliary vowel *-e-*; *tsi-ga-ret-taa-kat*, with the auxiliary vowel *-a-*). You have to note only that the sign of the plural always precedes the sign of the object, and you will be able to form similar examples, such as: a *pin-tsee-re-ket ke-re-šem* ("I am looking for the waiters"), *a-z‿il-le-töö-ket be-mu-ta-tom* ("I introduce the persons in question"), *a-z‿u-ra-kat mek-soo-li-ta-ni* ("to address the gentlemen").

COMMENT 2

ko-vadž‿dyu-la	Julian Smith	šaan-do-r‿ee-va	Eve Alexander
	grin paal	Paul Green	

Have you noticed that when you give a name in Hungarian you give the surname first, followed by the given name?

šaan-do-r_ee-va_kiš-as-sony	Miss Eve Alexander
grin paa-l_ur	Mr. Paul Green
ko-vaa-č_ur	Mr. Smith

Note from these examples that titles like Mr., and Miss follow the names. The order therefore is always: Surname, Given name, Mr. (or Mrs., or Miss). Thus, *ko-vaadž_dyu-la_ur; šaan-dor_kiš-as-sony*. What would your own name be in Hungarian?

ko-vaač-nee Kovácsné	Mrs. Kovács

Whereas Hungarian has a separate word for Mr. and for Miss, it does not have a separate word for Mrs., but instead, simply attaches *-nee* to the name. Thus you say, *šaan-dor-nee* (Mrs. Alexander), *ko-va-č_kaa-roy-nee* (Mrs. Charles Smith), *griny_yaa-noš-nee* (Mrs. John Green), *šaan-do-r_išt-vaan-nee* (Mrs. Stephen Alexander).

COMMENT 3

Read aloud and learn the meanings of the following expressions from the *Basic Sentences.*

yool va-dyok.	I am well.
pin-tseer va-dyok.	I am a waiter.

The two expressions have the verb *va-dyok* in common. *Va-dyok* means 'I am'. You have learned the word for 'I' in a previous Unit: *een.* But it is not necessary in Hungarian to say *een_va-dyok* for 'I am', because the possibility of misunderstanding never arises. You use *een* only when you want to stress 'I'. Thus, to answer the question 'Which of you is the waiter?', you might say *een va-dyo-k_a_pin-tseer* 'I am the waiter.' But otherwise, simply omit the *een.* You could say, *laany va-dyok* 'I am a girl', *šaan-dor va-dyok* 'I am Alexander', *de_ee-n_ee-va_ki-šas-sony va-dyok* 'but I am Miss Eve', *nu_yorg-bool va-dyok* 'I am from New York', *hol va-dyok* 'where am I', *itt va-dyok* 'I am here', *nem_va-dyok* 'I am not'.

a_fi-am ta-nu-loo.	my son is a student.
a-z_edy-dyi-k_or-voš.	one is a doctor.
išt-vaan sa-boo.	Stephen is a tailor.
öö tsi-pees.	he is a shoemaker.

The English equivalents of these Hungarian expressions have the verb 'is' in common: but you find no word for it in the Hungarian. When you have an expression that consists of a noun (such as *ta-nu-loo, or-voš, sa-boo, tsi-pees*), and another noun (*fi-am, išt-vaan*) or pronoun (*edy-dyik, öö*), there is no verb in the Hungarian sentence. Other examples: *a-z‿a-paam grin‿paal* 'my father is Paul Green; *a‿maa-šik so-ba-laany* 'the other one is a chambermaid', *öö kaa-roy* 'he is Charles', *dyu-la nem‿hi-va-tal-nok* 'Julian is not a clerk'.

a-z‿a-paam ee-š‿a‿fi-am ka-to-naak.
my father and my son are soldiers.

The plurality of the noun (*ka-to-nak*) does not affect the rule: there is still no verb in the Hungarian. For instance: *öö eeš‿yaa-noš föld-mü-ve-löök* 'he and John are farmers'.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study

Before you leave the *Word Study*, cover the English equivalents in each list and make sure that you know the meaning of every Hungarian expression. Then cover the Hungarian and see if you can say each Hungarian expression when you are looking only at the English.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Review the first half of the *Basic Sentences*. Repeat individually with books closed. Work always to perfect your pronunciation; keep the meaning in mind; and observe examples of the points in *Word Study* you have just covered.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*. Follow the procedure suggested above.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in *Section A*, cover the English and test yourself by reading the Hungarian, just as you did in Section C of the previous unit. If you are not sure about the meaning of any words or phrases, when you have finished reading the Basic Sentences aloud, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

A. In the following exercise you have certain situations presented for which you are to choose the correct expression in Hungarian. Read the situation, *repeat aloud all of the solutions for each situation*, and then indicate for the next class meeting the answer which you consider the most appropriate.

John, Charles, and Stephen are discussing their various jobs.

1. *John asks Charles what his occupation is.*

a) kaa-roy mi‿či-naal?
Károly mit csinál?

b) yool‿ke-reš, kaa-roy?
Jól keres, Károly?

c) kaa-roy, mi‿a‿fog-lal-ko-zaa-šod?
Károly, mi a foglalkozásod?

2. *Charles answers that he is a tailor.*

a) hi-va-tal-nok va-dyok.
Hivatalnok vagyok.

b) sa-boo va-dyok.
Szabó vagyok.

c) föld-mü-ve-löö va-dyok.
Földmüvelő vagyok.

3. *John says he is a shoemaker.*

a) tsi-pees va-dyok.
Cipész vagyok.

b) pin-tseer va-dyok.
Pincér vagyok.

c) bor-beey va-dyok.
Borbély vagyok.

4. *Stephen says that one of his sons is a soldier.*

a) a-z‿edy-dyik‿laa-nyom ta-nu-loo.
Az egyik lányom tanuló.

b) a‿maa-šik‿fi-am ka-to-na.
A másik fiam katona.

c) a-z‿edy-dyik‿fi-am ka-to-na.
Az egyik fiam katona.

d) a‿maa-šik‿laa-nyom ta-nu-loo.
A másik lányom tanuló.

5. *Charles asks him if he has a daughter too.*

a) so-ba-laany?
Szobalány?

b) laa-nyo-d‿iš‿van?
Lányod is van?

6. *Stephen says yes, but she is married.*
   a) i-gen, de‿nem‿dol-go-zik.
   Igen, de nem dolgozik.
   b) i-gen, de‿feer-neel van.
   Igen, de férjnél van.

7. *John asks if his brother works also.*
   a) a‿fi-vee-re-d‿iš dol-go-zik?
   A fivéred is dolgozik?
   b) a-z‿ap-pya mi‿či-naal?
   Az apja mit csinál?

B. Read all of the Hungarian expressions aloud and choose the best ones to express the following situations.

a) You say that one of your sons is a doctor.
b) You ask what the other one does.
c) You say your father is a clerk.
d) You ask if he earns much (well).
e) You say he earns enough money at the bank.

1. ee-š‿a‿fi-a-d‿iš sa-boo?
   És a fiad is szabó?
2. e-leek‿peenst‿ke-re-š‿a‿bang-ban.
   Elég pénzt keres a bankban.
3. a-z‿edy-dyik‿fi-am or-voš.
   Az egyik fiam orvos.
4. pin-tseer.
   Pincér.
5. a‿laa-nyom ta-nu-loo.
   A lányom tanuló.
6. a‿maa-šik mi‿či-naal?
   A másik, mit csinál?
7. yool‿ke-reš?
   Jól keres?
8. a-z‿a-paam dol-go-zik.
   Az apám dolgozik.
9. a-z‿a-paam hi-va-tal-nok.
   Az apám hivatalnok.
10. a‿so-ba-laany feer-neel van.
    A szobalány férjnél van.
11. dyu-faa-t‿a-ka-rok ven-ni.
    Gyufát akarok venni.
12. or-vo-šok yool‿ke-reš-nek.
    Orvosok jól keresnek.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Section D of Unit 2. Call on different students (not in any fixed order) to give their answers in Hungarian for the exercise *What Would You Say?* in Section C.3 of this unit. Encourage them to give the answers directly and not from the books, if possible. Then check on the students' knowledge of the meaning in English of the different expressions in Hungarian.

Go back to the last exercises in the preceding section. The Leader will call for your answers in Hungarian for the exercises. If you can, give the correct answers without reading from the book. Other members of the group will criticize the choice made if they disagree. The Leader will then call for the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercises.

2. Word-Study Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for this part of Section D of Unit 2. Call on various students for the correct Hungarian for the English equivalents of the expressions given in the *Word Study.* Make sure that all the students have learned the material thoroughly.

Go back to the *Word Study* in Section B. The Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Hungarian for the English equivalents of the expressions you went over in the *Word Study.* Be sure you are able to give the correct form without having to read it from the book. If you have any difficulty, review the *Word Study* thoroughly.

3. Listening In

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for *Listening In* in Section D.3 of Unit 2. Check up on meaning at the end of each conversation on the first time through; then, after the second time through, assign parts and have the students read the conversations.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations, or while they are played on the phonograph, and repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. At the end of each conversation, check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt, either by asking some other member of the group or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows.

Go through the conversations again, with your books open, being sure to imitate carefully and to keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying. Then take turns speaking the parts. Make the conversations real. Say your part as though you meant it.

1. *Julian introduces Charles to Mr. Smith and they discuss their work.*

Unit 3, Record Side 4, beginning.

Gyula:	yoo‿eš-teet, ko-vaa-č‿ur! hody‿van?	Jó estét, Kovács ur! Hogy van?
Kovács ur:	kö-sö-nöm yool. eeš ön?	Köszönöm jól. És ön?
Gyula:	kö-sö-nöm, e-leeg‿yool.	Köszönöm, elég jól.
	se-ret-neem‿be-mu-tat-ni‿kaa-royt.	Szeretném bemutatni Károlyt.
Kovács ur:	na-dyo-n‿ö-rü-lök.	Nagyon örülök.
	ö-n‿a‿bang-ban dol-go-zik?	Ön a bankban dolgozik?
Károly:	nem, nem, ko-vaa-č‿ur.	Nem, nem, Kovács ur.
	een‿bor-beey va-dyok.	Én borbély vagyok.
	a-z‿edy-dyik‿fi-am hi-va-tal-no-k‿a‿bang-ban.	Az egyik fiam hivatalnok a bankban.
Kovács ur:	haany‿fi-a‿van, kaa-roy?	Hány fia van, Károly?
Károly:	ne-kem‿haa-rom‿fi-a-m ee-š‿edy‿laa-nyom‿van: ee-va.	Nekem három fiam és egy lányom van: Éva.
Kovács ur:	ee-va‿mit‿či-naal?	Éva mit csinál?
Károly:	a‿laa-nyo-m‿ety‿saal-lo-daa-ban dol-go-zik.	A lányom egy szállodában dolgozik.
	so-ba-laa-ny‿ott.	Szobalány ott.
Gyula:	kaa-roy, a‿laa-nyot‿feer-neel van?	Károly, a lányod férjnél van?
Károly:	per-se, feer-neel van.	Persze, férjnél van.
	de‿a‿feer-ye ka-to-na eeš‿nem‿yool ke-reš.	De a férje katona és nem jól keres.
Gyula:	i-gen, em-leek-sem.	Igen, emlékszem.
Kovács ur:	a-z‿een‿fi-a-m‿iš ka-to-na.	Az én fiam is katona.
Károly:	eeš ön?	És ön?
Kovács ur:	ee-n‿or-voš va-dyok.	Én orvos vagyok.

Károly:	a‿maa-šik‿fi-am i-š‿or-voš.	A másik fiam is orvos.
Gyula:	ee-š‿išt-vaan mi‿či-naal?	És István mit csinál?
Károly:	išt-vaan, min-t‿a‿fi-vee-rem, sa-boo.	István, mint a fivérem, szabó.

2. *John and Stephen in a restaurant.*

János:	išt-vaan‿keer-lek, dye-re‿i-de.	István kérlek, gyere ide.
István:	si-ve-šen. mi-t‿a-kar?	Szivesen. Mit akar?
János:	se-ret-neek‿en-ni‿a‿ven-deeg-löö-ben, de‿a‿pin-tsee-r‿ott nem‿be-see-l‿an-go-lul.	Szeretnék enni a vendéglőben, de a pincér ott nem beszél angolul.
István:	ne-m‿eer-t‿ön‿ma-dya-rul?	Nem ért ön magyarul?
János:	i-gen, eer-tek‿ma-dya-rul. de‿nem‿yool.	Igen, értek magyarul. De nem jól.
Pincér:	mit‿pa-ran-čol-na-k‿a-z‿u-rak?	Mit parancsolnak az urak?
János:	kee-rek hušt, bur-go-nyaat, kaa-veet‿ee-š‿ety‿kiš‿te-yet.	Kérek hust, burgonyát, kávét és egy kis tejet.
István:	een‿šört se-ret-neek.	Én sört szeretnék.
János:	yoo‿e-z‿a‿ven-deeg-löö?	Jó ez a vendéglő?
István:	e-leeg‿yoo.	Elég jó.
	de‿a-z‿a‿saal-lo-da‿ott, e-dye-ne-še-n‿e-löö-re, na-dyon‿yoo.	De az a szálloda ott, egyenesen előre, nagyon jó.

3. *Charles and Stephen discuss the work of their relatives.*

István:	paal hol‿dol-go-zik?	Pál hol dolgozik?
Károly:	paa-l edy‿ven-deeg-löö-ben pin-tseer.	Pál egy vendéglőben pincér.
István:	ho-l‿a‿ven-deeg-löö?	Hol a vendéglő?
Károly:	a-z‿aal-lo-maa-šon.	Az állomáson.
István:	a‿fi-a-d‿iš dol-go-zik?	A fiad is dolgozik?
Károly:	a‿fi-am ta-nu-loo.	A fiam tanuló.
	öö nem‿dol-go-zik.	Ő nem dolgozik.

István:	ee-š‿a‿fi-vee-red?	És a fivéred?
Károly:	öö tsi-pees.	Ő cipész.
István:	hol‿či-naal tsi-pöö-ket?	Hol csinál cipőket?
Károly:	a‿fi-vee-re-m‿a‿saal-lo-daa-ban dol-go-zik.	A fivérem a szállodában dolgozik.
István:	ee-va feer-neel van?	Éva férjnél van?
Károly:	i-gen. a feer-ye a‿ko-vaa-čeek-naal dol-go-zik.	Igen. A férje a Kovácséknál dolgozik.
	hi-va-tal-no-k‿ott.	Hivatalnok ott.
István:	ee-š‿a-z‿ap-pya?	És az apja?
Károly:	a-z‿ap-pya föld-mü-ve-löö.	Az apja földmüvelő.
	paa-l‿ap-pya mi-vel‿fog-lal-ko-zik?	Pál apja mivel foglalkozik?
István:	paa-l‿ap-pya bor-beey.	Pál apja borbély.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Just as you did in Section E of Unit 2, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit, cover up the Hungarian and test yourself to see how many words and phrases you can say in Hungarian when you are looking only at the English.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: As in Unit 2, go around the class calling on various students and asking them: "HODY MOND-dyaak MA-dya-rul?" for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*, with their books closed. If any student does not answer in a reasonable time, do not allow hemming and hawing; call on another student. Make sure that every student speaks loud enough so that all can hear. Do not allow any mumbling. Any student who cannot give satisfactory answers needs more review of the *Basic Sentences.*

As you did in Unit 2, supply the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*, when the Leader calls on you. Give your answers in a clear, loud voice, so that everyone can hear you.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Section E.3 of Unit 2. Have the students converse, first following closely the model of the conversations outlined below and then changing the situation slightly.

As you did in the *Conversation* in *Section E* of *Unit* 1, first go through the *Basic Sentences* and *Listening In* sections of this *Unit*, taking turns reading them with your book open. As soon as you can speak the parts smoothly without looking at your books, then pass to acting them out in front of the group; keep this up until you can do this easily and smoothly.

Then you can change the situations somewhat, and introduce material from the previous *Units*. Use your imagination in thinking up various combinations of situations. Here are some suggestions:

(a) Two friends meet and ask each other about the work that fathers, sons, and daughters are doing.

(b) Paul works in a bank and Stephen works in a hotel, and they are telling Charles about this.

(c) John and Charles are talking about their sons, one of whom is in the army, another is too young and is a student, and another who is a farmer.

In this way, you can go on conversing until everyone is able to speak every part of the conversation with absolute ease and without errors.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E. If necessary to make the conversations smoother and more successful, review parts 1 and 2 of Section E.

FINDER LIST

This finder list has all the new words used in this unit. These, as well as those of the previous two units, are words and expressions that you should know perfectly by this time.

a-pa (apa) "father"
a-paad (apád) "your father"
a-paam (apám) "my father"
ap-pya (apja) "his father"
-ban, -ben (-ban, -ben) "at, inside"
bank (bank) "bank"
bor-beey (borbély) "barber"
C— listed under ts

či-naal (csinál) "he makes, he does"
dol-go-zik (dolgozik) "he works"
dyu-la (Gyula) "Julian"
edy-dyik (egyik) "one (of them)"
eeš (és) "and"
feery (férj) "husband"
feer-neel van (férjnél van) "she is married"
fi-am (fiam) "my son"

fi-vee-red (fivéred) "your brother"
fog-lal-ko-zaa-šom (foglalkozásom) "my occupation"
föld-mü-ve-löö (földmüvelő) "farmer"
Gy— listed under dy
hi-va-tal-nok (hivatalnok) "clerk"
išt-vaan (István) "Stephen"
j— listed under y
ka-to-na (katona) "soldier"
kaa-roy (Károly) "Charles"
ke-reš (keres) "he earns, he is looking for"
laany (lány) "girl, daughter"
maa-šik (másik) "(the) other (one)"
mi‿a‿fog-lal-ko-zaa-šod? (mi a foglalkozásod?) "What is your occupation?"
mint (mint) "as, like"
mi‿či-naal (mit csinál?) "what does he do?"
mi-vel‿fog-lal-ko-zik (mivel foglalkozik) "with what does he occupy himself?"
movšt (most) "now"
ne-kem (nekem) "to me"
or-voš (orvos) "doctor"
öö (ő) "he"
peenz (pénz) "money"
pin-tseer (pincér) "waiter"
sa-boo (szabó) "tailor"
sa-ba-laany (szobalány) "chambermaid"
ta-nu-loo (tanuló) "student"
te (te) "you (thou)"
tsi-pees (cipész) "shoemaker"
tsi-pöö (cipő) "shoe"
yool‿ke-reš? (jól keres?) "Does he earn much?"

UNIT 4

WHERE ARE YOU FROM?

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: From this point on you will need special instructions only when new sections or procedures are introduced in the learning units. With other sections, simply follow the procedures which have been recommended in the first three units and the instructions provided for the group at the beginning of the sections.

Go through the *Basic Sentences* in unison. Then work on the *Hints on Pronunciation* and after that go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Eugene Cooper has just met Mr. Black, a friend of his parents; they converse.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Record Side 7A, beginning.		
Mr. Black	*fekete ur*	*Fekete ur*
brought you	hosta	hozta
God	išten	Isten
to Hungary	madyarorsaagra	Magyarországra
Welcome to Hungary!	išten hosta madyarorsaagra!	Isten hozta Magyarországra!
what's new	mi uyšaag	mi ujság
in the United States	az edyešült aallamogban	az Egyesült Államokban
What's new in the U. S.?	mi uyšaag az edyešült aallamogban?	Mi ujság az Egyesült Államokban?

Eugene	*yenöö*	*Jenő*
not yet	meeg nem	még nem
I received	kaptam	kaptam
letter	levelet	levelet
from my wife	a feleŝeegemtööl	a feleségemtől
I haven't received a letter from my wife yet.	meeg nem kaptam levelet a feleŝeegemtööl.	Még nem kaptam levelet a feleségemtől.
	fekete ur	
I should like to introduce you to the family.	seretneem bemutatni önt a čalaadnak.	Szeretném bemutatni önt a családnak.
	yenöö	
dear	kedveŝ	kedves
my friend	baraatom	barátom
(Very) Gladly, my good friend.	nadyon siveŝen, kedveŝ baraatom.	Nagyon szivesen, kedves barátom.
my parents	a süleim	a szüleim
their friend	baraattya	barátja
My parents' friend is my friend.	a süleim baraattya az een baraatom.	A szüleim barátja az én barátom.
	fekete ur	
Thank you.	kösönöm.	Köszönöm.
I have one son and two daughters.	ety fiam eeŝ keet laanyom van.	Egy fiam és két lányom van.
but the boy	de a fiu	de a fiu
is not	ninč	nincs
at home	itthon	itthon
But the boy is not at home.	de a fiu ninč itthon.	De a fiu nincs itthon.

at relatives	rokonoknaal	rokonoknál
he lives	lakik	lakik
He lives with relatives.	rokonoknaal lakik.	Rokonoknál lakik.
At my younger brother's.	az öčeemneel.	Az öcsémnél.
He's a good boy.	yoo fiu.	Jó fiu.
He's an aviator.	repülöö.	Repülő.
with his younger sister	a hugaaval	a hugával
he went up	fölment	fölment
in an airplane	edy repülöögeebben	egy repülőgépben
Yesterday he went up in an airplane with his younger sister.	tegnap a hugaaval fölment edy repülöögeebben.	Tegnap a hugával fölment egy repülőgépben.
	yenöö	
Really?	igazaan?	Igazán?
Record Side 7B, beginning.		
	fekete ur	
Yes.	igen.	Igen.
But here comes my daughter now.	de a laanyom‿eeppen itt yön.	De‿a lányom épen itt jön.
Mary, I should like to introduce Eugene Cooper from Texas.	maaria, seretneem bemutatni‿kuper yenööt teksazbool.	Mária, szeretném bemutatni Cooper Jenőt Texasból.
	fekete kišassony	
Very glad to meet you.	nadyon örülök.	Nagyon örülök.

unfortunately	šaynoš	sajnos
my mother	az anyaam	az anyám
Unfortunately, my mother's not at home.	šaynoš az anyaam ninč itthon.	Sajnos az anyám nincs itthon.
to my sister	a nööveeremhez	a nővéremhez
she went	ment	ment
She went to my sister's.	a nööveeremhez ment.	A nővéremhez ment.
in town	a vaarožban	a városban
She's married and lives in town.	feerneel van eeš a vaarožban lakik.	Férjnél van és a városban lakik.
She's gone up to town.	fölment a vaarožba.	Fölment a városba.
	yenöö	
I'm very sorry!	nadyon šaynaalom!	Nagyon sajnálom!
	fekete ur	
Oh, it doesn't matter.	o, nem bay!	Oh, nem baj!
for lunch	ebeedre	ebédre
she will be at home	itthon less	itthon lesz
She'll be home for lunch.	ebeedre itthon less.	ebédre itthon lesz.
	fekete kišassony	
Are you married?	ön nööš?	Ön nős?
	yenöö	
Yes, my wife is in Texas.	igen, a feleševgem teksazban van.	Igen, a feleségem Texasban van.
She lives with my parents.	a süleimneel lakik.	A szüleimnél lakik.

	fekete kišassony	
What do you do for a living?	mi az ön foglalkozaaša?	Mi az ön foglalkozása?
	yenöö	
I'm a doctor.	orvoš vadyok.	Orvos vagyok.
And what do you do Mr. Black?	eeš ön mi činál, fekete ur?	És ön mit csinál, Fekete ur?
	fekete ur	
I'm a clerk.	een hivatalnok vadyok.	Hivatalnok vagyok.
	fekete kišassony	
my father	az apaam	az apám
armament	fedyver	fegyver
factory	dyaar	gyár
My father works in an armament factory.	az apaam ety fedyver dyaarban dolgozik.	Az apám egy fegyver gyárban dolgozik.
He's a clerk in the factory.	hivatalnok a dyaarban.	Hivatalnok a gyárban.
	yenöö	
Do you work too, Miss Black?	ön iž dolgozik, fekete kišassony?	Ön is dolgozik, Fekete kisasszony?
	fekete ur	
My daughter doesn't work.	a laanyom nem dolgozik.	A lányom nem dolgozik.
She's a student.	öö tanuloo.	Ő tanuló.
She's studying English.	angolul tanul.	Angolul tanul.
And German too.	eeš neemetül iš.	És németül is.

Record Side 8A, beginning.

She understands German, English and Hungarian.	eert neemetül, angolul, eeš madyarul.	Ért németül, angolul, és magyarul.
Do you understand German?	eert ön neemetül?	Ért ön németül?
	yenöö	
I don't understand German.	nem eertek neemetül.	Nem értek németül.
	fekete kisasszony	
But you speak Hungarian very well.	de madyarul nadyon yool beseel.	De magyarul nagyon jól beszél.
	fekete ur	
My wife speaks English.	a feleŝeegem beseel angolul.	A feleségem beszél angolul.
my older brother	a baatyaam	a bátyám
My older brother and sister [do] too.	a baatyaam eeš a nööveerem iš.	A bátyám, és a nővérem is.
My sister is from the U. S.	a nööveerem az edyeŝült aallamokbool van.	A nővérem az Egyesült Államokból van.
Would you care for a cigarette?	parančol ety tsigarettaat?	Parancsol egy cigarettát?
	yenöö	
Thanks.	kösönöm.	Köszönöm.
Please, Miss Black, give me a match.	keerem, fekete kiŝassony, addyon edy dyufaat.	Kérem, Fekete kisasszony, adjon egy gyufát.
Hungarian cigarette?	madyar tsigaretta?	Magyar cigaretta?

	fekete ur	
No, this is a German cigarette.	nem, ez edy neemet tsigaretta.	Nem, ez egy német cigaretta.
It's from a German factory.	neemed dyaarbool van.	Német gyárból van.
Like airplanes and shoes.	mint repülöögeepek eeš tsipöök.	Mint repülőgépek és cipők.
	fekete kisasszony	
Mr. Cooper, of course you will be here for lunch.	kuper ur, perse itt less ebeedre.	Cooper ur, persze itt lesz ebédre.
	yenöö	
Thank you very much.	nadyon kösönöm.	Nagyon köszönöm.

2. Hints on Pronunciation

The r-sound: The letter *r* represents a sound in Hungarian that differs from the sound in English that is represented by that same letter. In pronouncing it, the tip of your tongue should be vibrating against the roots of the upper row of your teeth. Put your tongue in position as if you were pronouncing *d* of English "do", but instead of pressing it against the back of the teeth, let the tip of your tongue tap several times lightly and rapidly against the roots of the teeth. Listen to your Guide, and imitate the following examples closely:

PRACTICE 1

Record Side 8A, after 1st spiral.

ur	ur	borbeey	borbély
baraat	barát	repülöö	repülő
fiveer	fivér	kerül	kerül
dyaar	gyár	orvoš	orvos
keerem	kérem	feery	férj

The sound dy: The sound represented by *dy* in the *Aids to Listening* (but by *gy* in the conventional spelling) is not difficult. It is like the *d* in *dew.* and *duty* as some speakers pronounce them, as if they were spelled *dyu* and *dyuty*. It sounds like *d* and *y* run together. Put your tongue as if you were about to say 'yes', then bring the tip up close behind the front teeth to pronounce *d*. Imitate the pronunciation of the Guide.

PRACTICE 2

Record Side 8A, after 2nd spiral.

madyar	magyar
nadyon	nagyon
fedyver	fegyver
dyaar	gyár
fedyverdyaar	fegyvergyár
hody	hogy
dyere	gyere
dyufa	gyufa

The sound written ty: The sound written *ty* is pronounced like *t* and *y* run together as in some pronunciations of *tune* and *tube* as if written *tyune* and *tyube*. Imitate the Guide's pronunciation of the following word.

PRACTICE 3

Record Side 8A, after 3rd spiral.

baatyaam	bátyám

Influence of sounds on each other: If you have been comparing the *Aids to Listening* with the conventional spelling, you have probably noticed already that letters of the Hungarian spelling often represent different sounds, depending on what sound follows them. In the following practice the words are conventionally spelled with *z*, but because this occurs before the sound *t* it is pronounced *s* as it is written in the Aids to Listening.

PRACTICE 4

Record Side 8A, after 4th spiral.

hosta	hozta
ast	azt
est	ezt
peenst	pénzt

The sound written tty: In the conventional spelling the sound written *tty* in the *Aids to Listening* is usually written *tj*, just as the sound *ddy* was often written *dj*. It is pronounced like the two *t*'s in 'hot tyune', pronouncing them as in Practice 3 above, with the tongue in position for *y*. Listen to the Guide and imitate him:

PRACTICE 5

Record Side 8A, after 5th spiral.

baraattya	barátja

3. A Note on Hungarian Spelling

Compare the following letters and combinations in the *Aids to Listening* and the Hungarian spelling.

Aids to Listening	*Sound in English example*	*Conventional Spelling*
dy	I'*d y*ell	gy
s	see	sz
š	*s*ure, *sh*ip	s
ts	ra*ts*	c
č	*ch*ur*ch*	cs
ž	vi*s*ion	zs
y	*y*es	j, ly

Usually *j* after a consonant in the conventional spelling, indicates a long or double consonant plus y, e.g. *tj* = tty, *dj* = ddy, *lj* = yy. In both the *Aids to Listening* and conventional spelling, double consonants combinations are represented by doubling only the first letter of the combination: *ddy, čč; ggy, ccs.*

Note the following exceptional words, that are not pronounced as they are conventionally spelled

eddy	egy
less	lesz
eeppen	épen
eddyik	egyik
eššöö	eső

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. VOWEL HARMONY

I.	kösönöm	köszönöm	thank you	ö-ö-ö
	vendeeglöö	vendéglő	restaurant	e-é-ő
	išmeretlen	ismeretlen	stranger	i-e-e-e
	repülöögeep	repülőgép	airplane	e-ü-ő-é
	emleeksem	emlékszem	I remember	e-é-e
II.	burgonya	burgonya	potatoes	u-o-a
	katona	katona	soldier	a-o-a
	foglalkozaaš	foglalkozás	occupation	o-a-o-á
	parančol	parancsol	orders	a-a-o
	čaloodom	csalódom	I am mistaken	a-ó-o

In the two groups of words listed above, notice the vowels. For your convenience they are listed in the last column. In Hungarian all native words (that is all words except some recent borrowings from some other language) that are not composed of more than one word (as is *fedyverdyaar* [*fegyvergyár*]) belong in either group I or group II above. In the first group belong all words with the vowels *e*, *ö*, *öö*, *ü*, in the second group belong all words with the vowels *a*, *aa*, *o*, *oo*, and *u*. We will call the first group *front vowels*, and the second *back vowels*.

kaavee	kávé	coffee
tsigaretta	cigaretta	cigarette
teksazbool	Texasból	from Texas
borbeey	borbély	barber
fiu	fiu	boy
bemutatni	bemutatni	introduce
kovaačeeknaal	kovácséknál	at the Smiths'

maašik	másik	other
hivatalnok	hivatalnok	clerk

The first four words of the list illustrate the vowels of foreign words, borrowed by Hungarian. The next five illustrate that the front vowels *i* and *ee* (and, rarely, *e*) may occur in words that have otherwise only back vowels.

B. SUFFIXES

You have learned the objective suffix *-t*, and the plural suffix *-k* in the preceding units. The choice of auxiliary vowel before these suffixes is partly determined by the law of vowel harmony that we have just discussed. If the word is composed of front vowels, the auxiliary vowel will also be a front vowel. If it is composed of back vowels, it will be a back vowel. This law holds not only for these two suffixes, but for most others in Hungarian as well.

1) ***The suffix -ban / -ben "in":***

bangban	bankban	in the bank
aallamogban	államokban	in the states
vaarožban	városban	in the town
repülöögeebben	repülőgépben	in the airplane
teksazban	Texasban	in Texas
dyaarban	gyárban	in the factory

Instead of using prepositions to express the ideas of "in" or "on" or "with" and similar ideas, Hungarian uses special endings for the words. To express the idea "in", one must add the ending *-ban* or *-ben* to the word, choosing the form with *a* if the rest of the word contains back vowels and the one with *e* if it contains front vowels. Thus *saallodaaban* (*szállodában*) 'in the hotel', but *vendeeglööben* (*vendéglőben*) 'in the restaurant'. Other examples:

vizben	vizben	in the water
kaaveeban	kávéban	in the coffee
čalaadban	családban	in the family
tsipööben	cipőben	in the shoe

2) *The suffix -ra / -re "for, onto":*

yobbra	jobbra	to the right
balra	balra	to the left
elööre	előre	to the front
siveššeegre	szivességre	for a favor
ebeedre	ebédre	for lunch
madyarorsaagra	Magyarországra	to Hungary

The suffix *-ra* or *-re* is selected by the same law of vowel harmony as determined the choice of *-ban* or *-ben* to express the idea "in". To express "to, onto," and "for" add *-ra* to a word composed of back vowels, *-re* to a word composed of front vowels. Other examples illustrating the variety of meanings of this suffix are:

beseedre	beszédre	to the speech
haaromra	háromra	for three, at three
haanyra?	hányra?	for how many?
haany ooraara	hány órára	for what time, at what o'clock
neegyre	négyre	for four, at four
tegnapra	tegnapra	for yesterday
önre	önre	onto you
soora	szóra	onto the word
šörre	sörre	onto the beer, after the beer
kenyeerre hušt enni	kenyérre hust enni	to eat meat upon, (or after) bread

3) *The suffix -ba / -be "into":*

mennyibe?	mennyibe?	into how much, into how many?
pengööbe	pengőbe	into pengő
vaarožba	városba	into town

The selection of *-ba* or *-be* is governed by the law of vowel harmony that you have just learned. Notice also in the *Aids to Listening* that with this suffix as with *-ban / -ben* (which also began with *b*) that *p*, *t*, *k*, *f*, *s*, *š* never occur directly before it, but instead these letters in the conventional spelling are pronounced *b, d, g, v, z, ž*. We'll have more to say later about such rules of pronunciation. Other examples of this suffix are:

vendeeglööbe	vendéglőbe	into the restaurant
saallodaaba	szállodába	into the hotel
klozedba	klozetba	into the toilet
az edyešült aallamogba	az Egyesült Államokba	into the United States

In asking the price of something you say: *mennyibe kerül?* (*mennyibe kerül?*) meaning literally, 'into how much does it come, or arrive?' You then reply: *öt pengööbe eeš tis filleerbe*, (*öt pengőbe és tiz fillérbe*) or just *öt pengöö tizbe* (*öt pengő tizbe*) or even simpler *öt tizbe* (*öt tizbe*) "five pengő and ten fillér," "five pengő ten," "five ten."

4) *How to say "in the manner of, like, as".*

angolul	angolul	in English, in the manner of the English
neemetül	németül	in German
madyarul	magyarul	in Hungarian

This suffix also has two forms: *-ul/-ül;* again, they are used in accordance with the principle of the harmony of the vowels, that is, you add *-ul* to words that have back vowels, and *-ül* to words that have front vowels. Note that in Hungarian, when you say you speak a language, you are really saying you speak it in the manner of a Hungarian, a German, an Englishman, and so forth. This suffix is not as common as the others you have had, and is used chiefly as indicated by the examples.

5) *The suffix -naal / -neel "at, by, at the house of".*

rokonoknaal	rokonoknál	at relatives
öčeemneel	öcsémnél	at my younger brother's
kovaačeeknaal	Kovácséknál	at the Smiths'

This suffix has two forms, *-naal/-neel*, used in accordance with the principle of vowel harmony. Other examples:

pintseerneel (*pincérnél*) "at the waiter", *saboonaal* (*szabónál*) "at the tailor", *sobalaany* (*szobalány*) *dyulaanaal* (*Gyulánál*) "she is a chambermaid at the house of Julian", *a felešeegemneel van* (*a feleségemnél van*) "it is by my wife", *a vonatnaal van a baraatom* (*a vonatnál van a barátom*) "my friend is at the train".

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study

Make sure that you know the English meanings and the Hungarian expressions for all the examples in the *Word Study*. Also be sure that you understand all the points discussed.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Go through the first record side of the *Basic Sentences* repeating individually after the Guide or the records.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Go through the last part of the *Basic Sentences*, repeating individually after the Guide or the records.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Working independently, check your knowledge of the meaning of the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences*.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

1. *You ask your friend for the news.*

a) išten hosta, baraatom.
Isten hozta, barátom.

b) mi uyšaag, baraatom?
Mi ujság, barátom?

c) haany oora van, baraatom?
Hány óra van, barátom?

2. *He says he got a letter from his wife.*
a) kaptam edy levelet a felešeegemtööl.
Kaptam egy levelet a feleségemtől.
b) nem kaptam edy levelet.
Nem kaptam egy levelet.
c) kaptam edy beeyeget a felešeegemtööl.
Kaptam egy bélyeget a feleségemtől.

3. *You ask if his wife is in town.*
a) a felešeege a saallodaaban van?
A felesége a szállodában van?
b) a felešeege a vaarožban van?
A felesége a városban van?
c) hol a felešeege?
Hol a felesége?

4. *He says she is staying at Charles'.*
a) saboonaal van.
Szabónál van.
b) kaaroy a saboonaal lakik.
Károly a szabónál lakik.
c) kaaroynaal lakik.
Károlynál lakik.

5. *You ask him what his occupation is.*
a) mi az ön foglalkozaaša?
Mi az ön foglalkozása?
b) parančol ety kiš vizet?
Parancsol egy kis vizet?
c) sabad önt keernem ety siveššeegre?
Szabad önt kérnem egy szivességre?

6. *He says he is a farmer.*
a) tsipees vadyok.
Cipész vagyok.
b) földmüvelöö vadyok.
Földmüvelő vagyok.
c) tanuloo vadyok.
Tanuló vagyok.

7. *You ask whether he works by the factory.*
a) ön dyufaakat činaal?
Ön gyufákat csinál?
b) ön a dyaarnaal dolgozik.
Ön a gyárnál dolgozik?
c) ön a dyaarban dolgozik.
Ön a gyárban dolgozik?

8. *He says his son makes airplanes.*
a) a laanyom repülöögeepeket činaal.
A lányom repülőgépeket csinál.
b) a fiam fedyvereket činaal.
A fiam fegyvereket csinál.
c) a fiam repülöögeepeket činaal.
A fiam repülőgépeket csinál.

9. *You say that the restaurant is by the hotel.*
a) a vendeeglöö a saallodaanaal van.
A vendéglő a szállodánál van.
b) a saalloda a vendeeglööneel van.
A szálloda a vendéglőnél van.
c) a saallodaanaal eeš a vendeeglööneel van.
A szállodánál és a vendéglőnél van.

10. *You say he will be home for lunch.*
- a) huš eež burgonya less ebeedre.
  Hus és burgonya lesz ebédre.
- b) mi less ebeedre?
  Mi lesz ebédre?
- c) ebeedre itthon less.
  Ebédre itthon lesz.

11. *You ask if he speaks Hungarian.*
- a) eert ön neemetül?
  Ért ön németül?
- b) beseel ön neemetül?
  Beszél ön németül?
- c) eert ön angolul?
  Ért ön angolul?

12. *He says he is very sorry.*
- a) nadyon šaynaalom.
  Nagyon sajnálom.
- b) nem bay.
  Nem baj.
- c) nadyon sivešen.
  Nagyon szivesen.

13. *You say your father is a doctor.*
- a) az apaam hivatalnok.
  Az apám hivatalnok.
- b) a fiam orvoš.
  A fiam orvos.
- c) az apaam orvoš.
  Az apám orvos.

14. *You say good day.*
- a) yoo reggelt.
  Jó reggelt.
- b) yoo napot.
  Jó napot.
- c) yoo mulataašt.
  Jó mulatást.

SECTION D--LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give in complete Hungarian sentences your solutions of the preceding exercises, as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Hungarian or English equivalent of the examples from the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for them. Be prepared to explain briefly any points in the discussion that he asks for.

3. Listening In

1. *Mr. Smith asks Mr. Alexander about his family.*

Record Side 8B, beginning.

Sándor ur:	yoo napot kovaač ur. hody van?	Jó napot Kovács ur. Hogy van?
Kovács ur:	kösönöm yool. mi uyšaag? hody van a čalaad?	Köszönöm jól. Mi ujság? Hogy van a család?
Sándor ur:	ninč uyšaag. kösönöm, a čalaad eleeg yool van	Nincs ujság. Köszönöm, a család elég jól van.
Kovács ur:	a laanya meeg az edyešült aallamogban van?	A lánya még az Egysült Államokban van?
Sándor ur:	igen, eeppen mošt kaptam edy levelet.	Igen, épen most kaptam egy levelet.
Kovács ur:	igazaan? eeš ištvaan hol van?	Igazán? És István hol van?
Sándor ur:	a fiam edy repülöögeebdyaarban dolgozik.	A fiam egy repülőgépgyárban dolgozik.
Kovács ur:	yool kereš?	Jól keres?
Sándor ur:	igen, eleeg yool kereš. mošt a vaarožban lakik.	Igen, elég jól keres. Most a városban lakik.
Kovács ur:	ety saallodaaban?	Egy szállodában?
Sándor ur:	nem, nem lakik saallodaaban. a süleimneel lakik.	Nem, nem lakik szállodában. A szüleimnél lakik.
Kovács ur:	ištvaan beseel neemetül?	István beszél németül?
Sándor ur:	igen, ištvan beseel neemetül. angolul iž beseel, de laššabban.	Igen, István beszél németül. Angolul is beszél, de lassabban.

Kovács ur:	eeš hody van a kedveš felešeege?	Es hogy van a kedves felesége?
Sándor ur:	kösönöm, a felešeegem yool van. eeppen itt yön. visontlaataašra, kovaač ur.	Köszönöm. a feleségem jól van. Épen itt jön. Viszontlátásra, Kovács ur.
Kovács ur:	visontlaataašra, šaandor ur.	Viszontlátásra, Sándor ur.

2. *Mr. and Mrs. Alexander talk about things in general.*

Sándorné:	mi uyšaag?	Mi ujság?
Sándor ur:	edy levelet kaptam: a hugom fölment a varožba. de ebeedre itthon less.	Egy levelet kaptam: a hugom fölment a városba. De ebédre itthon lesz.
Sándorné:	haany oorakor eerkezik a vonat?	Hány órakor érkezik a vonat?
Sándor ur:	as hisem tizre itt less.	Azt hiszem tizre itt lesz.
Sándorné:	mošt haany oora van?	Most hány óra van?
Sándor ur:	kilents. meeg van edy oora. mi less ebeedre?	Kilenc. Még van egy óra. Mi lesz ebédre?
Sándorné:	huš, burgonya eeš kaavee.	Hus, burgonya és kávé.
Sándor ur:	az anyaam itt less ebeedre?	Az anyám itt lesz ebédre?
Sándorné:	nem less itt. šaynoš az orvošaal van.	Nem lesz itt. Sajnos az orvosnál van.
Sándor ur:	eeš maaria?	És Mária?
Sándorné:	Maaria a nööveeremhez ment.	Mária a nővéremhez ment.

Sándor ur:	haanyra less ebeed?	Hányra lesz ebéd?
Sándorné:	kettööre.	Kettőre.

3. *Asking for directions.*

Ismeretlen:	bočaanatot keerek! keerem urašaagod, hol edy vendeeglöö?	Bocsánatot kérek! Kérem uraságod, hol egy vendéglő?
Én:	vendeeglöö? van edy vendeeglöö edyenešen elööre, de van meeg eddy a saallodaanaal iš.	Vendéglő? Van egy vendéglő egyenesen előre, de van még egy a szállodánál is.
Ismeretlen:	eeš a saalloda hol van?	És a szálloda hol van?
Én:	az eddyik saalloda itt van, eeš a maašik yobbra van; a dyaarnaal.	Az egyik szálloda itt van, és a másik jobbra van; a gyárnál.
Ismeretlen:	a fedyverdyaarnaal?	A fegyvergyárnál?
Én:	nem, a tsigarettadyaarnaal. ott a saalloda.	Nem, a cigarettagyárnál. Ott a szálloda.
Ismeretlen:	kösönöm. šaynoš nem yool beseelek madyarul.	Köszönöm. Sajnos nem jól beszélek magyarul.
Én:	oo, eleeg yool eert madyarul. nadyon sivešen. yoo napot.	Oh, elég jól ért magyarul. Nagyon szivesen. Jó napot.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Working independently, check your knowledge of the Hungarian equivalents of the English of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian for the English of the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

Suggested Topics:

1. Two persons meet in a restaurant. They greet each other, and ask after each other's relatives. They discuss the occupation of some of their relatives. Then they order food. Later they ask the waiter what time the movie starts. They find out what time it is. One invites the other to the movies.
2. Two persons meet in the street. One excuses himself, saying he is a stranger in town. He wants to know where he could find a tailor. The other tells him there is one to the left, by the factory. They separate, one thanking the other, and he saying that he was glad to give information.
3. One person introduces another to his family, and they talk about various types of work. One is from the United States, another from Hungary, and another from the town. The man from the United States is welcomed, and invited for lunch. He is supplied with cigarettes and matches. They discuss the knowledge of languages of the younger brother, who is a student.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Check-up by the Leader on the troublesome parts of the *Basic Sentences*. Then continue conversations.

FINDER LIST

anyaam (anyám) "my mother"
apaam (apám) "my father"

baraatom (barátom) "my friend"
baatyaam (bátyám) "my older brother"

čalaad (család) "family"

dyaar (dyár) "factory"

ebeed (ebéd) "lunch"

fekete (fekete) "black"
felešeegem (feleségem) "my wife"
fedyver (fegyver) "armament, arms, munitions"

fiu (fiu) "boy"
fölment (fölment) "went up"

geep (gép) "machine"
Gy listed under *dy*

hosta (hozta) "brought"
hugaaval (hugával) "with his younger sister"

igazaan (igazán) "really, truly"
išten (Isten) "God"
itthon (itthon) "here at home"

J listed under *y*

kaptam (kaptam) "I got, I received"
kedveš (kedves) "dear" (term of politeness)

lakik (lakik) "dwells, lives at"
less (lesz) "will be"
leveel (levél) "letter"

madyarorsaag (Magyarország) "Hungary"
maaria (Mária) "Mary"

ment (ment) "went"
meeg (még) "yet, still"
mi uyšaag? (mi ujság?) "what's new?"

neemet (német) "German"
ninč (nincs) "it (there) is not"
nööš (nős) "married" (said of a man)
nööveerem (nővérem) "my sister"

öčeem (öcsém) "my younger brother"

repülöö (repülő) "flier, aviator"
repülöögép (repülőgeep) "airplane"
rokon (rokon) "relative"

süleim (szüleim) "my parents"
šaynoš (sajnos) "unfortunately, alas"

uyšaag (ujság) "news"

vaaroš (város) "town"

yenöö (Jenő) "Eugene"

UNIT 5

LET'S TALK ABOUT THE WEATHER

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, then *Hints on Pronunciation*, and then go twice more through the *Basic Sentences* individually.

1. Basic Sentences

John and Paul talk about the weather and about John's sister, Eve.

Record Side 9A, beginning.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
John	*yaanoš*	*János*
Hello, Paul!	servus paal!	Szervusz Pál!
it pleases	tettsik	tetszik
Would you like some coffee?	tettsik ety kiš kaavee?	Tetszik egy kis kávé?
Paul	*paal*	*Pál*
Yes, thanks.	igen, kösönöm.	Igen, köszönöm.
It's cold.	hideg van.	Hideg van.
I'm cold.	faazom.	Fázom.
	yaanoš	
bad	ross	rossz
the weather	az idöö	az idő
Yes, the weather's bad.	igen, ross az idöö.	Igen, rossz az idő.

beautiful	seep	szép
today	maama	máma
(It's) not nice today.	nem seep maama.	Nem szép máma.
	paal	
cool	hüvöš	hüvös
it was	volt	volt
Yesterday it was cool.	tegnap hüvöš volt.	Tegnap hüvös volt.
perhaps	talaan	talán
tomorrow	holnap	holnap
Perhaps tomorrow the weather will be good.	talaan holnap yoo less az idöö.	Talán holnap jó lesz az idő.
	yaanoš	
last night	tegnap eeyyel	tegnap éjjel
this morning	ma reggel	ma reggel
warm	meleg	meleg
But last night and this morning it was warm enough.	de tegnap eeyyel eeš ma reggel eleeg meleg volt.	De tegnap éjjel és ma reggel elég meleg volt.
In the morning I was warm.	reggel melegem volt.	Reggel melegem volt.
Now in the evening it's cold.	mošt ešte hideg van.	Most este hideg van.
	paal	
Where's Eve?	eeva hol van?	Éva hol van?
	yaanoš	
noon	deel	dél
after	utaan	után
in the afternoon	deelutaan	délután
She went to town in the afternoon with her younger brother.	deelutaan a vaarožba ment az öččeevel.	Délután a városba ment az öccsével.

	pál	
it falls	ešik	esik
rain	eššöö	eső
But it's raining!	de ešik az eššöö!	De esik az eső!
	yaanoš	
every	minden	minden
goes up	fölmedy	fölmegy
She goes up every day.	minden nap fölmedy.	Minden nap fölmegy.
	paal	
What does she do there?	mi činaal ott?	Mit csinál ott?
	yaanoš	
she works	dolgozik	dolgozik
She works in a factory.	edy dyaarban dolgozik.	Egy gyárban dolgozik.
in the winter	teelen	télen
In the winter she works.	teelen dolgozik.	Télen dolgozik.

Record Side 9B, beginning.

	paal	
And in the summer?	eeš nyaaron?	És nyáron?
	yaanoš	
In the summer she studies.	nyaaron tanul.	Nyáron tanul.
	paal	
Is she home at noon?	deelben itthon van?	Délben itthon van?
	yaanoš	
Yes, she's here for lunch.	igen, ebeedre itthon van.	Igen, ebédre itthon van.

	paal	
noon	deel	dél
before	elöött	előtt
forenoon	deelelöött	délelőtt
And where is she in the morning?	eež deelelöött hol van?	És délelőtt hol van?
	yaanoš	
In the morning she is at her parents'.	deelelöött a süleineel van.	Délelőtt a szüleinél van.
	paal	
spring	tavas	tavasz
since	oota	óta
I haven't seen her since spring.	nem laattam tavas oota.	Nem láttam tavasz óta.
Please, give me a cigarette.	keerek ety tsigarettaat.	Kérek egy cigarettát.
	yaanoš	
Here's a match.	teššeek edy dyufa.	Tessék egy gyufa.
How's the coffee?	miyen a kaavee?	Milyen a kávé?
	paal	
Very good.	nadyon yoo.	Nagyon jó.
I think it's snowing.	as hisem ešik a hoo.	Azt hiszem esik a hó.
	yaanoš	
I don't think so.	nem hiszem.	Nem hiszem.
snow	hoo	hó
In the fall it doesn't snow.	öössel nem ešik a hoo.	Ősszel nem esik a hó.
	paal	
I hope so.	remeelem.	Remélem.
This year was bad enough.	ez az eev eleeg ross volt.	Ez az év elég rossz volt.

of the fall	öösi	őszi
month	hoonap	hónap
Every month of the fall it was cold.	minden öösi hoonap hideg volt.	Minden őszi hónap hideg volt.
I'd like some more coffee.	keerek meeg ety kiš kaaveet.	Kérek még egy kis kávét.
	yaanoš	
Certainly (lit. very gladly).	nadyon sivešen.	Nagyon szivesen.
Here you are!	teššeek.	Tessék.
	paal	
Thanks. What time is it?	kösönöm. haany oora van?	Köszönöm. Hány óra van?
	yaanoš	
Five.	öt.	Öt.
There's time for a movie from six to eight.	van idöö edy mozira hattool nyoltsig.	Van idő egy mozira hattól nyolcig.
	paal	
It is raining very hard.	nadyon ešik az eššöö.	Nagyon esik az eső.
The weather's too bad.	tul ross az idöö.	Tul rossz az idő.
	yaanoš	
It doesn't matter.	nem bay.	Nem baj.
to go	menni	menni
I'd like to go.	seretneek menni.	Szeretnék menni.
	paal	
No, there isn't time.	nem, ninč idöö.	Nem, nincs idő.
it is necessary	kell	kell
We have to go to the station.	az aallomaašra kell menni.	Az állomásra kell menni.

Record Side 10A, beginning.

The train gets here at eight.	a vonat nyoltskor eerkezik.	A vonat nyolckor érkezik.
	yaanoš	
That's true. Have another cigarette. Here's a match. There's still some coffee.	az igaz. teššeek meeg ety tsigaretta. itt edy dyufa. van meeg ety kiš kaavee.	Az igaz. Tessék még egy cigaretta. Itt egy gyufa. Van még egy kis kávé.
	paal	
Thanks, I don't want coffee. But I would like some water. This cigarette is wet.	kösönöm, nem akarok kaaveet. de ety kiš vizet seretneek. ez a tsigaretta vizeš.	Köszönöm, nem akarok kávét. De egy kis vizet szeretnék. Ez a cigaretta vizes.
	yaanoš	
Oh, I beg your pardon! Here's another one.	o, bočaanatot keerek! itt egy maašik.	Oh, bocsánatot kérek! Itt egy másik.
	paal	
Which is the way to the toilet?	merre van a klozet?	Merre van a klozet?
	yaanoš	
The toilet's to the left.	a klozet balra van.	A klozet balra van.

2. Hints on Pronunciation

The sound ts: The sound written *ts* in the *Aids to Listening*, is pronounced much like *ts* in the English word *cats*, but in Hungarian this sound occurs not only at the end of words, as in English, but also at the beginning of or inside words. You will notice that the conventional spelling writes for this *c*. Formerly *cz* was used for this sound and still in some old-fashioned writings or in names, you may find *cz*. Listen to the Guide and imitate him:

noting especially words with these sounds. The *ts* and *ch* of Hungarian are also said without the puff of breath. For initial *p, t, k,* notice especially in Practice 1: *pintseer* and *kilents;* in Practice 2: *parančol;* Practice 3: *tettsik;* Practice 5: *teššeek* and *kell.*

When you go back to the *Basic Sentences* notice on the first page, *Tettsik ety kiš kaavee?* and the reply, *Igen, kösönöm.* Note other examples of *p, t, k,* when you come to them, and try especially hard this time to imitate the Guide, or records.

3. A Note on the Conventional Spelling

This is the last unit in which you will find the *Aids to Listening* with all the text of the unit. There are a few rules you should know about the pronunciation before you leave the *Aids to Listening* altogether. In later units you will have practices on these and other points, and in Appendix I you will find a full explanation of the equivalents in terms of the *Aids to Listening* of the letters in the conventional spelling.

Holding your hands over your ears, try pronouncing these letters (*Aids to Listening*) *p, f, t, ty, s, š, k, ts.* Then, still with your hands over your ears say *b, v, d, dy, z, ž, g, dz.* Notice that with the second group, there is a humming sound, with the first group there isn't. The first group is called "voiceless consonants"; the second "voiced consonants". Within a word in Hungarian, and between two words that are spoken in one phrase, the consonants that come together will be all voiced or all voiceless. There are a few exceptions. But you must remember that even though the letters that stand for voiced sounds are written in the conventional spelling they stand for voiceless sounds when they occur before a voiceless sound. Of course, in the same way, the letters usually voiceless will be voiced before voiced sounds. Only certain of the voiced and voiceless sounds cause these changes. Here is a summary of the rules:

Conventional Spelling		*Aids to Listening*
b		p
d	Before:	t
g	p, t, k,	k
v	f, sz, s,	f
z	h, c, cs, ty	s
zs		š
dz	are pronounced	ts
gy	respectively:	ty

p		b
t		d
k	Before:	g
sz	b, d, g, z,	z
s	zs, gy	ž
c		dz
cs	are pronounced:	dž
ty		dy

sz or z + s	are pronounced	šš between vowels.

Here are other rules:

Conventional Spelling			Between Vowels	Before a Consonant
t, d ty, gy	+ s	are pronounced	čč	č
	+ zs	" "	ddž	dž
	+ sz	" "	tts	ts
	+ z	" "	ddz	dz
t, ty + j		are pronounced	tty	ty
d, gy + j		" "	ddy	dy
n, ny + j		" "	nny	
l + j		" "	yy	

Many of these combinations you know already. Later you will have special practices on them.

PRACTICE 1

Record Side 10A, after 1st spiral.

pintseer	pincér	tsipöö	cipő
nyolts	nyolc	tsigaretta	cigaretta
kilents	kilenc	tsipees	cipész

The sound č: The sound written *č* in the *Aids to Listening* is very like the *ch*'s in the English word *church*. The English *ch*, however, usually has a slight puff of breath following it, but the Hungarian does not. Try to hear this difference as you listen to your Guide. Note the conventional spelling *cs* for this sound.

PRACTICE 2

Record Side 10A, after 2nd spiral.

bočaanat	bocsánat	öčeem	öcsém
olčoo	olcsó	činaal	csinál
čalaad	család	parančol	parancsol
		čaloodom	csalódom

The combination tts: The sounds written *tts* is really another example of a double consonant, like *ddy* and *tty* that you have already practiced. You say *t* but hold the tongue in this position a bit longer releasing it to say the *s*. Notice that in the conventional spelling this long *ts* occurs when *t* comes before the ordinary *s* (written *sz* in Hungarian). Listen to the Guide and imitate his pronunciation.

PRACTICE 3

Record Side 10A, after 3rd spiral.

tettsik	tetszik

The word less (lesz): Double *s* occurs in Hungarian both in the middle and at the end of words. At the end of words it is pronounced like a long *s* as in the interjection "psst!" used to attract attention. Notice that the word *less* (*lesz*) has the long *s* indicated only in the Aids to Listening. Though the Hungarian spelling does not indicate it, the *sz* in this word is long. Listen to the Guide and imitate him.

PRACTICE 4

Record Side 10A, after 4th spiral.

less	lesz

Long or double consonants: Long or double consonants are usually indicated in the *Aids to Listening* and in the conventional spelling by double letter, or, as in the ones you have already practiced, by repeating the first one when two letters are used for the one sound, as in *eddy*, *tettsik*, *baraattya*, and the like. When the double letter occurs within a word between vowels, it is usually pronounced as a double consonant as in English phrases like "the bo*y y*ells", "I wi*sh sh*e'd go", "ta*ll l*ad", and so on. (Notice that double letters in English are pronounced just like single ones, except when they occur in separate words or some compounds.) But when double letters occur before a consonant or at the end of a word (as in *yobbra* and *ross*) they are pronounced simply as a long consonant, that is, holding the tongue in the position for the consonant longer than for single ones, as in *less* (*lesz*) in Practice 4.

PRACTICE 5

Record Side 10A, after 5th spiral.

yobbra	jobbra
ross	rossz
eeyyel	éjjel
teššeek	tessék
illetöö	illető
laššabban	lassabban
urassony	urasszony
reggel	reggel
öössel	ősszel
kell	kell
laattam	láttam
yöyyön	jöjjön

Remember not to substitute the sounds of English for those of Hungarian. This is especially important in the pronunciation of *p*, *t*, *k*. If you hold a strip of paper up to your mouth and say "pins", "test", "Cooper" you will notice that a puff of breath bends the paper as you say the *p*, *t*, and *C*. Perhaps you noticed that in Unit 4 when the English voice on the record said 'Mr. Cooper', and the Hungarian Guide said *kuper ur* (*Cooper ur*) that the two did not sound alike. With the paper held up, try saying "coffee"—*kaavee*, "pins"—*pintseer*, "test"—*teššeek*. See to it that the paper does not bend when you say the Hungarian *k*, *p*, *t*, though of course, it should bend as you say the English. Then go through the practices again,

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. WAYS OF SAYING 'YOU' IN HUNGARIAN

1. eeš te?	és te?	and you?

In the above example, *te*, you learned, means "you". Although this is correct, "you" is not the precise equivalent of *te*. In Hungarian there is a distinction between "you" referring to a single person (like "thou" in Quaker usage and in the Bible) and "you" referring to several persons (like "you all" in the South). *Te* refers to "you" as a single person only. This may seem like a small point to you, but it is fairly important to a Hungarian. You cannot address just anybody as *te*, if you wish to be polite. It is a form of address used only (a) between very close friends and intimates (lovers); or (b) to social inferiors and to children; (c) in addressing God. If you use *te*, keep in mind, you are implying a certain degree of intimacy, a definite sort of social relationship. The plural form of *te* is *ti*, used similarly, with the meaning (roughly) "you all".

2. ön nööš?	ön nős?	are you married?
eert ön madyarul?	ért ön magyarul?	do you understand Hungarian?
laattam önt.	láttam önt.	I saw you.
ön mi činaal?	ön mit csinál?	what do you do?
seretneem bemutatni önt.	szeretném bemutatni önt.	I should like to introduce you.

Social distinctions play a much bigger part in Hungary than they do in the United States. This fact is quite naturally reflected by the language of the Hungarians. The *ön* of the above examples also means "you", but it is a much more formal, much more polite form of address than *te*. It is employed in official and formal speech. The plural form is *önök*, and is used in general when addressing an audience (something like "you ladies and gentlemen").

3. You may substitute in all the above examples, for *te* as well as for *ön* the word *maga* which also means 'you'. Thus, *eeš maga?* (*és maga*) 'and you?'; *eert maga madyarul?* (*ért maga magyarul?*) 'do you understand Hungarian?'; *laattam magaat* (*láttam magát*) 'I saw you', and so forth. This is also a very common form of address; it is used in talking to younger people, and in "talking down" to social inferiors, such as servants, waiters, drivers, and so on. For instance, *maga*

pintseer? (*maga pincér?*) "are you a waiter?", or, in the plural (which is *maguk*) *maguk sobalaanyok?* (*maguk szobalányok?*) "are you chambermaids?", *laattam magukat* (*láttam magukat*) "I saw you".

4. nööš?	nős?	are you married? is he married?
eert madyarul?	ért magyarul?	do you understand Hungarian? does he understand Hungarian?
laattam	láttam	I saw you I saw it
mi činaal?	mit csinál?	what do you do? what does he do?
seretneem bemutatni	szeretném bemutatni	I should like to introduce you I should like to introduce him

As you see from these examples, the words for "you", that is, *ön* or *maga* (as the case may be), can be left out altogether. You will also note that such a sentence has two meanings. If the context does not allow of misunderstanding this does not matter; if, on the other hand, the reference is not perfectly clear, the words *ön* or *maga* do become necessary, and must be used accordingly. It follows from the foregoing that the words *ön* and *maga* are used mostly for emphasis.

Note 1. The reason that the above sentence-pairs have two meanings is this: when a Hungarian addresses somebody who is not precisely an intimate, he uses the verb in the third person, not the second. This is similar to the English "your honor is . . .".

Note 2. In the above examples, *önt, magaat, magukat,* are of course in position as objects of a given verb, and hence end in the suffix of the direct object, *-t*, the use of which you already know.

Note 3. If, in the above cases where *ön* and *maga* are omitted, you wish to emphasize the third person, not the second, you may do so by using the pronouns you have already learned. Thus, "is *he* married?" becomes *öö nööš?* (*ő nős?*), "what does *he* do?" becomes *öö mi činaal?* (*ő mit csinál?*), and "I want to introduce *him*" becomes *ööt seretneem bemutatni* (*őt szeretném bemutatni*).

B. THE SUFFIX *-val/-vel* 'WITH'

hugaaval	hugával	"with his younger sister"
öččeevel	öccsével	"with his younger brother"
öössel	ősszel	"in the fall, with (the coming of) fall"

To say "with" in Hungarian you again use a suffix. If the word to which you add it ends in a vowel (such as *huga* "his younger sister", *öccse* "his younger brother"), you add *-val/-vel*, in accordance with the rule of vowel harmony. If, however, the word to which you add the suffix does not end in a vowel (*öös* "fall"), you merely add *-al* or *-el*, according to vowel-harmony and double the last sound (final consonant) of the word. For example: *pintseerrel* (*pincérrel*) "with the waiter", *sabooval* (*szabóval*) "with the tailor", *saazzal* (*százzal*) "with a hundred", *šaandor kišassonnyal* (*Sándor kisasszonnyal*) "with Miss Alexander", *vonattal* "with the train", *ezzel* "with this one", *azzal* "with that one", *laanyokkal* "with the girls", *tsipöökkel* (*cipőkkel*) "with shoes", *peenzzel* "with money", *kovaač urral* (*Kovács urral*) "with Mr. Smith", *süleimmel* (*szüleimmel*) "with my parents", and so on.

C. THE SUFFIX *-tool/-tööl* 'FROM'

felešeegemtööl	feleségemtől	"from my wife"
hattool	hattól	"from six"

To say "from", you employ the suffix *-tool/-tööl* in accordance with the rule vowel harmony. Other examples: *etytööl* (*egytől*) "from one", *a saallodaatool* (*a szállodától*) "from the hotel", *a melektööl* (*a melegtől*) "from the heat", *yenöötööl* (*Jenőtől*) "from Eugene", *haarom ooraatool* (*három órától*) "from three o'clock", *az orvoštool* (*az orvostól*) "from the doctor", *tavastool* (*tavasztól*) "from spring", *teeltööl* (*téltől*) "from winter", *huštool* (*hustól*) "from meat", *a sobaalaanytool* (*a szobalánytól*) "from the chambermaid." (Notice that before the *t*—a voiceless sound—that though *b*, *d*, *g*, *z*, *zs* may be written in the conventional spelling, they are pronounced *p*, *t*, *k*, *s*, *š* and are so written in the *Aids to Listening*.)

D. THE SUFFIX *-ig* 'AS FAR AS, UNTIL'

nyoltsig	nyolcig	"until eight"

To say "as far as" or "until", you use the suffix *-ig* in Hungarian. You may add this to words of either *front* or *back* vowels. (Remember that *i* is one of those vowels that are neutral from the point of view of vowel harmony. See Unit 4, pages 72–3.) More examples: *etytööl kettööig* (*egytől kettőig*) "from one or two", *reggeltööl eštig* (*reggeltől estig*) "from morning to evening", *az saallodaatool az aallomaašig* (*a szállodától az állomásig*) "from the hotel as far as the station", *nyaarig* "till summer", *madyarorsaaktool az edyešült aallamokig* (*Magyarországtól az Egyesült Államokig*) "from Hungary as far as the United States", *a vaarošig* (*a városig*) "as far as the town", *öt ooraaig* "until five o'clock", *deelig* "till noon", *teksasig* (*Texasig*) "as far as Texas".

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Make sure that you know the English meanings and the Hungarian expressions for all the examples in the *Word Study*. Also be sure that you understand all the points discussed.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Go through the first record side of the *Basic Sentences* repeating individually after the Guide or the records.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Go through the last part of the *Basic Sentences*, repeating individually after the Guide or the records.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Working independently, check your knowledge of the meaning of the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences*.

3. What Would You Say?

1. *You ask someone if he would like a cigarette.*

a) keerek ety tsigarettaat.
Kérek egy cigarettát.

b) tettsik ety tsigaretta?
Tetszik egy cigaretta?

c) hol ety tsigaretta?
Hol egy cigaretta?

2. *You say it is not enough.*

a) eleek hüvöš van.
Elég hüvös van.
b) nadyon meleg van.
Nagyon meleg van.
c) eleeg meleg van.
Elég meleg van.

3. *You say the weather is nice.*

a) seep az idöö.
Szép az idő.
b) ross az idöö.
Rossz az idő.
c) ninč idöö.
Nincs idő.

4. *You say it is raining.*

a) ešik a hoo.
Esik a hó.
b) ešik az eššöö.
Esik az eső.
c) ešik a repülöögeep.
Esik a repülőgép.

5. *You ask where the tailor is at noon.*

a) hol van a saboo deelben?
Hol van a szabó délben?
b) hol van a saboo deelelöött?
Hol van a szabó délelőtt?
c) hol van a saboo deelutaan?
Hol van a szabó délután?

6. *You say that in summer he lives in town.*

a) nyaaron a vaarožban lakik.
Nyáron a városban lakik.
b) teelen a vaarožban van.
Télen a városban van.
c) teelen fölmedy a vaarožba.
Télen fölmegy a városba.

7. *You say you don't think so.*

a) nem eertem.
Nem értem.
b) nem hisem.
Nem hiszem.
c) remeelem.
Remélem.

8. *You say you want some cold water.*

a) ety kiš hideg vizet akarok.
Egy kis hideg vizet akarok.
b) keerek ety kiš melek kaaveet.
Kérek egy kis meleg kávét.
c) keerek edy dyufaat.
Kérek egy gyufát.

9. *You tell someone the toilet is straight ahead.*

a) a klozet edyenešen elööre van.
A klozet egyenesen előre van.
b) a mozi balra van.
A mozi balra van

c) a saalloda yobbra van.
A szálloda jobbra van.

10. *You say it is to the right from the restaurant.*

a) a vendeeglöö yobbra van.
A vendéglő jobbra van.
b) a vendeeglöötööl balra van.
A vendéglőtől balra van.
c) a vendeeglöötööl yobbra van.
A vendéglőtől jobbra van.

11. *You say, as far as Hungary.*

a) madyarorsaagig.
Magyarországig.
b) madyarorsaagba.
Magyarországba.
c) madyarul.
Magyarul.

12. *You welcome someone.*

a) servus.
Szervusz.
b) yoo ešteet.
Jó estét.
c) išten hosta.
Isten hozta.

Combinations

Read all the Hungarian words and phrases aloud. Then say aloud each expression in the left-hand column and follow it with a word in the right-hand column. Make as many combinations as you can, but see that they do not conflict with common sense, or with grammar.

1. a szállodában
2. kenyeret
3. háromtól
4. hét pengő
5. a gépgyártól
6. Sándor Mária
7. esik
8. mennyibe
9. rossz
10. nyár
11. az apámmal

a. ment
b. dolgozik
c. csinál
d. lakik
e. szép
f. óta
g. kérek
h. hatig
i. az ára
j. balra
k. a hó

12. a városba
13. németül
14. Isten
15. Pál
16. a kávé

l. kerül
m. hozta
n. az idő
o. földmüvelő
p. milyen
q. jó
r. drága
s. az eső
t. fölment
u. van
v. beszél

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give in complete Hungarian sentences your solutions of the preceding exercises, as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Hungarian or English equivalent of the examples from the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for them. Be prepared to explain briefly any points in the discussion that he asks for.

3. Listening In

1. *In a shop.*

Record Side 10A, after 6th spiral.

Fekete ur:	yoo reggelt. ross az idöö maama.	Jó reggelt. Rossz az idő máma.
Kisasszony:	igen, hideg van. faazom. mit parančol?	Igen, hideg van. Fázom. Mit parancsol?
Fekete ur:	keerek edy beeyeget.	Kérek egy bélyeget.
Kisasszony:	mennyit akar venni?	Mennyit akar venni?
Fekete ur:	nem tudom* mennyi kell edy leveelre az edyešült aallamogba.	Nem tudom mennyi kell egy levélre az Egyesült Államokba.
Kisasszony:	as hisem ety pengöö eleeg less. eeš meeg mi tettsik?	Azt hiszem egy pengő elég lesz. És még mi tetszik?
Fekete ur:	tsigarettaakat iš seretneek.	Cigarettákat is szeretnék.
Kisasszony:	madyart? neemetet?	Magyart? Németet?
Fekete ur:	keerem az eddyiket eeš a maašikat iš.	Kérem az egyiket és a másikat is.
Kisasszony:	teššeek a beeyeg eeš a tsigaretta. eeš itt a dyufa — az iš tettsik?	Tessék a bélyeg és a cigaretta. És itt a gyufa — az is tetszik?
Fekete ur:	igen, kell dyufa iš. mibe kerül?	Igen, kell gyufa is. Mibe kerül?
Kisasszony:	a tsigaretta haarom pengööbe kerül, a dyufa tis filleerbe. az neety pengöö eeš tis filleer. kösönöm.	A cigaretta három pengőbe kerül, a gyufa tiz fillérbe. Az négy pengő és tiz fillér. Köszönöm.

---

*tudom = "I know".

2. *Stephen and Charles talk about their sisters.*

Record Side 10B, beginning.

István:	servus kaaroy! mi uyšaag?	Szervusz Károly! Mi ujság?
Károly:	servus ištvaan!	Szervusz István!
	yo az uyšaag! itt a tavas!	Jó az ujság! Itt a tavasz!
István:	igen, maama nadyon seep az idöö.	Igen, máma nagyon szép az idő.
	igazaan meleg van.	Igazán meleg van.
Károly:	tegnap eeyyel meeg eleeg hüvöš volt, de mošt nadyon yoo az idöö.	Tegnap éjjel még elég hüvös volt, de most nagyon jó az idő.
István:	hol van maaria?	Hol van Mária?
Károly:	a nööveerem? moziba ment yenöövel.	A nővérem? Moziba ment Jenővel.
	eeš eeva hol van?	És Éva hol van?
István:	eeva dolgozik mošt.	Éva dolgozik most.
Károly:	igazaan? mi činaal?	Igazán? Mit csinál?
István:	a hugom edy bangban hivatalnok.	A hugom egy bankban hivatalnok.
Károly:	yool kereš?	Jól keres?
István:	nem nadyon. tis pengööt minden nap.	Nem nagyon. Tiz pengőt minden nap.
Károly:	een iš tis pengööt kaptam a saallodaaban.	Én is tiz pengőt kaptam a szállodában.
István:	mi a yenöö foglalkozaaša?	Mi a Jenő foglalkozása?
Károly:	yenöö katona: repülöö.	Jenő katona: repülő.
István:	nem laattam maariaat öt hoonap oota.	Nem láttam Máriát öt hónap óta.
	minden nap yenöövel van.	Minden nap Jenővel van.
Károly:	šaynaalom, ištvaan.	Sajnálom, István.
	de talaan itthon less ebeedre holnap.	De talán itthon lesz ebédre holnap.
István:	remeelem!	Remélem!
	maaria edy nadyon seep laany.	Mária egy nagyon szép lány.
Károly:	eeva iš seep, de tul hideg.	Éva is szép, de tul hideg.
István:	igaz. a nööveerem nem nadyon beseel fiukkal.	Igaz. A nővérem nem nagyon beszél fiukkal.
Károly:	de een nem vadyok eeppen edy išmeretlen.	De én nem vagyok épen egy ismeretlen.
	een egy baraattya vadyok.	Én egy barátja vagyok.

	de nem bay! kovaač ur ma ešte bemutat a laanyaanak az edyešült aaliamogbool.	De nem baj! Kovács ur ma este bemutat a lányának az Egyesült Államokból.
István:	Kovaač? az orvoš teksazbool?	Kovács? Az orvos Texasból?
Károly:	igen, teksazbool van, de nem orvoš.	Igen, Texasból van, de nem orvos.
	ety fedyverdyaara van nyu yorgban.	Egy fegyvergyára van New Yorkban.
	nadyon yool kereš, eeš a laany nadyon seep.	Nagyon jól keres, és a lány nagyon szép.
	madyarorsaagon kereš feeryet.	Magyarországon keres férjet.
	a sülei madyarok.	A szülei magyarok.

3. *I talk with my father about going out to lunch.*

Az Apám:	haany oora van fiam?	Hány óra van fiam?
Én:	kilents oora van.	Kilenc óra van.
	hol az anyaam?	Hol az anyám?
Az apám:	a vaarožba ment.	A városba ment.
Én:	hol less reggel?	Hol lesz reggel?
Az apám:	deelelöött a süleineel less.	Délelőtt a szüleinél lesz.
Én:	eeš deelutaan?	És délután?
Az apám:	deelutaan edy moziban a nööveeremmel, talaan heetig.	Délután egy moziban a nővéremmel, talán hétig.
Én:	nem less itthon ebeedre?	Nem lesz itthon ebédre?
Az apám:	nem; ma a vendeeglööbe kell menni ebeedre.	Nem; ma a vendéglőbe kell menni ebédre.
Én:	az eleeg bay.	Az elég baj.
	a vendeeglöö nadyon draaga.	A vendéglő nagyon drága.
Az apám:	igen, draaga, de nem tul draaga.	Igen, drága, de nem tul drága.
Én:	talaan a saallodaaban olčobb a vendeeglöö.	Talán a szállodában olcsóbb a vendéglő.
Az apám:	nem hisem.	Nem hiszem.
Én:	hol az öčeem?	Hol az öcsém?
Az apám:	paal kaaveet činaal.	Pál kávét csinál.
	hüvöš van.	Hüvös van.
Én:	een iš seretneek ety kiš kaaveet: faazom.	Én is szeretnék egy kis kávét: fázom.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Working independently, check your knowledge of the Hungarian equivalents of the English of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian for the English of the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

Suggested Topics:

1. Two persons meet on the street. After the usual inquiries, concerning each other's health, they talk about the weather, and then one invites the other to a restaurant. They order food, pay for it, and take leave of each other.
2. Two persons are at home, and two visitors come to call. After greetings and inquiries concerning each other's health, the conversation turns to the hosts' relatives and their whereabouts. Then the visitors ask for the railway station, receive directions, and take their leave.
3. Three men meet on the street; one of them is a stranger to the other two. After greetings and self-identification, the three tell each other about their respective work. Then they take leave of each other.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Check-up by the Leader on the troublesome parts of the *Basic Sentences.* Then continue conversations.

FINDER LIST

deel (dél) "noon"
deelelöött (délelőtt) "forenoon"
deelutaan (délután) "afternoon"
eeyyel (éjjel) "night"
eev (év) "year"
elöött (előtt) "before"

ešik (esik) "it falls"
ešik a hoo (esik a hó) "it is snowing"
ešik az eššöö (esik az eső) "it is raining"
eššöö (eső) "rain"
faazom (fázom) "I am cold"
hideg (hideg) "cold"
holnap (holnap) "tomorrow"
hoo (hó) "snow"
hoonap (hónap) "month"
hüvöš (hüvös) "cool"
idöö (idő) "time, weather"
igaz (igaz) "true"
ma, maama (ma, máma) "today"
meleg (meleg) "warm, hot"
melegem van (melegem van) "I am warm (or hot)"
menni (menni) "to go"
miyen (milyen) "what sort, how"
minden (minden) "every"
nyaar (nyár) "summer"
oota (óta) "since (time)"
öös (ősz) "fall (the season)"
remeelem (remélem) "I hope so"
ross (rossz) "bad"
servus (szervusz) "hello (said when meeting an intimate)"
seep (szép) "beautiful, nice, pretty"
talaan (talán) "perhaps"
tavas (tavasz) "spring (the season)"
tettsik (tetszik) "it pleases, would you like?"
teel (tél) "winter"
utaan (után) "after"
volt (volt) "was, there was"

UNIT 6

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN HUNGARIAN?

To the Group Leader: This unit is intended to furnish the group with a thorough review of all the work done to date: understanding of vocabulary, use of vocabulary, and grammar. Pronunciation should be the object of attention whenever the students are talking. Either the Guide or, if there is no Guide, the Leader and other students should correct faulty pronunciation.

Section A is a true-and-false quiz which is to be read to the group by the Guide or the phonograph records. Each student is to write the numbers from 1 to 80 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each statement in Hungarian, the students are to mark T opposite the number of that statement if they consider it a true statement, and F if they consider it false. If the students understand the Hungarian they will have no difficulty in deciding whether or not the statements are true or false.

Use the first item in the quiz as a practice item. When you are ready to start, announce "Statement 1," and give the signal to the Guide to begin, or put on phonograph record, side 11A. The Guide or record will then read the Hungarian statement: "A szabó cipőket csinál," and will repeat the statement once more. Explain to the group that, since the meaning of this statement is: "The tailor makes shoes," they should write an F after the figure 1 on their papers. Then announce "Statement 2" and continue with the Guide or phonograph record. Each statement in Hungarian is to be presented twice. When working with a Guide, continue to call the number of each statement throughout the quiz so that the students will have no trouble keeping the proper place. Take the quiz with the rest of the group.

In the back of the Guide's manual you will find a list giving the correct answers (T or F) for the Hungarian items. After the quiz is over, read to the group the correct answers, T or F for each item. The students are to check their papers. Find the average number of correct answers per student for your group and include your own answers. Any student who gets less than the average number of answers or less than 80% (whichever is higher) correct, needs more thorough study and review of the preceding units.

Use the rest of the period to repeat the Hungarian expressions for which students had the wrong answer and read the English equivalents of these statements if they wish to have them. Be sure that the students understand the meaning of all the items which they got wrong; those are the items on which their vocabulary is weak and needs further study.

This unit provides several tests which will help you to make sure that you have thoroughly covered the work of the first five *Learning Units* of the course. They will show you what you may need to restudy or review.

Section A is a true-false quiz. After you have marked the numbers 1 to 80 on a sheet of paper, your Leader will have the Guide read, or will play the phonograph records containing a number of statements in Hungarian. As you hear each sentence, decide whether the statement it makes is true or false. Decide whether the statement is *usually* true or *usually* false. Do not go into particular cases. If you think the statement is true, mark *T* opposite the number corresponding to the number of the sentence that has just been spoken. If you think it is false, mark *F* opposite the number. The first item will be a practice item and will show you just how you are to proceed with the rest of the sentences.

After you have done this work, the Leader will go through your answers with you as a group, and will tell you which statements are true and which are false. Score your paper, counting one for each correct answer. The Leader will figure out the average score for your group. If your score falls below the average of the group as a whole, you need more study and review of the previous units.

Use the rest of the period to go over the sentences again with your Guide or records. For each item on which you are wrong, be sure that you understand why you are wrong, and what the true meaning of the item is.

If you come out well on this quiz, that indicates that you have a pretty good understanding of practically all the work you have covered to date.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Go through the following English sentences and prepare to say the equivalents for the English at your next group meeting. *Do not write anything down*, but say the Hungarian equivalents out loud and keep practicing them aloud until you have the Hungarian down so cold that when the English is fired at you point-blank you can fire the Hungarian right back without any hesitation.

I

1. Good morning, Mr. Smith.
2. How are you?

3. Thank you, I am well, and I beg your pardon.
4. I do not understand what you say: please speak more slowly.
5. Miss Eve, do you speak English?
6. Which is the way to the hotel?
7. It is there, straight ahead.
8. I want milk, meat, and potatoes.

II

1. Please tell me, how must one address a lady?
2. Of course, I remember!
3. During conversation, would you introduce me to your daughter?
4. Glad to meet you: I saw you yesterday at the Alexanders'.
5. Yes, I understand Hungarian.
6. At what time does the movie start?
7. Please come with me.
8. Very gladly!

III

1. Charles is a waiter.
2. And what is your occupation?
3. My son is a barber.
4. Students do not work.
5. I have two sons, and one is a soldier.
6. The other, Stephen, is a doctor.
7. The clerk works in the bank.
8. My father and his father are shoemakers.

IV

1. Welcome to the United States!
2. What's new?
3. I got lunch from my wife.
4. The chambermaid is not at home.
5. My friend lives with relatives.
6. My younger brother went up in an airplane.
7. He is married and lives by the factory.
8. My sister makes armaments.

V

1. How's the weather?
2. I am warm today.
3. Yesterday it was cold; tomorrow it will snow.
4. Three months and four days.
5. In the fall it is cool.
6. Perhaps it is raining.
7. Beautiful spring: good weather.
8. I should like some cold beer.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

To the Group Leader: Simply follow the directions given below.

This Section is a drill on the work you have done in Section B of this unit. Keep your book closed. The Leader will call on members of the group (but not in any fixed order) to speak the Hungarian equivalents of the English sentences given in Section B. The work must be kept moving rapidly, and interest should never lag. If the Guide is present he is to listen and correct your pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your ability to use the vocabulary you have learned.

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Go through these English sentences and prepare to say the equivalents for the English, just as you did in Section B of this unit. Do not write anything down, but have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

I

1. The bank is not here in the town.
2. He goes up to town every day.
3. As far as the airplane factory.
4. It is by the restaurant.
5. He understands every word.
6. Really it doesn't matter.
7. I don't understand this tailor.
8. My mother lives by the station.

II

1. The toilet is not in the hotel.
2. This meat is very bad.
3. That milk is not cold enough.
4. I want a stamp.
5. How does one pronounce this Hungarian word?
6. Here are the bread and potatoes.
7. Please give me some very cold water.
8. How much is this?

III

1. This Hungarian cigarette is too expensive.
2. Please give me the cheaper one.
3. Its price is seven *pengő* and nine *fillér*.
4. Two plus six is eight.
5. The train arrives at one o'clock.
6. And at what time does this other train start?
7. If I am not mistaken, you are a farmer.
8. I don't think we have met.

IV

1. May I ask you for a favor?
2. But my honored sir!
3. The person in question is a beautiful girl.
4. The gentleman wants beer?
5. He is just coming for lunch.
6. Stephen, please come here.
7. I should like to introduce Mary from Texas.
8. In the summer she studies.

V

1. One of the boys earns enough money.
2. Money is not everything.
3. I am cold and you are hot.
4. Tonight and tomorrow morning she will be in town.
5. My younger sister and Eugene go up every day.
6. In the afternoon but before evening.
7. In the winter he goes to Texas.
8. I got a letter from your younger brother.

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

To the Group Leader: **Simply follow the directions given below.**

As in Section C, the Leader will go around the group and ask various members to supply (with books closed) the Hungarian equivalents for the sentences given in Section D. If the Guide is present, he will listen and correct pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your understanding of the way the language is built and functions.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting not more than 1–2 minutes, in which the entire contents of the preceding units should be used. Everyone should have a chance to take part as many times as possible. The situations of the conversations should be varied and combined as much as possible. Each conversation should begin with greetings and inquiries after each other's health, and should end with formal leave-taking. Here are just a few out of many possibilities for conversations:

1. Meeting friends on the street.
   (Include: questions about each other's health, health of parents, health of children.)
2. Meeting a stranger and introducing oneself.
   (Include: statement of names, nationalities, occupations.)
3. Ordering in the restaurant.
   (Include: ordering food and drink, asking the name of a simple item of food or drink, asking price and paying.)
4. Welcoming friends and chatting about the weather.
   (Include: questions about health, statements about sunshine, rain, snow, etc.)
5. Asking for directions and the time the train leaves.
   (Include: questions and answers on the whereabouts of hotel, restaurant, or toilet; question and answer on the whereabouts of railroad station; question and answer about time train leaves.)
6. Exchanging information about one's home.
   (Include: questions about each other's origin,

answers about location of homes, and city from which one comes.)

7. Conversing about the weather in different cities.

   (Include: questions about the type of weather in different seasons in the various cities from which the soldiers come, comparison of the seasons, complaints about the weather, etc.)

8. Talking about one's relatives and their whereabouts.

   (Include: questions and answers about one's relatives, their homes in various countries, languages they speak.)

9. Inquiring about a movie and how to get to it.

PART TWO

UNIT 7

A PLACE TO LIVE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Mr. Green meets Mr. Kovács, who invites him to his apartment.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Record Side 13A, beginning.	
	Mr. Green
Good morning, Mr. Smith.	Jó reggelt, Kovács ur.
How are you?	Hogy van?
	Kovács ur
Well, thank you.	Köszönöm jól.
	Mr. Green
tell me	mondja
Tell me, Smith, where do you live?	Mondja, Kovács, maga hol lakik?
in Budapest	Budapesten
or in the country	vagy vidéken
In Budapest or in the country?	Budapesten, vagy vidéken?
	Kovács
I live *here* in town.	Itt lakom a városban.
because	mert

I live here because I work here. My family is here too.	Itt lakom, mert itt dolgozom. A családom is itt van.
	Green
Where is your apartment?	Hol van a lakása?
	Kovács
quite	egész
near	közel
Quite near.	Egész közel.
with a car	kocsival
only	csak
minute	perc
Only five minutes by car.	Kocsival csak öt perc.
the address	a cim
9 Rose Street	Rózsa-utca 9 (kilenc)
first	első
floor	emelet
second	második
door	ajtó
The address is: 9 Rose Street, First floor, second door to the left.	A cim, Rózsa-utca 9 (kilenc), Első emelet, második ajtó balra.
	Green
What's the apartment like?	Milyen a lakás?
	Kovács
It's in a good enough house.	Egy elég jó házban van.
up	fel

But please come up for lunch.	De kérem jöjjön fel ebédre.
to show it	megmutatni
I'd like to show it [to you].	Szeretném megmutatni.
	Green
Thanks; very gladly.	Köszönöm, nagyon szivesen.
to see	látni
from the window	az ablakból
What do you see from the window?	Mit látni az ablakból?
	Kovács
From my window I see the postoffice.	Az én ablakomból a póstahivatalt látom.
Record Side 13B, beginning.	
	Green
room	szoba
consists of, *or* stands	áll
How many rooms are there in the apartment?	Hány szobából áll a lakás?
	Kovács
dining room	ebédlő
bedroom	háló
kitchen	konyha
bathroom	fürdőszoba
There is a dining room, a bedroom, a kitchen, and a bathroom.	Van egy ebédlő, háló, konyha és fürdőszoba.
The bathroom is very good because there is hot and cold water.	A fürdőszoba nagyon jó, mert van meleg és hideg viz.

Green

double	kettős
window	ablak
as I see it	amint látom
(As) I see the windows are storm windows.	Az ablakok kettős ablakok, amint látom.

Kovács

simple	egyszerü
Yes, in Hungary there are no single windows.	Igen, Magyarországon nincsenek egyszerü ablakok
It's very cold here in the winter.	Itt nagyon hideg van télen.
In Budapest every window is double.*	Budapesten minden ablak kettős.
occupy	foglaljon
a place	hely
But please take a seat.	De kérem foglaljon helyet.
Here's a chair.	Itt egy szék.
And please have a cigarette.	És parancsoljon egy cigarettát.
back	vissza
immediately	mindjárt
I'll be back right away.	Mindjárt vissza leszek.
I'm only going to the kitchen.	Csak a konyhába megyek.
I'm going to make a drink.	Csinálok egy italt.
What would you like (to drink?)	Mit szeretne inni?
wine	bor
A little wine?	Egy kis bort?

Green

No, I'd like some beer, if there is [some.]	Nem, egy kis sört szeretnék, ha van.

---

*Many windows in central Europe are double "French" or casement windows; usually opening inwards.

	Kovács
Of course. But before lunch wine is very good.	Persze. De ebéd előtt bor nagyon jó.
	Green
Please give me a match.	Kérem adjon egy gyufát.
Record Side 14A, beginning.	
	Kovács
on the table There's one on the table.	az asztalon Van egy az asztalon.
	Green
Thank you. Tell me, where's the bathroom?	Köszönöm. Mondja, hol a fürdőszoba?
	Kovács
There's the door.	Ott az ajtó.
bed By the bed.	ágy Az ágynál.
	Green
Oh, I see.	Oh, látom.
lamp *or* light Where's the light?	lámpa Hol a lámpa?
	Kovács
To the right of the chair. Have you got it?	A széktől jobbra. Meg van?

	Green
[Yes] I have. Thanks.	Meg. Köszönöm.
	Kovács
I'm making the drinks.	Csinálom az italokat.
My wife will be here by one.	A feleségem itt lesz egyre.
There'll be lunch by two.	Kettőre lesz ebéd.
I don't think there's any meat today.	Azt hiszem nincs hus máma.
There's a holiday.	Ünnep van.
I got	kaptam
the whole	az egész
I couldn't get [any] meat all over town.	Nem kaptam hust az egész városban.
	Green
That doesn't matter.	Az nem baj.
You don't have to eat meat every day.	Nem kell minden nap hust enni.
Four times a week is enough.	Elég négyszer egy héten.
	Kovács
There's the beer on the table.	Ott a sör az asztalon.
It's good and cold.	Jó hideg.
	Green
On a hot day beer is good.	Meleg napon jó a sör.

2. Hints on Pronunciation

The consonant letter combination zs. This is a new letter combination for you. It represents a consonant sound similar to *z* in English *azure*, or *s* in such words as *treasure, measure, pleasure.* Be careful to distinguish *zs* from both *sz* and *cs.* Listen to your Guide pronouncing the following.

PRACTICE 1

Record Side 14A, after 1st spiral.

rózsa	rose

The consonant letters tc are pronounced like *cc*, and, indeed, this spelling can sometimes be substituted. For *utca* 'street' you may write also *ucca*, but both are pronounced exactly alike.

PRACTICE 2

Record Side 14A, after 2nd spiral.

utca	street

The consonant letter s. This letter *s* is pronounced similarly to the English letter combination *sh* in *ship* or *rush*.

PRACTICE 3

Record Side 14A, after 3rd spiral.

sajnos	unfortunately	állomás	station
sör	beer	este	evening
Sándor	Alexander	orvos	doctor
hus	meat	és	and

The consonant letter combination *sz.* This letter combination is pronounced similarly to the English *s* of *see* or *thus*.

PRACTICE 4

Record Side 14A, after 4th spiral.

szabad	it is permitted	beszéd	speech
szoba	room	szabó	tailor
szüleim	my parents	ősz	fall
száz	hundred		

The consonant letter z. This letter is pronounced similarly to the English letter *z* in *zeal.*

PRACTICE 5

Record Side 14A, after 5th spiral.

ház	house	viz	water
igaz	true	mozi	movie
pénz	money	fázom	I am cold

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. HOW TO REFER TO A CERTAIN TIME WHEN SOMETHING HAPPENS

négy ötvenkor	at four fifty
nyolckor	at eight
hánykor?	at what time?
hány órakor?	at what hour?

To refer to a certain time when something happens, you employ the suffix *-kor*, irrespective of the rule of vowel harmony (that is, you may add it to a word containing front vowels as well as to a word containing back vowels). Thus you can say *egykor lesz ebéd* 'there will be lunch at one', *kettőkor itt volt* 'he was here at two', *hánykor ment a vendéglőbe?* 'at what time did he go into the restaurant?', *ünnepkor hust venni* 'to buy meat on a holiday', *holnap nyolckor* 'tomorrow at eight', *mikor?* 'when?'.

B. HOW TO SAY *'from the inside'*

ablakból	from the window	szobából	from the room

To say 'from the inside' you use a suffix *-ból/-ből*, in accordance with the rule of vowel harmony. Another common meaning of this suffix is 'made of', and still another indicates origin. For example: *jó családból van* 'he is from a good family', *kenyérből van* 'it is made of bread', *a szállodából* 'from the hotel', used when you mean 'from the inside to the outside'—otherwise you would say *a szállodától;* and similarly, *vendéglőből* 'from the restaurant', *lakásból* 'from the apartment', *fegyvergyárból* 'from the armament factory', *a repülőgépből* 'from the airplane'—but *a repülőgéptől a fegyvergyárig* 'from the airplane to the armament factory'; *egy városból* 'from a town'.

C. NOUN STEMS

burgonya	potato	óra	hour
hála	gratitude	példa	example
Gyula	Julian	katona	soldier
gyufa	match	Éva	Eve
szálloda	hotel	szoba	room

You have been introduced to a good many suffixes in the previous units. That part of the noun to which you add a suffix is called its *stem*. There are several kinds of noun stems in Hungarian, but all of them fit into one of two large groups. One of the groups contains every stem that ends in a vowel (and is hence called *vowel stem*); the other group contains all the other stems, that is, all those which end in a consonant (hence called *consonant stem*); there is also a third group of irregular forms of several kinds.

Now, one can further subdivide the *vowel stem* class into, first, *a-stems*, that is to say, those vowel stems which end in an *-a*. These *a-stems* (as well as the *e-stems*, or vowels stems ending in *-e*, but which you have not yet run across), a number of which occur above, have the peculiarity that when they are followed by all but a very few suffixes, they change their final *-a* vowel into an *-á* vowel (the *-e* vowel changes to an *-é* vowel), as in these examples: *burgonyával* 'with potatoes', *hálás* 'grateful', *Gyulánál* 'at Julian's', *gyufák* 'matches', *szállodában* 'inside the hotel', *öt óráig* 'till five o'clock', *például* 'for example', *katonától* 'from the soldier', *Évával* 'with Eve', *szobából* 'from the inside of the room'. The suffix *-kor* is one of the few that does not necessitate a change in the vowel of the stem: *órakor* 'at . . . o'clock'.

apa	father	anya	mother

These two nouns of relationship (as well as one or two others), before certain suffixes drop their final *-a*, as in *apja* 'his father', *anyja* 'his mother', but before a great majority of suffixes follow the above rule: *apák* 'fathers', *anyával* 'with the mother.'

kávé	coffee	mozi	movie
pengő	pengő	vendéglő	restaurant
cipő	shoe	szabó	tailor
Jenő	Eugene	illető	person in question
tanuló	student	nő	woman

Nouns which end in any other vowel than *-a* (or *-e*) do not generally change their stem vowels before suffixes, that is, stems ending in *-i*, *-é*, *-ó*, *-ő*, *-u*, *-ü* remain as they are before all suffixes. (Note: there are no stems ending in *-o* or *-ö*.) Thus, for example, *kávéból* 'made of coffee', *pengővel* 'with pengő', *a cipőből* 'from inside the shoe', *moziban* 'in the movie', *szabónál* 'at the tailor', *nők* 'women', *a tanulókkal* 'with the students'.

fiu	boy

This word differs from others ending in *-u* in the way it behaves before certain suffixes: fiam 'my son'; but before the majority it does not change: *fiuk* 'boys' (also *fiak*, but this means 'sons' in the sense of generations), *fiuval* 'with the boy', *fiuig* 'up to the boy'.

állomás	station	reggel	morning
pincér	waiter	tej	milk
viz	water	beszéd	conversation
bank	bank	cipész	shoemaker
férj	husband	hivatalnok	clerk

One can also subdivide the consonant stems into several sub-classes. There are many which do not undergo any change when a suffix is added to them. Such are those above. For example: *az állomásnál* 'at the station', *egy pincérrel* 'with a waiter', *vizbe* 'into water', *a banknál* 'at the bank', *férjek* 'husbands', *jó reggelt* 'good morning', *a tejben* 'in the milk', *a beszédig* 'until the speech', *a cipésztől* 'from the shoemaker', *a hivatalnokok* 'the clerks'.

dél	noon	név	name
tél	winter	kenyér	bread
levél	letter	nyár	summer

These words belong to another consonant stem subclass: when certain suffixes are added, the last vowel of these stems changes each to its short corresponding vowel (that is, *é* becomes *e*, *á* becomes *a*), as in *delet* 'noon' (with objective suffix), *hideg telek* 'cold winters', *keptam levelet* 'I received a letter,' *mi a neve* 'what is his (your) name', *kenyeret kérek* 'I should like bread', *meleg nyarak* 'warm summers'. However, the majority of the suffixes may follow these consonant stems without there occurring a change in the stem vowel at all. For example, ***délben*** 'at noon', ***télre*** 'for winter', ***a levélben*** 'in the letter', ***egy másik névvel*** 'with another name', ***kenyérből*** 'made of bread', ***nyárig*** 'till summer'.

öccs 'younger brother'

This word shortens the stem-final consonant before certain suffixes: *öcsém* 'my younger brother'; but before most suffixes it remains unchanged: *öccse* 'his younger brother', *öccsel* 'with a younger brother'.

There are one or two other vowel and consonant stem classes which occur much more rarely, where certain alterations take place before suffixes. You need not worry about them at this point. However, the above set of rules are quite simple and are given here for your convenience (as, indeed, all rules are), and you will benefit if you memorize them.

D. HOW TO ADDRESS A LETTER

Rózsa-utca 9, első emelet, második ajtó
9 Rose Street, first floor, second door

Of course, when you are addressing a letter you do not write out fully the address, as above, but use certain abbreviations. A typical address, following the addressee's name, would look something like this in Hungarian:

Budapest
Rózsa-u. 9, I. em. 2. a.

It is customary to add the number of the district in which a certain street occurs, after the name of the town, if it is known (as *Budapest* VI.).

As for the name of the person addressed, it is invariably preceded by one sort of honorific or another (depending on the addressee's social status), and followed by the word ***ur*** (or ***urasszony***, or ***kisasszony***) with a suffix ***-nak*** (which indicates the goal of an action, and which will come up again later).

Thus:

Nagyságos Fekete Pál urnak
Budapest
(etc.)

Or,

Dr. Kovács Jenő urnak
Budapest
(etc.)

Or,

Nagyságos Szabó Jánosné urasszonynak
(etc.)

There are also other honorifics, but *nagyságos* is the one used the most commonly.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences*, covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud each of the following and then pick out the expressions you think most suitable:

1. *You ask someone if he lives in the country.*
   a) Maga hol lakik?
   b) Maga vidéken lakik?
   c) Ön ott lakik?

2. *You say Budapest is a city.*
   a) Budapest egy város.
   b) Budapesten van a családom.
   c) Budapest is egy város.

3. *You say the station is quite near.*
   a) Az állomás elég közel van.
   b) Az állomás a szállodánál van.
   c) Az állomás egész közel van.

4. *You ask how many minutes there are in one hour.*
   a) Hány perc van egy órában?
   b) Hány óra van?
   c) Hány perc van száz órában?

5. *You say the address is second floor, first door to the right.*
   a) A cim: második emelet, első ajtó, egyenesen előre.
   b) A házban az első emeletig a második ajtónál.
   c) A cim: második emelet, első ajtó, jobbra.

6. *You say you would like to show the airplane.*
   a) Szeretném a repülőt bemutatni.
   b) Tessék a repülőgépet megmutatni.
   c) Szeretném a repülőgépet megmutatni.

7. *You say your wife is in bed.*
   a) A férjem a hálóban van.
   b) A feleségem ágyban van.
   c) A feleségem a hálóban van.

8. *You say it is too warm in the bathroom.*
   a) A konyhában tul meleg van.
   b) A fürdőszobában tul meleg van.
   c) Nincs hideg a fürdőszobában.

9. *You say you see the window.*
   a) Látom a kettős ablakot.
   b) Látom az ablakot.
   c) Látom az egyszerű ablakot.

10. *You invite someone to please take a seat.*
    a) Kérem, foglaljon helyet.
    b) Tessék, itt egy szék.
    c) Parancsoljon egy széket.

11. *You say that your younger sister went back to the country.*
    a) Az öcsém a városba ment.
    b) A hugom visszament vidékre.
    c) A feleségem az Egyesült Államokban van.

12. *You say you want to drink.*
    a) Enni akarok.
    b) Menni akarok.
    c) Inni akarok.
    d) Venni akarok.

13. *You say that wine is good after lunch.*
a) Bor jó ebéd előtt.
b) Bor jó hussal.
c) Bor jó ebéd után.

14. *You say the lamp stands at the table.*
a) A lámpa a széknél áll.
b) A lámpa az asztalnál áll.
c) A lámpa a póstahivatalnál van.

How Would You Answer?

Read the following questions aloud and be ready to speak out the answer to each one. Make your answers brief (but not simply *igen, nem*). Do not attempt to bring in any additional information.

SAMPLE: Mit csinál a cipész? A cipész cipőket csinál.

1. Mikor érkezik a vonat?
2. Mi volt ebédre?
3. Hány óra van?
4. Mi az ön neve?
5. Hol lakik maga?
6. Mi a foglalkozása?
7. Nős?
8. Hol egy klozet?
9. Mibe kerül ez a bélyeg?
10. Jó a sör ebéd után?
11. Milyen idő van ma?
12. Hol dolgozik egy hivatalnok például?
13. Ma ünnep van?
14. Hol van Texas?
15. Beszél maga németül?
16. Magyarországon van cigarettagyár?
17. Ön repülő?
18. Van minden szállodában vendéglő?
19. Igazán nincsenek szép lányok Budapesten?

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say? With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the previous exercise as the Leader calls for them.

After you are through with this, turn to

2. What Did You Answer?

The Leader will read the first question in the exercise *How Would You Answer?* and ask some member of the group to answer it. The person who answers reads the next question and the Leader indicates who is to answer it. Continue in this way until you have gone through all questions and answers in this exercise. Be sure to speak up if you disagree with the answers given.

4. Listening In:

1. *Mr. Black and Mr. Alexander talk about things in general*

Record Side 14B, beginning.

Fekete: Jó reggelt, Sándor. Mi ujság?
Sándor: Jó reggelt! Maga Budapesten van?
Fekete: Igen, mert vidéken tul meleg volt.
Budapesten elég hüvös van még.
Sándor: Igaz, itt még elég hüvös volt tegnap is, de ma azt hiszem meleg van.
Hol a család?
Fekete: A feleségem az Egyesült Államokban van,
de a lányom és a szüleim itt vannak a városban.
A fiam persze a gyárban dolgozik az öcsémmel.
Sándor: Fegyvergyárban?
Fekete: Nem, egy repülőgépgyárban.
Egész jól keres.
Sándor: Hol van a gyár?
Fekete: Nincs közel.
Kocsival egy óra és tiz perc.
Sándor: Persze, emlékszem: a postahivatalnál van.
És maga vissza lesz vidéken ősszel?
Fekete: Még azt nem tudom.
A lakás vidéken elég rossz,
mert nincs meleg viz a fürdőszobában és a konyhában.
Sándor: Hány szobából áll a lakás.
Fekete: Csak négyből, de az nem baj,
mert a családom mindig a városban dolgozik.

3. Word Study Check-Up: Give the Hungarian for all English equivalents in the Word-Study as the Leader calls for it.

2. *Mr. Green inquires in his hotel for various information.*

Szobalány: Jó reggelt. Mit parancsol?
Green: Kérem a cipőket és egy kis kávét is szeretnék.
Szobalány: Tessék a cipő, és a pincér mindjárt itt lesz.
És még mit parancsol?
Green: Merre van a fürdőszoba?
Szobalány: A fürdőszoba a szállodában minden emeleten a második ajtó balra.
Green: Van elég meleg viz ma reggel?
Szobalány: Persze. De itt jön épen a pincér.
Pincér: Jó reggelt, Green ur.
Szép tavaszi reggel!
Green: Igen, de elég hüvös van.
Örülök, hogy nem esik a eső mint tegnap.
Hány óra van?
Pincér: Nem tudom. Mária, hány óra van?
Szobalány: Kilenc óra és nyolc perc.
Green: Köszönöm.
Mondja, kérem, hol egy szabó itt a városban?

Pincér: Az én apám egy szabó
Egész közel van a háza.
Green: Kérem a cimet.
Pincér: A cim: Magyar-utca 7.
Green: Köszönöm. Sajnos kell egy orvos is—van egy jó orvos itt a vidéken?
Pincér: Igen, a szálloda-orvos.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Cover the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. An American is invited into a Hungarian home for lunch. He is introduced to the family, shown the apartment. They talk about the weather, and then the occupations of various members of the family.

2. Two men in a restaurant discuss the food, the pay each of them gets, and inquire about the train at the station. They buy stamps, cigarettes, and matches.

3. A man is introduced to a girl. They talk about their respective homes and families. He invites her for a lunch at the restaurant and to go to the movies.

4. An aviator shows a friend of his, a bank clerk, around a factory, explaining about jobs, prices, and talks about various employees.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

ablak	window
ajtó	door
áll	stands, consists of
asztal	table

ágy	bed
bor	wine
Budapest	Budapest, capital of Hungary
cim	address
csak	only
ebédlő	dining room
egész	quite, whole, complete
egyszerű	simple
első	first
emelet	floor
fel (föl)	up
foglaljon helyet	take a seat
fürdőszoba	bathroom
háló	bedroom
hely	place
hét	week (seven)
inni	to drink
ital	drink
kettős	double
kocsi	car
konyha	kitchen
közel	near
lakik	lives (dwells)
lakom	I live (dwell)
lámpa	lamp
látom	I see it
második	second
megmutatni	to show it
mert	because
mindjárt	immediately
mondja	say, tell me
perc	minute
pósta(hivatal)	postoffice
rózsa	rose
szék	chair
szoba	room
utca (ucca)	street
ünnep	holiday
vidék	country, region
vissza	back

UNIT 8

SPRUCING UP

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Mr. White sends out his laundry and goes to the tailor's, the shoemaker's, and the barber's.

Record Side 15A, beginning.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Laundress:	*Mosóné:*
hand	kéz
I kiss it	csókolom
honorable	nagyságos
I kiss your hand, madam.	Kezét csókolom, nagyságos asszony.
laundry	mosás
Here's the gentleman's laundry.	Itt a nagyságos ur mosása.
Landlady:	*Háziasszony:*
Mr. White!	Fehér ur!
out	ki
Please come out.	Tessék kijönni.
Here's the laundress.	Itt a mosóné.

	Fehér
Right away!	Mindjárt!
ready	kész
I've just finished my bath.	Épen kész vagyok a fürdőmmel.
Where's my laundry?	Hol a mosásom?
	Mosóné
Here on the kitchen table.	Itt a konyha asztalon.
	Fehér
Oh, I see it.	Oh, látom.
	Háziasszony
it will be good	jó lesz
through	át
to look	nézni
You ought to look through it, Mr. White.	Jó lesz átnézni, Fehér ur.
	Fehér
Yes, I think so too.	Igen, én is azt hiszem.
short	rövid
stocking	harisnya
sock	rövidharisnya
pair	pár
Eight pairs of socks.	Nyolc pár rövidharisnya.

shirt	ing
Five shirts.	Öt ing.
lower	alsó
trousers	nadrág
shorts	alsónadrág
Six shorts.	Hat alsónadrág.
pocket	zseb
cloth	kendő
handkerchief	zsebkendő
Seven handkerchiefs.	Hét zsebkendő.
Everything's here.	Minden itt van.
Good day.	Jó napot.
Madam, I am going to the barber's, the shoemaker's, and the tailor's.	Nagyságos asszony, megyek a borbélyhoz, a cipészhez, meg a szabóhoz.
Good-bye.	Viszontlátásra.
(At the tailor's.)	*(A szabónál.)*
	Fehér
iron	vas
it is necessary to iron	ki kell vasalni
These trousers must be pressed.	Ki kell ezt a nadrágot vasalni.

Record Side 15B, beginning.

clean	tiszta
it is necessary to clean	ki kell tisztitani
coat	kabát
This coat has to be cleaned.	És ezt a kabátot ki kell tisztitani.
clothes	ruha
When will the clothes be ready?	Mikor lesz kész a ruha?
	Szabó
By three o'clock tomorrow afternoon.	Holnap délután háromra.
(*At the shoemaker's.*)	(*A cipésznél.*)
	Fehér
he repaired	magjavitotta
Have you repaired my shoes? (*lit. shoe*)	Megjavitotta a cipőmet?
	Cipész
I'm sorry, but not yet.	Sajnálom, de még nem.
Your shoes aren't ready yet.	A cipője még nincs kész.
They'll be fixed by tomorrow.	Holnapra meg lesz csinálva.
	Fehér
I hope so.	Remélem.
My train leaves tomorrow night.	A vonatom holnap éjjel indul.

Which way is a barber[shop]?	Merre van egy borbély?
	Cipész
The barber's address is, 3 Heart Street.	A borbély cime, Sziv-utca 3 (három).
(*At the barber's.*)	(*A borbélynál.*)
	Fehér
cut	vágja
down	le
hair	haj
Please cut my hair.	Kérem vágja le a hajamat.
	Borbély
Please take a seat.	Tessék helyet foglalni.
Are you Hungarian?	Ön magyar?
	Fehér
No, I am from the United States.	Nem, én az Egyesült Államokból vagyok.
And are you from the country?	És maga vidékről van?
	Borbély
Yes, my whole family's from the country.	Igen, az egész családom vidékről van.
the back	hát
at the back	hátul
Shall I cut it short in the back?	Levágjam rövidre hátulról?

	Fehér
Please.	Kérem.
	Borbély
Are you a soldier?	Maga katona?
	Fehér
Why yes!	Persze.
Look at my clothes.	Nézze meg a ruhámat.
How much does the haircut cost?	Mibe kerül a hajvágás?
	Borbély
This was a plain haircut.	Ez egy egyszerü hajvágás volt.
Its price is fifty fillér.	Ötven fillér az ára.
Record Side 16A, beginning.	
	Fehér
Here's a pengő.	Tessék egy pengő.
I'd like forty cents back.	Kérek vissza negyven fillért.
I want to buy stamps.	Bélyegeket akarok venni.
	Borbély
our stamp	bélyegünk
We don't have stamps.	Nincs bélyegünk.
But the postoffice is quite near.	De a pósta egész közel van.
Only ten minutes, straight ahead.	Csak tiz percre, egyenesen előre.

Fehér

Have you cigarettes or matches?	Van cigarettájuk és gyufájuk?

Borbély

I'm sorry, but we have no cigarettes and matches.	Sajnálom, de nincs cigarettánk és gyufánk.
shave	borotválni
We only cut hair and shave.	Csak hajat vágunk és borotválunk.
One costs fifty fillér.	Az egyik ötven fillérbe kerül.
The other twenty or thirty.	A másik huszba vagy harmincba.
The two cost seventy or eighty fillér.	A kettő hetven vagy nyolcvan fillérbe kerül.

Fehér

That's cheap enough.	Az elég olcsó.
And the haircut's very good.	És a hajvágás nagyon jó.
Thank you. Good day.	Köszönöm. Jó napot.

2. Hints on Pronunciation

How's your pronunciation coming? Do you still have difficulties? If you do, review the discussion of the vowels and consonants which give you any special trouble. It would benefit you to pay special attention to the following.

1. The long vowel sounds: *é*, *á*, *ó*, *ő*. Remember to distinguish these always from the short vowels *e*, *a*, *o*, *ö*.

PRACTICE 1

Record Side 16A, after 1st spiral.

kéz	hand	hó	snow
ház	house	eső	rain

2. The vowel sounds involving pursing of your lips: *ö*, *ő*, *ü*. Review the discussion in Unit 2.

PRACTICE 2

Record Side 16A, after 2nd spiral.

idő	weather	hüvös	cool
öccs	younger brother	föl	up
előtt	before	ősz	fall
rövid	short	zsebkendő	handkerchief
ő	he	cipő	shoe

3. The *r*-sound. Review the discussion in Unit 4.

PRACTICE 3

Record Side 16A, after 3rd spiral.

szervusz	hello	rossz	bad
nyár	summer	fehér	white
fürdő	bath	ruha	clothes

4. The long consonants and the double consonants. Review the discussion in Unit 5.

PRACTICE 4

Record Side 16A, after 4th spiral.

megjavitotta	he repaired it	lesz	will be
háziasszony	landlady	utca	street
állam	state	kell	it is necessary

Remember, whenever you have any doubts about the pronunciation, turn to your Guide or the records, and listen. Listen, and imitate as closely as you can. The spelling may lead your eye along as you listen, and be of some help, but you can only learn by hearing the reproducing what you hear as closely as possible, in every respect.

Combinations of Sounds

Your attention was already drawn to the fact that in Hungarian when certain sounds happen to come into contact they may change to certain other sounds. Review the instances of this given in Units 3 (*d* + *j* becomes *ggy*, l + *j* becomes *jj*), 4 (*z* + *t* becomes *sz*, *t* + *j* becomes *tty*), 5 (*t* + *sz* is pronounced *tts*) and the summarizing note after the Hints on Pronunciation in Unit 5.

1. *Conventional Spelling* — Before: p, t, k f, sz, s, h c, cs, ty are pronounced respectively: — *Aids to Listening*

1. *Conventional Spelling*	*Aids to Listening*
b	p
d	t
g	k
v	f
z	s
zs	š
dz	ts
gy	ty

2. *Conventional Spelling*		*Aids to Listening*
p	Before: b, d, g z, zs gy are pronounced respectively:	b
t		d
k		g
sz		z
s		zh
c		dz
cs		dzh
ty		dy

3. sz or z + s between vowels are pronounced: šš

PRACTICE 5

Record Side 16A, after 5th spiral.

zsebkendő	žepkendöö	rövidharisnya	rövitharišnya
egyszerü	etyserü	huszba	huzba
ezt	est	azt	ast
városba	vaarožba	egykor	etykor
hozta	hosta	családtól	čalaattool
vonatban	vonadban	megszólitani	meksoolitani
gépgyár	geebdyaar	husban	hužban
székbe	seegbe	ablakból	ablagbool

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. HOW TO SAY *'my, your, his (her, its), our, their'*

foglalkozás	occupation	foglalkozásom	my occupation
fivér	brother	fivérem	my brother
apa	father	apám	my father
lány	daughter	lányom	my daughter
férj	husband	férjem	my husband
feleség	wife	feleségem	my wife
család	family	családom	my family
öccs	younger brother	öcsém	my younger brother
anya	mother	anyám	my mother
nővér	sister	nővérem	my sister
mosás	laundry	mosásom	my laundry
cipő	shoe	cipőm	my shoe

To say 'my' in Hungarian you must add to the noun stem the suffix *-m*. Note in these examples that the *-m* may or may not be added directly to the stem. You have probably already noted that after certain consonants you use auxiliary vowels, and after vowels not, and that *a* changes into *á*, *e* changes into *é*. In other words, that the rules are exactly the same as for such suffixes as *-t* or *-k*. Check and compare, and make sure. Other examples: *Istenem* 'my God', *nevem* 'my name', *vonatom* 'my train', *szállodám* 'my hotel', *lakásom* 'my apartment', *asszonyom* 'my (dear) woman', *fürdőm* 'my bath', *órám* 'my watch'.

foglalkozás	occupation	foglalkozásod	your (thy) occupation
fivér	brother	fivéred	your (thy) brother
apa	father	apád	your (thy) father

First of all, review the discussion of the familiar forms of address in Unit 5. To say 'your', or, rather, 'thy', in Hungarian, you use the suffix *-d*, under the same rules that you use the suffix for 'my', that is, *-m*. But this is a familiar form, going with *te: a te fivéred*, but never with *ön*, or *maga*. Other examples: *a te hugod* 'your (thy) younger sister', *kávéd* 'your (thy) coffee', *pénzed* 'your (thy) money', *a te söröd olcsóbb* 'your (thy) beer is cheaper'.

lány	daughter	lánya	his daughter
hug	younger sister	huga	his younger sister
apa	father	apja	his father
mosás	laundry	mosása	his laundry
cipő	shoe	cipője	his shoe

To say 'his (her, its)' in Hungarian, you add to the noun stem, after a vowel, the suffix *-ja/-je* (following the rule of vowel harmony, and after a consonant simply *-a/-e* (following the rule of vowel harmony). (*Note:* notice that *apa* 'father' is somewhat irregular, inasmuch as the *a* of the stem drops, in *ap-ám* 'my father', *ap-ja* 'his father'. See the discussion of this and related stems in the preceding Unit.) Other examples: *vendéglője* 'his restaurant', *husa* 'his meat', *gyufája* 'his match', *gyára* 'his factory', *mozija* 'his movie', *keze* 'his hand'. (*Note:* you have probably noticed by now that in Hungarian you never distinguish 'he' from 'she' or from 'it'. Hence in the above examples you may always substitute any of the other genders in translating into English, depending on the context: *a lányom keze* 'my daughter's hand', *a keze* 'her hand'.) The word *idő* 'time, weather' gives *ideje*, especially in the expression *itt az ideje* 'it's high time' (literally, 'here is its time').

bélyeg	stamp	bélyegünk	our stamp
cigaretta	cigarette	cigarettánk	our cigarette
gyufa	match	gyufánk	our match

To say 'our' in Hungarian, you add to a noun stem, after a vowel, the suffix *-nk*, and after a consonant the suffix *-unk/-ünk*, following the rule of vowel harmony. In *van cigarettánk* 'we have cigarettes' the Hungarian literally says 'there-is our-cigarette', and in ***nincs bélyegünk*** 'there-is-not our-stamp' for 'we have no stamps'. Other examples: ***mosónénk*** 'our laundress', ***van holnapra mosónénk?*** 'have we a laundress for tomorrow?', ***vonatunk*** 'our train', ***szülőnk*** 'our parent', ***repülőgépünk*** 'our airplane', ***hivatalnokunk*** 'our clerk', ***Istenünk*** 'our God', ***árunk*** 'our price'.

To say 'your' in Hungarian, you add a suffix you have not yet run across: ***-tok/-tek/-tök***, which follows the rule of vowel harmony. It is added to a noun vowel stem as it is, but to a consonant stem with any of the four auxiliary vowels, again in accordance with the rule of vowel harmony. Thus: ***ebédetek*** 'your lunch', ***cipőtök*** 'your shoe', ***a ti szabótok*** 'your tailor', ***házatok*** 'your house', ***a ti emeletetek*** 'your floor', ***ajtótok*** 'your door'. In all of these examples 'your' refers to more than one person.

cigarettájuk	their cigarette
gyufájuk	their match

To say 'their' in Hungarian, you add to the noun stem, after a vowel, the suffix ***-juk/-jük*** (following the rule of vowel harmony), and after a consonant simply ***-uk/-ük*** (following the rule of vowel harmony). Other examples: ***lakásuk*** 'their apartment', ***háziasszonyuk*** 'their landlady', ***katonájuk*** 'their soldier', ***vendéglőjük*** 'their restaurant', ***nem a mi székünk: az ő asztaluk és lámpájuk*** 'not our chair: their table and lamp'.

fiu son

fiam	my son	fiunk	our son
fiad	thy son	fiatok	your son
fia	his son	fiuk	their son

This noun stem behaves somewhat irregularly.

Have you put to use your knowledge of noun stem classes that you learned in the preceding unit? Notice that in all these cases—'my, your, his, their'—although the *one who possesses* may be a single person or several persons, the *thing possessed* is invariably a single object. If the *thing possessed* is more than a single object, the Hungarian employs a slightly different set of suffixes, and you will learn these in the next unit.

B. THE SUFFIX *-hoz/-hez/-höz* 'to'

borbélyhoz	to the barber
cipészhez	to the shoemaker
szabóhoz	to the tailor

To say 'to' in Hungarian, especially meaning movement towards something or somebody, you use the suffix *-hoz/-hez/-höz*, in accordance with the rules of vowel harmony. Other examples: *a tanulóhoz* 'to the student', *fölmegy az orvoshoz* 'he goes up to the doctor', *a cipőhöz* 'to the shoe', *Istenhez* 'to God', *a városhoz közel* 'near to the town', *a kávéhoz kenyeret enni* 'to eat bread with the coffee', *a családhoz* 'to the family', *férjhez ment* 'she got married'.

C. THE SUFFIX *-ról/-ről* 'from (a surface)'

vidékről	from the country	hátulról	from the back

To say 'from (a surface)' you use the suffix *-ról/-ről* in Hungarian, in accordance with the rule of vowel harmony. Other examples: *házról* 'from the house (down)', *évről évre* 'from year to year', *máról holnapra* 'from today to tomorrow', *egy beszéd az Egyesült Államokról* 'a speech about the United States'.

D. MORE ABOUT NUMERALS

tiz	ten	ötven	fifty
husz	twenty	hetven	seventy
harminc	thirty	nyolcvan	eighty
negyven	forty	száz	hundred

To say 'ten', 'twenty', 'thirty', and 'hundred', you must memorize the words above. The other tenth numbers are formed by the addition of the suffix *-van/-ven*, in accordance with the rule of vowel harmony. Thus: *hatvan* 'sixty', *kilencven* 'ninety'. To say that something costs a certain amount, the Hungarian uses the suffix you have already learned: *-ba/-be*, added either to the amount itself, or the species (currency) used, if given. For instance: *ez husz fillérbe kerül, de az hatvanba* 'this costs twenty filler, but that sixty', *az egyik egy dollárba kerül, a másik öt pengőbe* 'one costs one dollar, the other five pengő', *a cipő harminc pengőbe kerül, a ruha százba* 'the shoe costs thirty pengő, the clothes hundred'.

E. VOWEL HARMONY

When we treated vowel harmony in Unit 4 we divided up all vowels into two classes, front and back. Observe now the vowels in the following words:

ebédetek
cipőtök
házatok

férjhez
cipőhöz

családhoz
repülőhöz

In the class of back vowels you found *a*, *á*, *o*, *ó*, and *u*; among front vowels were *e*, *ö*, *ő*, and *ü*. Both *i* and *é* could occur in words containing vowels of either class, though they usually occur as front vowels. Within the class of front vowels, however, the vowels *ö*, *ő*, and *ü* stand apart in that they are spoken with the lips rounded. (See the discussion of pronunciation Unit 2.) Some endings have three forms, *-e-* for front vowels, *-o-* for back vowels and *-ö-* for rounded vowels. Endings will be cited with the three forms when they exist, and you must remember this second type of vowel correspondence. In this unit the endings *-tok/-tök/-tek* and *-hoz/-höz/-hez* follow this type.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the Basic Sentences covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read these sentences aloud and be ready to answer each one, giving the information asked for. Make your answers simple:

SAMPLE: Ön magyar? Nem, én az Egyesült Államokból vagyok.

1. Hol van a családja?
2. Hány órakor lesz ma ebéd?
3. Tavasz van?
4. Maga hivatalnok?
5. A cipője fehér, vagy fekete?
6. Merre van egy borbély?
7. Milyen idő van ma?
8. És milyen idő volt tegnap?
9. Hány inge van?
10. Áll egy lámpa az ablaknál?

Read aloud all the following and pick out the expression you think most suitable.

1. *You say that this is your shoe.*
   a) Az az én cipőm.
   b) Ez az én cipőm.
   c) Ez az ő cipője.
2. *You say that at the table there are six chairs.*
   a) Az asztalnál hatvan szék van.
   b) Az asztalnál hat szék van.
   c) Az ablaknál hét szék áll.
3. *You say that the laundress will be here immediately.*
   a) Mindjárt itt lesz a mosóné.
   b) Itt a mosóné a mosással.
   c) Itt a nagyságos asszony mosása.
4. *You say Stephen is your friend.*
   a) István az öcsém.
   b) István barátom.
   c) István barátja.
5. *You say your right hand is clean.*
   a) Tiszta a bal kezem.
   b) Tiszta a jobb kezünk.
   c) Tiszta a jobb kezem.
6. *You say that your sister married an aviator.*
   a) A hugom férjhez ment egy katonához.
   b) A lányom férjhez ment egy másikhoz.
   c) A nővérem férjhez ment egy repülőhöz.
7. *You say that he always talks about Hungary.*
   a) Mindjárt Magyarországról beszél.
   b) Nem ért magyarul.
   c) Mindig Magyarországról beszél.
8. *You say that lunch will be ready by one.*
   a) Az ebéd kész lesz egyre.
   b) Az ebéd nincs még kész.
   c) Máma vendéglőbe ment ebédre.
9. *You ask someone to please come out from the movie.*
   a) Kérem tessék kijönni a moziból.
   b) Kérem tessék megmutatni a mozit.
   c) Kérem, hánykor kezdődik a mozi?

10. *You ask for a hot bath.*

a) Szeretnék egy hideg fürdőt.
b) Kérek egy kis hideg vizet.
c) Szeretnék egy meleg fürdőt.

11. *You say that the handkerchief is in your pocket.*

a) A zsebkendő a zsebemben van.
b) A zseb a ruhámban van.
c) A zsebkendő a mosásban van.

12. *You say that a coat is not necessary because it is hot.*

a) Ez a kabát meleg.
b) Nem kell kabát, mert meleg van.
c) Kabátban tul meleg van.

13. *You say that your wife is a beautiful woman.*

a) A feleségem szép asszony.
b) A nagyságos ur felesége szép.
c) A pincér felesége szobalány.

COMBINATIONS

Match the words in the left-hand column with those in the right-hand column, making as many combinations as you can that make good sense and good Hungarian. Read them aloud.

1. évről
2. a te
3. máról
4. az ur
5. angol
6. a ti
7. a második
8. fölmegy
9. megmutatni
10. a városhoz
11. szeretnék

a. egy kis sört
b. holnapra
c. bort inni
d. évre
e. közel
f. cipőd
g. mosása
h. átnézni
i. repülőgép
j. házatok
k. emeleten

12. kérek
13. férjhez
14. Mária
15. ünnep

l. hátulról
m. az orvoshoz
n. megy
o. a ruhát
p. keze
q. szép
r. van
s. pincére
t. felesége
u. gyáratok
v. fiad

Section D—Listening In

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the

English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

1. *Paul and Eve discuss living accommodations.*

Record Side 16B, beginning.

Éva: Ez egy nagyon rossz és drága szálloda.
Nincs hideg és meleg viz éjjel,
és az ágyam nem tiszta.
Igaz, a vendeglő nem rossz,
de a pincér nem szeret dolgozni.

Pál: Én a feleségemmel egész közel lakom az állomáshoz.
A háziasszony nagyon kedves.

Éva: Hány szobájuk van?

Pál: Négy szobánk van:
egy ebédlő, egy háló,
egy fürdőszoba, meg egy konyha.

Éva: És mibe kerül a lakásuk?

Pál: Nyolc pengő egy hétre.
Minden közel van:
például a póstahivatal, a borbély, és a gyár.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Éva: A gyár? Milyen gyár?

Pál: A fegyvergyár. Én ott dolgozom.
Hivatalnok vagyok a gyárban.

Éva: Mit csinál a felesége?
Ő is dolgozik?

Pál: Igen, a feleségem most egy bankban dolgozik.
De szeretném bemutatni a háziasszonyunkat, ha van ideje, Éva.
Jöjjön velem.

Éva: Mindjárt. Nagyon szivesen.
Szeretném a szobákat átnézni.

2. *Paul and Eve at the boarding house.*

Pál: Nagyságos asszony, szeretném bemutatni Sándor Éva kisasszonyt.
Sándor kisasszony az Egyesült Államokból van.

Egy nagyon rossz szállodaban lakik itt Budapesten,
és szeretné most átnézni a lakásunkat.

Háziasszony: Nagyon örülök, kisasszony.
Kérem, foglaljon helyet.
Van idejük egy kis bort inni velem?

Pál: Azt hiszem.
De nincs tul meleg?
Talán egy kis sör . . .

Éva: Igen, én is hideg sört szeretnék, ha van itthon.

Háziasszony: Persze, szivesen.
Mit csinál Budapesten, kisasszony?

Pál: Sándor kisasszony tanuló.

Éva: Igen, de csak télen.
Nyáron nem tanulok, és talán vidékre megyek.
De most még csak tavasz van,
és szeretnék egy tiszta szobát a városban.

Háziasszony: Szeretném a szobákat megmutatni.
Azt hiszem lesz egy szép szoba,
talán ma este vagy holnap reggel.

Éva: Szeretném látni. De mibe kerül? Nem nagyon drága?

Háziasszony: Maga a Greenék barátja:
nem lesz nagyon drága.
Négy pengő egy hétre—
vagy olcsóbb, ha nincs itthon ebédre.

Éva: Nem leszek itthon ebédre, és az ár épen jó.
Van mindig meleg viz?

Pál: Itt éjjel, nappal, mindig van hideg és meleg is.

Éva: Nagyon örülök; de most vissza megyek a szállodába.
Viszontlátásra holnapig.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. Two soldiers go to a hotel, ask to see a room, ask about the dining room and the bathroom, ask about the price, and decide to take the room.

2. Three soldiers come to a boarding house, and are greeted by the landlady, who tells them what kind of rooms she has, the price of her rooms with or without lunch, and the soldiers decide to take three rooms.

3. A man goes to the barber to have his hair cut, and discusses the weather with the barber. Then he asks for directions and the address of a tailor. He goes to the tailor to have his coat cleaned, and his trousers pressed.

4. A man asks his landlady about her relatives, and then talks about his plans for the summer. He is interrupted by the coming of the laundress, with whom he checks his washing.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

alsó	lower
alsónadrág	shorts
át	through, across
borotválni	to shave
csókolom	I kiss (him, her, it)
fehér	white
fürdő	bath
haj	hair
harisnya	stocking
hát	back
hátul	at the back
ing	shirt
jönni	to come
kabát	coat
kendő	cloth
kész	ready, finished
kéz	hand
ki	out
le	down
mosás	laundry
mosóné	laundress
megjavitotta	he repaired it
nadrág	trousers
nézni	to look

pár	pair	tisztitani	to clean
rövid	short	vas	iron
rövidharisnya	socks	vasalni	to press
ruha	clothes	vágja	he cuts it
sziv	heart	zseb	pocket
tiszta	clean	zsebkendő	handkerchief

UNIT 9

LET'S EAT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

John and Stephen go to a restaurant.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Record Side 17A, beginning.	
	John
chief	fő
meal	étkezés
What are the main meals in Hungary?	Melyek Magyarországon a főétkezések?
	István
around	körül
Breakfast around eight o'clock.	Reggeli, nyolc óra körül.
between	közt
twelve	tizenkettő
Lunch between twelve and one.	Ebéd tizenkettő és egy közt.
dinner	vacsora
Dinner around eight p.m.	Vacsora esti nyolc körül.

sometimes	néha
they eat	esznek
morning snack (literally, the one of 10 o'clock)	tizórai
Sometimes they eat [a] morning snack too.	Néha tizóráit is esznek.
especially	különösen
In the afternoon, women especially, drink coffee.	Délután, különösen nők, kávét isznak.
John	
they customarily do	szoktak
What do they eat for breakfast, as a rule?	Mit szoktak reggelire enni?
István	
tea	tea
They drink tea or coffee.	Teát vagy kávét isznak.
egg	tojás
roll	zsemle
butter	vaj
Sometimes they eat an egg too, with bread or [a] roll and butter.	Néha egy tojást is esznek, kenyérrel vagy zsemlével és vajjal.
John	
Where is there a good restaurant in Budapest?	Hol egy jó vendéglő Budapesten?
István	
There's one, not far [away].	Van egy nem messze.
My daughters eat there.	A lányaim ott esznek.
John	
Really?	Igazán?
Your daughters eat there every day?	A lányai minden nap ott esznek?

	István
Only dinner.	Csak vacsorát.
For breakfast they're in their rooms.	Reggelire a szobáikban vannak.
They eat lunch with their friends.	A barátaikkal ebédelnek.
Or with their husbands' friends.	Vagy a férjeik barátjaival.
	at the restaurant
	István
menu	étlap
Waiter, please give me the menu.	Pincér, kérem az étlapot.
Record Side 17B, beginning.	
	Pincér
Will you have lunch?	Ebédelni tetszik?
	John
Yes, both of us.	Igen, mind a ketten.
What soup do you have?	Milyen leves van?
	Pincér
[Beef] broth.	Husleves.
	István
Bring two [beef] broths.	Hozzon két huslevest.
And afterwards, John?	És utána, János?
	John
I'm very hungry today.	Én nagyon éhes vagyok ma.
What sort of meat is there?	Milyen hus van?

	Pincér
chicken	csirke
There's chicken with paprika.	Paprikás csirke van.
ham	sonka
There's cold and hot ham.	Van hideg és meleg sonka.
	István
fish	hal
I'd like fish.	Én halat szeretnék.
	Pincér
I'm very sorry, but there is no fish.	Nagyon sajnálom, de nincs hal.
	István
then	akkor
Then bring the chicken.	Akkor hozza a csirkét.
	John
Two, please.	Kettőt, kérem.
And what drinks do you have?	És milyen italai vannak?
	Pincér
White table wine.	Fehér asztali bor.
Perhaps you'd like that before soup?	Talán azt parancsol leves előtt?
We also have cold beer.	Hideg sörünk is van.
	István
glass	pohár
I only want a glass of water.	Én csak egy pohár vizet akarok.

	John
And I'd like a glass of white wine.	Én meg egy pohár fehér bort szeretnék.
dessert	tészta
And what desserts have you?	És milyen tésztáik vannak?
	Pincér
apple	alma
pie	pite
We have apple pie.	Almáspiténk van.
it freezes	fagy
ice cream	fagylalt
We have ice cream, too.	Fagylaltunk is van.
fresh	friss
fruit	gyümölcs
And fresh fruit.	Meg friss gyümölcs.
	István
I want an apple.	Én egy almát akarok.
	John
And I want the ice cream.	És én a fagylaltot akarom.
cup	csésze
And, I think, two cups of black coffee.	És azt hiszem két csésze feketekávét.
	István
I don't want any milk.	Én nem kérek tejet.
But John, the coffee in this restaurant is bad.	De János, a kávé ebben a vendéglőben rossz.

Record Side 18A, beginning.

café	kávéház
Let's go to a café.	Menjünk egy kávéházba.
For black coffee.	Feketére.
	John
Fine!	Nagyon szivesen.
I like black coffee too.	Én is szeretem a feketét.
headwaiter	főur
bill	számla
Headwaiter, please give me the bill.	Főur, kérem a számlát.
	István
How much is my bill?	Az én számlám mennyi?
	John
Three pengő and eighty fillér.	Három pengő és nyolcvan fillér.
tip	borravaló
Thirty fillér for tip.	Harminc fillér borravalóra.
	István
newspaper	lap
I hope there are afternoon papers at the café.	Remélem vannak délutáni lapok a kávéházban.
	John
Of course.	Persze.
Every café in Budapest has the morning and the evening papers.	Minden Budapesti kávéházban vannak reggeli és esti lapok.
	Pincér
Thank you, gentlemen.	Köszönöm uraim.

2. Hints on Pronunciation

Review the rules for pronunciation in Unit 5. Here briefly are the ones illustrated in the practices below. Use the *Aids to Listening* rather to check yourself than to follow as you listen to the Guide.

Conventional Spelling		*Aids to Listening* Between vowels	Before or after a consonant
t, d ty, gy } + s	are pronounced	čč	č
t, d ty, gy } + zs	are pronounced	ddž	dž
t, d ty, gy } + sz	are pronounced	tts	ts
t, d ty, gy } + z	are pronounced	ddz	dz

PRACTICE 1

Record Side 18A, after 1st spiral.

nagyságos	naččaagoš	egyszerü	ettserü
hatszáz	hattsaaz	tetszik	tettsik

Further practice on consonant combinations:

t or ty + j	are pronounced between vowels	tty	before or after a consonant	ty
d or gy + j	" " " "	ddy	" " " " "	dy
n or ny + j	" " " "	nny		
l + j	is " " "	yy		

PRACTICE 2

Record Side 18B, after 2nd spiral.

adjon	addyon	eljönni	eyyönni
foglaljon	foglayyon	mindjárt	mindyaart
mondja	mondya	menjünk	mennyünk
barátja	baraattya	kabátjuk	kabaattyuk

Now check yourself in the following phrases once more on the *ö*, *ő*, and *ü* vowels.

PRACTICE 3

Record Side 18B, after 3rd spiral.

kettő és öt közt	between two and five	Jenő a fürdőben van	Eugene is in the bath
jöjjön, főur	come, headwaiter	az idő rövid	the time is short
különösen öt körül	especially around five	öt pengőbe kerül	it costs five pengő
friss gyümölcs	fresh fruit	az ebédlőhöz közel	near to the dining room
sörünk is van	we also have beer	hüvös az idő	the weather is cool
öcsém és nővérem	my younger brother and my sister	köszönöm a sört	thanks for the beer
ő nő	she is a woman	fölment a repülőben	he went up in the airplane

Re-read the exercise and make sure you pronounce everything correctly. At this stage you should have no trouble with your pronunciation any longer. If you do, listen more closely to the Guide (or records) and imitate as nearly as you possibly can. The *Hints on Pronunciation* will hereafter be discontinued, although from time to time you will have an opportunity to *Check Your Pronunciation* on difficult points.

Section B — Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences

1. *Ez*, *az* WITH SUFFIXES

ez	this	ezek	these
ezt	this (obj.)	ennek	to this

It is easy to add the noun-suffixes that you have already learned to the *pronouns ez* 'this', and *az* 'that'. A list of these follows. You will observe, in the majority of them the *-z* of the stem vanishes, giving place to a consonant which is simply a double of the first consonant of the suffix (thus *az* becomes *ab-ban* 'inside that one'.) But here is your list:

ez	this	ezek	these
ezt	this (obj.)	ezeket	these (obj.)
ebben	inside this	ezekben	inside these
ebből	from this	ezekből	from these
ebbe	into this	ezekbe	into these
ezen	upon this	ezeken	upon these
erről	from upon this	ezekről	from upon these
erre	onto this	ezekre	onto these
ennél	by this	ezeknél	by these
ettől	from this	ezektől	from these
ehhez	to this	ezekhez	to these
ennek	to this	ezeknek	to these
ekkor	at this time	. . . . . .	
evvel (ezzel)	with this	ezekkel	with these
az	that	azok	those
azt	that (obj.)	azokat	those (obj.)
abban	inside that	azokban	inside those
abból	from that	azokból	from those
abba	into that	azokba	into those
azon	upon that	azokon	upon those
arról	from upon that	azokról	from upon those

arra	onto that	azokra	onto those
annál	by that	azoknál	by those
attól	from that	azoktól	from those
ahhoz	to that	azokhoz	to those
annak	to that	azoknak	to those
akkor	at that time	......	
avval (azzal)	with that	azokkal	with those
van ennek a vonatnak		this train has	

Note that the suffix you add to the pronoun must be repeated also at the end of the noun itself. Other examples: *ettől a vendéglőtől* 'from this restaurant', *abba a fürdőbe* 'into that bath', *ahhoz a cipészhez* 'to that shoemaker', *annál a bejáratnál vagy ennél a kijáratnál* 'by that entrance or by this exit', *menjünk ahhoz a gyógyszerészhez* 'let us go to that pharmacist', *ezekben a lakásokban sok az ablak* 'in these apartments there are many windows'. Note the expressions: *ennek ellenére* 'in spite of this', and *annak ellenére* 'in spite of that'.

2. HOW TO SAY *'my, your, his, our, their'* (*objects*)

lányom	my daughter	lányaim	my daughters
uram	my (dear) sir	uraim	my (dear) sirs

You learned in Unit 8 the use of the suffix *-m*, with the meaning 'my'. This same suffix is used when 'my' refers to ownership of more than one person or object, but, as you notice, with the difference that there is an *-i-* vowel before the *-m* suffix. This *-i-* is the sign, throughout, as you will see, of owning several people or things. To put it in another way, the suffix whereby you express 'my persons or objects' in Hungarian is *-im*, with or without the auxiliary vowels *a* or *e*, according to the rule of vowel harmony. Other examples: *kezem* 'my hand', *kezeim* 'my hands'; *nővérem* 'my sister', *nővéreim* 'my sisters'; *házam* 'my house', *házaim* 'my houses'; *zsebkendőim* 'my handkerchiefs'; *fiaim* 'my sons'; *szülő* 'parent' becomes *szüleim* 'my parent'.

The suffix to be used for 'thy' with a plural noun is '*id*'. For instance, *fivéreid* 'your (thy) brothers'; *a vendéglőid és a szállodáid* 'your (thy) restaurants and hotels'; *a beszédeid* 'your speeches'; *az én cipőim, de a te ruháid* 'my shoes, but your (thy) clothes'; *a hugaid* 'your (thy) younger sisters'; *a te szüleid* 'your (thy) parents'.

lánya	his daughter	lányai	his daughters
itala	his drink	italai	his drinks

To say 'his' with a plural noun you add the same suffix you did when you said 'his' with a singular noun, but in addition you add an *-i* vowel at the end of the word. Other examples: ***bélyegei*** 'his stamps'; ***az én gyufáim nem az ő gyufái*** 'my matches are not his matches'; ***a feleségem levelei*** 'my wife's letters' (literally, 'my wife her letters'); ***az ön földmüvelői dolgoznak*** 'your farmers are working'; ***a hivatalnokai mind itt vannak, nagyságos ur*** 'all your clerks are here, sir'; ***az ő szulei, nem az én szüleim*** 'his parents, not my parents'; ***a fiai*** 'his sons'.

To say 'our' with a plural noun, you follow a similar rule and employ the suffix ***-ink***, with or without the appropriate auxiliary vowel, in accordance with the rule of vowel harmony. For instance, ***az áraink*** 'our prices'; ***Magyar városaink*** 'our Hungarian towns'; ***angol repülőink*** 'our English aviators'; ***a fivéreink a gyárainkban dolgoznak*** 'our brothers work in our factories'.

To say 'your' with a plural noun, under the same principle as before, add the suffix ***-itok/-itek*** (with or without auxiliary vowels, following in each case the rules you already know). For instance, ***a szabóitok*** 'your tailors'; ***cipészeitek*** 'your shoemakers'; ***a fiaitok és a szüleitek*** 'your parents and your sons'; ***a katonáitok*** 'your soldiers'.

szobájuk	their room	szobáik	their rooms
barátjuk	their friend	barátjaik	their friends
férje	her husband	férjeik	their husbands

To say 'their' with a plural noun, use the suffix ***-ik*** (with or without the auxiliary vowels, and following the usual rules). For instance: ***feleségeik*** 'their wives'; ***kocsijaik*** 'their cars'; ***nyaraik és teleik*** 'their summers and their winters'; ***Isteneik*** 'their gods'; ***italaik*** 'their drinks'.

You have now been introduced to nearly thirty suffixes. In Hungarian, as you realize, suffixes play a very important part, because the noun is related to the rest of the sentence (to speak of noun suffixes only) by means of them. The tables that attempt to summarize your knowledge concerning nouns, and the noun-suffixes, and their use, are in the appendix p. 211. Be sure to look them up now, and, though of course you are not to memorize them, be sure that you understand how the noun is formed. You will then be able to express the relation yourself when using other nouns. To understand the use of the tables, read the introduction to them in the appendix. Remember that the meanings are always determined by the context in Hungarian: study them as they occur in the *Basic Sentences* and other texts and in conversation.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say?

I

Pick out the right answer or question.

1. *You ask for a warm bath.*
   a) Kérek egy pohár meleg vizet.
   b) Szeretnék egy meleg fürdőt.
   c) Ez a sör rossz, mert meleg.

2. *You ask what the chief meals are in the United States.*
   a) Melyek az Egyesült Államokban a főétkezések?
   b) Hol van egy jó vendéglő az Egyesült Államokban?
   c) Az Egyesült Államokban három főétkezés van egy nap.

3. *You ask for a clean table.*
   a) Kérem, vágja le a hajamat.
   b) Kérek egy tiszta asztalt.
   c) A másik szék nem tiszta.

4. *You say that lunch is at two every day.*
a) Ebéd minden nap kettőkor van.
b) Vacsora minden este hétkor van.
c) Reggeli minden nap kilenc óra előtt van.

5. *You say, sometimes they eat fresh fruit.*
a) Mindjárt hideg sonkat esznek.
b) Néha friss gyümölcsöt esznek.
c) Kérek egy kis friss gyümölcsöt.

6. *You say she was very hungry yesterday.*
a) A nővérem szeretne enni.
b) A hugom ma nagyon éhes.
c) Tegnap nagyon éhes volt.

7. *You ask for the Hungarian newspapers.*
a) Kérem a német étlapot.
b) Kérem az angol reggeli lapokat.
c) Kérem a magyar lapokat.

8. *You say there is a café on every street in Budapest.*
a) Budapesten minden utcában van egy kávéház.
b) Budapesten minden utcában van egy háza.
c) A szálloda egész közel van a házhoz.

9. *You order a cup of black coffee.*
a) Pincér, kérek egy kis meleg kávét.
b) Kérem hozzon egy csésze feketét.
c) Kávé csészében van, nem pohárban.

10. *You ask for ham and eggs.*
a) Kérek tojást sonkával.
b) Kérek kenyeret vajjal.
c) Kérek bort vizzel.

11. *You ask how much your bill is.*
a) Nem tudom mennyi a számlám.
b) Mennyi a borravaló?
c) Mennyi a számlám?

12. *You say you would like to drink milk after the dessert.*
a) Szeretnék a tészta után tejet inni.
b) Szeretnék leves előtt bort inni.
c) Szeretnék étkezés közt vizet inni.

II

Read aloud the following words. Then read them aloud again, using the forms for *my*, *your*, *his*, *our*, *their*, first as one owner or several owners and one possession; then as one owner or several owners but several possessions.

fiu
cipőben
házról

lánnyal
lakásba
ebédre

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by your Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

A soldier in a restaurant.

Record Side 18A, after 4th spiral.

Katona: Jó napot.

Főur: Isten hozta Magyarországra, katona ur.
Mit tetszik parancsolni?

Katona: Ért maga angolul vagy németül?

Főur: Sajnos csak magyarul beszélek.

Katona: Akkor kérem beszéljen minden szót lassabban, mert én nem nagyon jól értek magyarul.
Vacsorát szeretnék enni és kérek egy étlapot.

Főur: Tessék az étlap, nagyságos ur.
Rossz idő van ma, nagyon hüvös—talán egy pohár bort parancsol levese előtt?

Record Side 18B, beginning.

Katona: Igen kérek egy kis fehér bort.
A magyar bor mindig nagyon jó.
És milyen leves van?

Főur: Csirkeleves van ma este.

Katona: Az jó lesz.
És utána hozzon halat burgonyával, két három zsemlét és vajat.

Főur: És milyen tésztát parancsol?

Katona: Azt hiszem, egy pár almát akarok enni, ha

van friss gyümölcsük, és ha nincs, akkor egy fagylaltot.
És persze utána egy csésze feketét.

Főur: Mindjárt vissza leszek.

Katona: Egy perc! Az a szép lány ott az ajtónal itt dolgozik?

Főur: Igen, a vendéglőben a számlákkal dolgozik.
Az én hugom.

Katona: Igazán?
Mondja, én nem akarom megszólitani, mert talán nem beszél ismeretlenekhez—de ha maga bemutatna . . .

Főur: Nen tudom, nagyságos ur; a hugom nem nagyon szereti a katonákat, mert csak rövid idejig vannak Budapesten.
De ön az Egyesült Államokból van . . . Éva, gyere ide egy percre! Szeretném bemutatni ezt a katona urat.

Éva: Jó estét.
Látom, hogy maga az Egyesült Államokból van.

Katona: Igen, kisasszony.
Kérem, foglaljon helyet.
Parancsol vacsorát, vagy talán egy kis bort?

Éva: Nem, nem, csak egy kis meleg tejet kérek.
És egy cigarettát. Köszönöm.
Van egy gyufája?

Katona: Mondja, főur, hánykor kezdődik a mozi?

Főur: Hét és nyolc közt.
Azt hiszem, hét harminckor.

Katona: Kérem, kissasszony, jöjjön velem a moziba.

Éva: De maga egy egész ismeretlen katona!
Nem, köszönöm, de én nem szeretem a katonákat.
És itt dolgozom a vendéglőben kilencig.
Meddig lesz Budapesten?

Katona: Azt hiszem három négy hétig, talán két hónapig.
És akkor vissza megyek Texasba.

Éva: Oh, igazán? Mit csinál Texasban?

Katona: Földmüvelő vagyok, az apámnál dolgozom.
Budapesten nincsenek barátaim vagy rokonaim, és szeretnék ma este moziba menni —kérem jöjjön velem.

Éva: Ma este nem megyek.
De holnap nem dolgozom és akkor talán elmegyek magával.

Katona: Köszönöm, kisasszony. Mi a cime?

Éva: Csak jöjjön a vendéglőbe hétre, én is itt leszek.
Viszontlátásra.

Katona: Viszontlátásra. Főur!
Kérem a vacsorámat!

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. Compare notes with a friend on the food you like and dislike.
2. Complain to a landlady about her place: price too high, not too clean, chambermaid doesn't work, no hot water in the bathroom.
3. Congratulate the waiter in a restaurant about the place: good food and good drinks. Also, the adjoining hotel very good, with clean beds and excellent bathroom.
4. Ask the waiter to direct you to a barber and a tailor, and ask for the address of a factory. Discuss the arrival and departure of the trains at the station.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up if necessary.

FINDER LIST

The numbers and letters following the nouns refer to the tables in the appendix, p. 212. If you look up the tables you will see how to use the words in other ways than those that occurred in the *Basic Sentences*. We shall give these reference numbers with every new noun from now on.

alma (I.B.1)	apple
almáspite (I.B.2)	apple pie
borravaló (I.A.)	tip (literally, for wine)
csésze (I.B.2)	cup
csirke (I.B.2)	chicken
éhes	hungry

étkezés (II.A.1b)	meal
étlap (II.A.2a)	menu
fagy	it freezes
fagylalt (II.A.2a)	ice cream
fekete (I.B.2)	black (coffee)
fő	chief, head, main
főur (II.A.1a)	headwaiter
főpincér (II.A.1b)	
friss	fresh
gyümölcs (II.A.1a)	fruit
hal (II.A.1a)	fish
husleves (II.A.1b)	broth (literally, meat soup)
isznak	they drink
kávéház (II.A.1a)	café
körül	around, about
közt	between, among
különösen	especially
lap (II.A.2a)	newspapers (literally, sheet)
leves (II.A.1b)	soup

néha	sometimes
paprikás	with paprika
pite (I.B.2)	pie
pohár (II.B.1)	glass
reggeli	breakfast (literally, that of the morning)
sonka (I.B.1)	ham
számla (I.B.1)	bill, check
szoktak	they do customarily
tea (I.B.1)	tea
tészta (I.B.1)	dessert, dough
tizenkettő	twelve
tizórai (I.A.)	morning snack ([illegible]rally, that of ten o'clock)
tojás (II.A.1b)	egg
vacsora (I.B.1)	dinner
vaj (II.A.1a)	butter
zsemle (I.B.2)	roll

UNIT 10

SEEING THE SIGHTS

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Eugene and Mary discuss the sights of Budapest.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Record Side 19A, beginning.	
	Jenő
capital or chief town	főváros
Budapest is the capital of Hungary.	Budapest Magyarország fővárosa.
It's the heart of the nation.	Az ország szive.
I'd like to show it to you.	Szeretném megmutatni magának.
	Mária
Yes, I'd like to see it.	Igen, szeretném látni.
always	mindig
I heard	hallottam
I've always heard that it's very beautiful.	Mindig azt hallottam, hogy nagyon szép.
	Jenő
Danube	Duna
side	oldal
it lies	fekszik
Budapest lies on two sides of the Danube.	Budapest a Duna két oldalán fekszik.
Buda on the right side.	Buda a jobb oldalon.
Pest on the left side.	Pest a bal oldalon.

bridge	hid
Between the two towns there are six bridges.	A két város közt hat hid van.

Mária

much *or* many	sok
mountain	hegy
Is it true that there are many mountains in Buda?	Igaz, hogy Budán sok a hegy?

Jenő

Yes, it *is* true.	Igen, igaz.
it is possible	lehet
to see	látni
From the mountains of Buda you can see Pest.	Buda hegyeiről lehet Pestet látni.
parliament	országház
On the Pest side are the houses of parliament.	A pesti oldalon van az országház.
cathedral	bazilika
The cathedral isn't far.	Nem messze van a bazilika.

Mária

they say it	mondják
it is full	tele van
They say that Budapest is full of baths.	Azt mondják, hogy Budapest tele van fürdőkkel.

Jenő

In Budapest there are many baths.	Budapesten sok a fürdő.

Margaret	Margit
island	sziget
For example, the one on Margaret Island.	Például, a Margit-szigeti.
That bath is very beautiful.	Az a fürdő nagyon szép.
There's hot and cold water.	Van meleg és hideg viz.

Record Side 19B, beginning.

You can bathe in the Danube, but the water's too cold.	A Dunában is lehet fürdeni, de a viz tul hideg.
middle	közép
in the middle of	közepén
The island lies in the middle of the Danube.	A sziget a Duna közepén fekszik.

Mária

Eugene, please come with me to a café.	Jenő, kérem jöjjön velem egy kávéházba.
There's one not far from my hotel.	Van egy nem messze a szállodámtól.
opposite	szemben
stands	áll
large	nagy
museum	muzeum
There's a large museum opposite.	Szemben áll egy nagy muzeum.

Jenő

Let's go.	Menjünk.
it is full	tele van
It might be full, Mary.	Lehet, hogy tele van, Mária.

	(At the Café)
	Mária
Here comes a waiter.	Itt jön egy pincér.
Are you the headwaiter?	Maga a főpincér?
	Pincér
I am.	Én vagyok.
What do you wish, Miss?	Mit parancsol, kisasszony?
	Jenő
Have you a table for two (lit. with two chairs?)	Van egy asztaluk két székkel?
	Pincér
One minute!	Egy perc!
Yes, here's one.	Igen, itt van egy.
Please take a seat, Miss.	Tessék helyet foglalni, kisasszony.
	Mária
Please bring me a cup of black coffee.	Kérem, hozzon egy csésze feketét.
	Jenő
I'm hungry.	Éhes vagyok.
Bring me some bread and butter and ham.	Hozzon egy kis kenyeret vajjal és sonkával.
	Mária
It's five o'clock now.	Most öt óra van.
At six I go to my tailor's.	Hatkor a szabómhoz megyek.
What can you see between five and six?	Mit lehet öt és hat közt látni?

	Jenő
Not much, of course.	Nem sokat persze.
Perhaps a couple of museums.	Talán egy pár muzeumot.
	Mária
A couple in one afternoon?	Egy párat, egy délután?
No, that's too much.	Nem, az tul sok.
One's enough.	Egy az elég.
interesting	érdekes
Which is interesting?	Melyik érdekes?
Record Side 20A, beginning.	
	Jenő
agriculture	gazdaság
The Economic Museum is very interesting.	A Gazdasági Muzeum nagyon érdekes.
Shall we go by car?	Menjünk kocsival?
	Mária
It's too expensive.	Tul drága.
electricity	villany
streetcar	villanyos
The streetcar is much cheaper.	A villanyos sokkal olcsóbb.
The carstop (lit. station) is right here.	Épen itt az állomás.
	Jenő
Waiter, please give me the bill.	Pincér, kérem a számlát.
Have twenty-five fillér for a tip.	Tessék huszönöt fillér borravalóra.

	Mária
How much does my coffee cost?	Mibe kerül a kávém?
	Jenő
Only thirty-five fillér.	Csak harmincöt fillérbe.
	Mária
That's not much.	Az nem sok.
ticket	jegy
And how much does the streetcar ticket cost?	És mibe kerül a villanyosjegy?
	Jenő
Twenty-four fillér, I think.	Azt hiszem, huszonnégy fillérbe.
	Mária
Then here's fifty-nine fillér.	Akkor tessék ötvenkilenc fillér.
	Jenő
You don't have to do that.	Nem kell azt csinálni.
pays	fizet
In Hungary the boy always pays.	Magyarországon mindig a fiu fizet.
	Mária
But I'm from the United States. You're only a student. But my father's a banker.	De én az Egyesült Államokból vagyok. Maga csak egy tanuló. De az én apám bankár.

	Jenő
it's in order	rendben van
Perhaps it's all right then.	Akkor talán rendben van.
But here comes the streetcar.	De itt jön a villanyos.
	Mária
Eugene, I'm very sorry.	Jenő, nagyon sajnálom.
I don't think we have enough time for the museum.	Nem hiszem, hogy van elég időnk a muzeumra.
	Jenő
O.K.	Rendben van.
What do you want to do?	Mit akar csinálni?
It's not six yet.	Még nincs hat.
	Mária
What time is it?	Hány óra van?
	Jenő
Five forty-five.	Öt negyvenöt.
Where is this tailor?	Hol ez a szabó?
	Mária
Here's his address.	Itt a cime.
My chambermaid says that it's by a church.	A szobalányom azt mondja, hogy egy templomnál van.

2. Additional Numbers

Go through these additional numbers in the same way as the *Basic Sentences*, repeating each number after your Guide or the phonograph record.

Record Side 20B, beginning.

zero	nulla
eleven	tizenegy
twelve	tizenkettő
sixteen	tizenhat
nineteen	tizenkilenc
twenty-one	huszonegy
twenty-two	huszonkettő
twenty-eight	huszonnyolc
thirty-one	harmincegy
thirty-four	harmincnégy
forty-two	negyvenkettő
forty-six	negyvenhat
fifty-seven	ötvenhét
sixty-three	hatvanhárom
seventy-seven	hetvenhét
eighty-six	nyolcvanhat
ninety-nine	kilencvenkilenc
one hundred and two	százkettő
one hundred and eleven	száztizenegy
one hundred and eighty-five	száznyolcvanöt
two hundred	kétszáz

seven hundred	hétszáz
one thousand six hundred	ezerhatszáz (ezer-hat-száz)
three thousand seven hundred	háromezerhétszáz (három-ezer-hét-száz)
1943	ezerkilencszáznegyvenhárom (ezer-kilenc-száz-negyven-három)
1776	ezerhétszázhetvenhat (ezer-hét-száz-hetven-hat)
1918	ezerkilencszáztizennyolc (ezer-kilenc-száz-tizen-nyolc)
one million	egy millió
third	harmadik
fourth	negyedik
fifth	ötödik
seventh	hetedik
twentieth	huszadik
hundredth	századik
thirty-sixth	harminchatodik (harminc-hatodik)
once	egyszer
six times	hatszor
twenty-five times	huszonötször

Examine the following examples (repeated only one time each on the record):

Two times two is four.	Kétszer kettő négy.
The fifth house to the left.	Az ötödik ház balra.
His third daughter is here.	Itt a harmadik lánya.
There are a thousand soldiers in town.	Ezer katona van a városban.
The bill is fifty-three pengő.	A számla ötvenhárom pengő.
Twenty-six minutes.	Huszonhat perc.

Three times six is eighteen.	Háromszor hat az tizennyolc.
That is the ninth airplane.	Az a kilencedik repülőgép.
Charles the Second.	Második Károly.

Section B—Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. NUMBERS

Examine the following numbers which you have just learned.

tizenkilenc	19
huszonegy	21
harmincnégy	34

Note that to form the numbers 11–19 you take the word for 'ten', *tiz*, add to it *-en*, and then add to that the number you desire: *tiz-en-nyolc* 'eighteen'. To form the numbers 21–29 you take the word for 'twenty', *husz*, add to it *-on*, and then add to that the number you desire: *husz-on-kilenc* 'twenty-nine'. But when you come to numbers beyond 31, you simply proceed as in English, adding the number you want to the tenth: *negyven-négy* 'forty-four', *hatvan-egy* 'sixty-one', and so forth. (*Note:* It is the practice to write all numbers together in one word in Hungarian; thus, '1911' *ezerkilencszáztizenegy*.)

első	first
második	second
harmadik	third

To say 'third . . . one hundredth . . . nine thousandth' (and so forth), after the number you add the suffix *-dik*, with the appropriate auxiliary vowel. Some numeral stems undergo certain regular changes when combining with certain suffixes, just like noun stems do. Hence *három* gives *harmadik*, and *négy* gives *negyedik:* but *öt* simply *ötödik*, and so forth. The words for 'first' and 'second' must be learned separately. (*Note:* Do not confuse *második* 'second' with *másik* 'other'!)

egyszer	once
hatszor	six times
huszonötször	twenty-five times

To say 'times' in Hungarian you must add after the desired number the suffix *-szor/-szer/-ször*, in accordance with the rule of vowel harmony. Thus, *kétszer* 'twice', *nyolcszor* 'eight times', *ötvenötször* 'fifty-five times', *százszor* 'one hundred times'. This is the form you use in multiplication: *háromszor kilenc az huszonhét* '3.9=27'.

kettő	2	két oldal	two sides

This number appears in two forms: *kettő* when by itself, *két* generally when with another word. This is also the case with 'twenty-two', 'fifty-two', and so forth. Thus, *huszonkettő*, but *huszonkét pár nadrág* 'twenty-two pairs of pants', *százkét orvos* 'one hundred and two doctors'.

B. HOW TO SAY '*to*'

nagyságos urnak	to the gentleman
nagyságos asszonynak	to the lady
önnek	to you

The Hungarian suffix *-nak/-nek*, used always in accordance with the rule of vowel harmony, commonly means 'to', but also might be used to indicate possession with the verb *van*, in the third person; the suffix also indicates the goal and direction of an action. Examples: *Istvánnak menni kell* 'Stephen must go (literally, to Stephen to go it is necessary)'; *Jenőnek háza van* 'Stephen has a house'; *Máriának szép keze van, de nincs jó szive* 'Mary has a pretty hand, but she hasn't got a good heart'; *a pincérnek igaza van* 'the waiter is right (literally, to the waiter there is truth)'; *a férjemnek nincs kabátja* 'my husband has not a coat'; *a szüleimnek nem lehet megmutatni* 'it is impossible to show it to my parents'; *Magyarországnak csak egy nagy városa van* 'Hungary has only one large city'. Also note that this and that *ez* and *az* become *ennek* 'to this' and *annak* 'to that'.

C. THE SUFFIX *-n* 'upon' (*surface*)

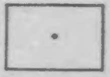
oldalon	on the side	Budapesten	in Budapest

The suffix *-n* (with or without the appropriate auxiliary vowel *-e-*, *-ö-*, or *-o-*) is used to indicate position upon a surface: *házon* 'upon the house'; *Magyarországon* 'in Hungary' (that is, upon its surface; but note that you say *az Egyesült Államokban* 'in the United States'); *a fehér cipőn* 'upon the white shoe'; *a tejen* 'upon the milk'. In *nyáron* 'in the summer', and *télen* 'in the winter' the same suffix is used (but you say *tavasszal* 'in the spring', and *ősszel* 'in the fall'), and also in *minden héten* 'every week' (but *minden nap* 'every day', *minden hónapban* 'every month', and *minden évben* 'every year').

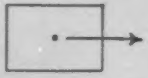
D. REVIEW OF NINE SUFFIXES

This graphic presentation may help you to fix in your mind the rough meanings of these suffixes, all nine of which deal with some sort of spatial relationship. (A dot means 'place where'; and arrow means 'movement in a direction'.)

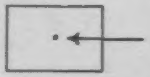
1. -ban
-ben 'inside' ....



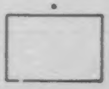
2. -ból
-ből 'from inside' ....

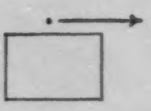
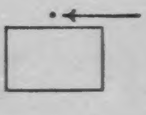
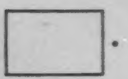
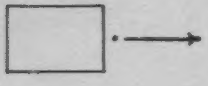
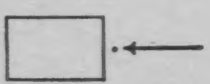


3. -ba
-be 'into' ....



4. -on
-ön
-en 'upon' ....



5.	-ról -ről	'from upon'	
6.	-ra -re	'onto'	
7.	-nál -nél	'at'	
8.	-tól -től	'from'	
9.	-hoz -höz -hez	'toward'	

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

I

How would you say in Hungarian:

1. Please, bring me my breakfast.
2. My daughter married a doctor.
3. My younger brother works in town.
4. It is necessary to press my trousers.
5. Nine times eight is seventy-two.
6. My second son went up in the airplane.
7. The armament factory is only five minutes straight ahead.
8. I want to buy four stamps.
9. Woman's place is in the kitchen.
10. Today the weather is hot, perhaps there will be rain.

II

Pick out the right answer or question:

1. *You ask what is the capital of the United States.*

   a) Az Egyesült Államokban sok a nagy város?
   b) Mi az Egyesült Államok fővárosa?
   c) Hol van az Egyesült Államok fővárosa?

2. *You say your family lives here.*

   a) Itt lakom a családommal.
   b) Itt lakik a családom.
   c) Itt lakom a családomnál.

3. *You say you heard that the train does not leave today.*
   a) Azt hallottam, hogy a vonat nem indul ma.
   b) Azt mondják, hogy a vonat nem érkezik meg ma.
   c) Lehet, hogy a vonat nem indul ma.

4. *You say your friend lies in bed.*
   a) A barátja a szobában áll.
   b) A barátom helyet foglal az asztalnál.
   c) A barátom az ágyban fekszik.

5. *You say that the bridge is quite short.*
   a) A hid elég rövid.
   b) A hid egész rövid.
   c) A hid nincs messze kocsival.

6. *You say the church is full of girls.*
   a) A bazilika tele van lányokkal.
   b) Az országház tele van fiukkal.
   c) A templom tele van lányokkal.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again, if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Charles and Paul discuss Budapest.

Record Side 21A, beginning.

Károly: Budapest egy érdekes város.
Pál: Igen, sok a szép ház,
és különösen tetszik az országház.
Károly: Az a nagy ház a Duna bal oldalán,
nem messze a Dunától?

Pál: Az. Azt hallottam, hogy Budapesten sok a muzeum.
Például, azt mondják, hogy a Gazdasági Muzeum nagyon érdekes.
Tegnap ott volt a nővérem a magyar férjével.

Károly: A nővéred férje magyar?
Mi a foglalkozása?

Pál: Hivatalnok a póstánál.
De a családja az Egyesült Államokból van.
Az öccsének egy nagy fegyvergyára van New Yorktól nem messze.

Károly: Igazán? Hol lakik?

Pál: Az öccse? Azt nem tudom. De nővérem cime az én cimem is:
Rózsa-utca 27, a negyedik emeleten a harmadik ajtó jobbra.

Károly: Szeretném máma látni a bazilikát és a sok budapesti templomot.
Van időd velem jönni?

Pál: Van időm, de nincs ma tul meleg?
Épen a nyár közepén vagyunk.
Menjünk egy fürdőbe.

Károly: Rendben van.
Melyik fürdőbe menjünk?

Pál: A Duna közepén van egy szép sziget.
Margit-sziget a neve.
Ez a sziget tele van fürdőkkel.

Károly: Mibe kerül egy fürdő-jegy?

Pál: A sziget-jegy ára egy pengő.
És azt hiszem, hogy a fürdő-jegy ötven fillérbe kerül.

Károly: Az elég drága. De nem baj.
Szeretném a szigetet látni.
Hogy kell átmenni?

Pál: A hidon.
A szigeten sok a kávéház is,
és lehet sört inni, vagy ebédelni és vacsorázni.

Károly: Ki lehet menni villanyossal?

Pál: Persze, hogy ki lehet.
De a szüleimnek van egy kocsija.

Károly: Az apád a kocsiját Budapestre hozta?

Pál: Oh nem, ez egy magyar kocsi, egy magyar gyárból.
Itt Pesten is lehet kocsikat venni.

Károly: Hány óra van most?

Pál: Épen kilenc harminc.
Hánykor menjünk a fürdőbe?

Károly: Tizenegykor csak, mert tizre itt lesz a mosóném a tiszta ruhákkal.
Át kell nézni az ingeimet,
és egy nadrágot is ki kell vasalni.
De tizenegyre minden kész lesz.

Pál: Rendben van
Én meg megyek reggelizni, mert ma reggel nagyon éhes vagyok.
Remélem lesz sonka és tojás és egy nagy csésze kávé tejjel, és két három zsemle vajjal.

Károly: Fürdő előtt nem jó tul sokat enni.
De viszontlátásra tizenegyig.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. You are planning a sight-seeing tour of Budapest with a young lady. You ask her if she would like to see the Houses of Parliament and the Cathedral. She says that she would, and that they say the museum is interesting. You ask her how to get there and plan what streetcars you must take, etc.

2. Ask of someone the way to the baths and he asks if you want the ones in Budapest or the one on Margaret's Island. You ask him if that one is good, and he tells you that it is very beautiful and that it has hot and cold water. Ask if you can bathe in the Danube, and he says it is too cold. He then directs you to the Island.

3. Take a walk with someone to the top of a hill and discuss what you see from there: Buda on one side of the Danube, Pest on the other (use right and left sides), the six bridges across the river, the mountains, and the many buildings in the city (mention

the cathedral churches, Houses of Parliament, factory, railway station, etc.—use to the right or left, straight ahead, in front of, etc.)

4. You and your girl go to a restaurant and order dinner and drinks. You talk about the things there are in the city. Mention buildings and places, the scenery, that is river, mountains, island and the like.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of previous lessons if necessary.

FINDER LIST

This list does not include the new numbers you have learned in this Unit.

bankár (II.A.1b)	banker
bazilika (I.B.1)	cathedral
Duna (I.B.1)	Danube
éhes	hungry
érdekes	interesting
fekszik	he lies
fizet	he pays
főváros (II.A.1b)	capital (literally, chief city)
gazdaság (II.A.2a)	economy, agriculture, housewifery
hallottam	I heard it
hegy (II.A.1a)	mountain
hid (II.A.1a)	bridge
jegy (II.A.1a)	ticket
közepén	in the middle of it
közép (II.B.2)	middle
lehet	it is possible
Margit (II.A.2a)	Margaret
menjünk	let's go
mindig	always
mondják	they say
muzeum (II.A.2a)	museum
nagy	great, large, big
oldal (II.A.1b)	side
ország (II.A.2a)	country (nation)
országház (II.A.1a)	parliament (the building)
rendben van	it is in order, all right, O.K.
sok	much, many
szemben	opposite
sziget (II.A.1a)	island
tele van	it is full
templom (II.A.2a)	church
villany (II.A.2b)	electricity
villanyos (villamos) (II.A.2b)	street-car

UNIT 11

SHOPPING

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Mr. Alexander goes shopping.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Record Side 216, beginning.	
	Sándor
for me to go	mennem
to buy things	vásárolni
I have to go to town to buy things.	A városba kell mennem vásárolni.
	Kovács
What time do you have to go?	Hánykor kell mennie?
	Sándor
half	fél
At nine-thirty (literally, half ten).	fél tizkor
quarter	negyed
At a quarter past twelve I have to have lunch with my wife.	Negyed egykor a feleségemmel kell ebédelnem.

	Kovács
I have business	dolgom van
to me	nekem
I have business in town this morning too.	Nekem is dolgom van ma reggel a városban.
by a quarter of ten (literally, three quarters ten)	háromnegyed tizre
But I won't be ready till quarter of ten. (lit. But I will be ready only at a quarter of ten.)	De csak háromnegyed tizre leszek kész.
together	együtt
Let's go together.	Menjünk együtt.
	Sándor
Fine!	Szivesen.
that sort	olyan
shop	üzlet
Maybe you'll be so good as to show me the shops.	Talán lesz olyan jó megmutatni nekem az üzleteket.
I'm a total stranger in Budapest.	Budapesten egész ismeretlen vagyok.
	Kovács
What do you want to buy?	Mit akar venni?
	Sándor
in the first place	először is
a present	ajándék
In the first place, I have to buy a present for my son.	Először is egy ajándékot kell vennem a fiamnak.
tobacco	dohány
little *or* small	kis
After that, a little tobacco.	Azután egy kis dohányt.

medicine	gyógyszer
I have to buy medicine, too.	Gyógyszert is kell vásárolnom.
	Kovács
All right.	Rendben van.
We have to get started.	Indulnunk kell.
We have to go by street-car.	Villanyossal kell mennünk.
One comes every minute.	Minden percben jön egy.
You can see the town from the window.	Az ablakból lehet látni a várost.
region	vidék
But this is a bad section here.	De ez itt egy rossz vidék.
But the center of town is only a couple of minutes [away].	De a város közepe csak egy pár percre van.
Here we are!	Itt vagyunk!
department store	áruház
This is a big department store.	Ez egy nagy áruház.

Record Side 22A, beginning.

	Sándor
As a rule I don't speak Hungarian.	Én nem szoktam magyarul beszélni.
Please, come in with me.	Kérem, jöjjön be velem.
	Kovács
I'm very sorry.	Nagyon sajnálom.
for me to be	lennem
I have to be in the bank at quarter past ten.	Negyed tizenegyre a bankban kell lennem.
Good-bye.	Viszontlátásra.
Have a good time in town.	Jó mulatást a városban.

	Sándor
Thank you. (To the young lady in the store:) I'd like to buy a present for a little boy.	Köszönöm. (A kisasszonyhoz az üzletben:) Szeretnék egy ajándékot venni egy kis fiunak.
	Kisasszony
How old is the little boy?	Hány éves a kis fiu?
	Sándor
Seven years old.	Hét éves.
	Kisasszony
Perhaps a pair of shoes?	Talán egy pár cipőt?
	Sándor
No, he has enough shoes. He also has clothes.	Nem, van elég cipője. Ruhái is vannak.
	Kisasszony
sugar candy chocolates	cukor cukorka csokoládé
Does he like candy or chocolates?	Szeret cukorkát vagy csokoládét?
	Sándor
He likes them very much.	Nagyon szereti.

box	doboz
Give me a box of them.	Kérek egy dobozzal.
	Kisasszony
Do you want anything else?	És még mit parancsol?
	Sándor
Can I get tobacco here?	Lehet itt dohányt kapni?
	Kisasszony
Surely.	Persze.
On the third floor.	A harmadik emeleten.
	Sándor
pipe	pipa
Please give me [some] pipe-tobacco.	Kérek pipadohányt.
	Második Kisasszony
quality	minőség
What kind?	Milyen minőségüt?
	Sándor
Only Hungarian tobacco.	Csak magyar dohányt.
And a box of matches, too.	És egy doboz gyufát is.
all	összes
altogether	összesen
How much is that altogether?	Mennyi az összesen?

	Második Kisasszony
The price of the candy is four sixty-four.	A cukorka ára négy hatvannégy.
The tobacco costs a pengő eighty.	A dohány egy pengő nyolcvanba kerül.
The matches twenty fillér.	A gyufa husz fillérbe.
That's six sixty-four altogether.	Az összesen hat hatvannégy.
	Sándor
Where do I have to pay?	Hol kell fizetnem?
	Második Kisasszony
At the exit.	A kijáratnál.
	Sándor
pharmacy	gyógyszertár
Which way is a pharmacy* please?	Merre van egy gyógyszertár, kérem?

Record Side 22B, beginning.

Doorman:	*Portás:*
In the second street to the left.	A második utcában balra.
I think it's the fifth house, opposite the bank.	Azt hiszem, hogy az ötödik ház, a bankkal szemben.
	Sándor
Thank you, my friend.	Köszönöm, barátom.
Here's a little tip.	Tessék egy kis borravaló.
(At the pharmacist's.)	(A gyógyszerésznél.)
Good day.	Jó napot.

---

*In Hungary, drugs are normally sold at a pharmacy.

accept	elfogad
foreign	külföldi
Do you accept foreign money?	Elfogad maga külföldi pénzt?
	Gyógyszerész
I'm very sorry.	Nagyon sajnálom.
It's quite impossible.	Egész lehetetlen.
But there's a bank right across the street (lit. just opposite).	De épen szemben van egy bank.
	Sándor
medicine	orvosság
head	fej
headache	fejfájás
against	ellen
I'd like to buy medicine for a headache.	Szeretnék egy orvosságot venni fejfájás ellen.
How much does that cost?	Az mibe kerül?
	Gyógyszerész
A couple of pengő.	Egy pár pengőbe.
	Sándor
That's very expensive.	Az nagyon drága.
Isn't there [some thing] cheaper?	Nincs olcsóbb?
	Gyógyszerész
There is, but not as good.	Van, de nem olyan jó.
It's a German medicine.	Német orvosság.
The Hungarian is much better.	A magyar sokkal jobb.

Sándor

Really?	Igazán?
Then I'll be right back.	Akkor mindjárt visszaleszek.
I'll go across to the bank.	Átmegyek a bankba.

2. Names of the Months

Go through these just as you do the *Basic Sentences*, repeating twice after your Guide (or the records).

Record Side 23A, beginning.

January	Január	July	Julius
February	Február	August	Augusztus
March	Március	September	Szeptember
April	Április	October	Október
May	Május	November	November
June	Junius	December	December

3. Days of the Week

Monday	Hétfő	Friday	Péntek
Tuesday	Kedd	Saturday	Szombat
Wednesday	Szerda	Sunday	Vasárnap
Thursday	Csütörtök		

On the 3rd of November, 1921.	Ezerkilencszázhuszonegy, november nyolcadikán.
On Monday at a quarter past six.	Hétfőn negyed hétkor.
On Sunday at half past one.	Vasárnap fél kettőkor.

Every Saturday evening.	Minden szombat este.
March 15th.	Március tizenötödike.
On July the fourth.	Julius negyedikén.
At 3:20.	Fél négy előtt tiz perccel.
At 3:40	Fél négy után tiz perccel.
At 5:45	Háromnegyed hatkor.
On Thursday at 1:45 p.m.	Csütörtökön d.u. háromnegyed kettőkor.
Monday morning at nine-fifteen.	Hétfő reggel negyed tizkor.
Every day at half past eleven.	Minden nap fél tizenkettőkor.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. THE VERB: INFINITIVES

enni	to eat	kimondani	to pronounce
venni	to buy	bemutatni	to introduce
eljönni	to come away	menni	to go
inni	to drink	megmutatni	to show
borotválni	to shave	nézni	to look

All these words are *verbs*. In Hungarian the suffix *-ni* (with or without the auxiliary vowels *-e-* or *-a-*, depending on all the rules you already know) indicates a verbal form which we translate into English as 'to (do, etc.)'. Thus, *tanulni* 'to study', *lakni* 'to dwell', *hozni* 'to bring', *kapni* 'to get', *csalódni* 'to be mistaken', *akarni* 'to want'. This form is used much as its equivalent is in English. Thus, as an object: *szeretek inni* 'I like to drink', *vásárolni akarok* 'I want to buy'; or, it may be used in the polite expression *mit tetszik csinálni?* 'what do you do (*literally*, what does it please you to do)?' *hol tetszik ebédelni?* 'where do you eat lunch (where does it please you to eat lunch)?'; or in an expression where the Hungarian noun has the *-t* of the object, *látom az apámat jönni* 'I see my father coming (to come)', *szeretném a fiamat látni* 'I should like to see my son'; also in expressions like *enni jött* 'he came to eat'.

mennem	for me to go
vennem	for me to buy
lennem	for me to be

ebédelnem	for me to lunch
vásárolnom	for me to buy
fizetnem	for me to pay

To say 'for me to (do something)' you employ the suffix *-nem/-nöm/-nom*, in accordance with the rule of vowel harmony. This form usually follows verbs like *kell* 'it is necessary'; *látnom kell* 'it is necessary for me to see' (my seeing is necessary); *feküdnöm kell* 'it is necessary for me to lie' (my lying is necessary); *innom kell* 'it is necessary for me to drink' (my drinking is necessary). Also: *jó itt lennem* 'it is good for me to be here' (my being here is good). This *-m* is the same suffix as in *barátom* 'my friend'.

To say 'for you (*literally*, thee, thou) to (do something)' you employ the same suffix, except that for the sign of the first person *-m*, you use the sign of the second person *-d* (as in *barátod* 'thy friend'!). Thus: *adnod kell* 'it is necessary for you (thee) to give' (your giving is necessary); *csókolnod kell* 'it is necessary for you (thee) to kiss' (your kissing is necessary).

hánykor kell mennie? at what time is it necessary for you to go?

To say 'for him (or, the polite you) (to do something)', the suffix *-nia/-nie* is used, in accordance with the rule of vowel harmony. Thus: *megmutatnia* 'for him to show', *mondania* 'for him to tell', *hoznia* 'for him to bring', *innia* 'for him to drink', *ennie* 'for him to eat'. (One may also translate: 'his showing', 'his telling', 'his bringing', and the rest.)

indulnunk kell	it is necessary for us to get started
mennünk kell	it is necessary for us to go

To say 'for us to (do something)', you use the suffix *-nunk/-nünk*, following the rule of vowel harmony. Thus, *keresnünk kell* 'it is necessary for us to seek', *adnunk kell* 'it is necessary for us to give', *örülnünk kell* 'we must rejoice', *érkeznünk kell* 'we should arrive'. (Do you note that the suffix of the first person plural 'we', which you found in *anyánk* 'our mother' is present in this suffix also? It marks, of course, again the first person plural '*we*', 'our seeking', 'our giving', 'our rejoicing', and the like.)

The suffix to say 'for you to (do something)' is *-netek/-notok*, as in *itt kell lennetek* 'it is necessary for you to be here', *hinnetek kell* 'you must believe', *ott kell laknotok* 'you must dwell there'.

The suffix to say 'for them to (do something)' is *-niok/-niök*, as in *tetszeniök kell* 'it is necessary for them to please', *csókolniok kell* 'it is necessary that they kiss'.

Here is a summary of two common verbs, showing you all the forms and the vowel harmony:

inni	*'to drink'*
innom	for me to drink my drinking
innod	for you (thee) to drink your (thy) drinking
innia	for him to drink his drinking
innunk	for us to drink our drinking
innotok	for you to drink your drinking
inniok	for them to drink their drinking

enni	*'to eat'*
ennem	for me to eat my eating
enned	for you (thee) to eat your (thy) eating
ennie	for him to eat his eating
ennünk	for us to eat our eating
ennetek	for you to eat your eating
enniök	for them to eat their eating

B. HOW TO GIVE THE TIME

negyed egykor	at a quarter past twelve
fél tizkor	at nine-thirty
háromnegyed tiz	quarter of ten

In English you refer to the first fifteen minutes after the hour as a quarter past the hour (for example, 'fifteen minutes past one' or 'a quarter past one'). But in Hungarian you speak of a quarter of the next completed hour in such a case: *negyed kilenc* 'quarter past eight (*literally*, one quarter on the way to nine)', *negyed tizenkettő* 'quarter past eleven', *negyed hét* 'quarter past six', *épen negyed négyre* 'just by a quarter past three', *negyed kettőkor* 'at a quarter past one'.

In English you refer to the half hour as a 'half past' the hour. But in Hungarian you speak of the half before the next completed hour: *fél három* 'half past two (*literally*, half [before] three), *fél tizenegykor* 'at half past ten', *fél ötre ki kell mennem* 'it is necessary that I go out by half past four'.

In English you refer to the forty-five minutes past the hour as a quarter of (or to) the next completed hour. But in Hungarian you speak of three-quarters on the way to the next completed hour: *háromnegyed kilenc* 'quarter of nine (*literally*, three-quarters [on the way to] nine)', *háromnegyed kettőre* 'by a quarter of two', *háromnegyed egykor indul a vonat* 'the train starts at a quarter of one'.

fél négy előtt tiz perccel	at 3:20
fél négy után tiz perccel	at 3:40

In Hungarian you get your bearings between the four quarters of each hour by use of the words *előtt* and *után*, 'before' and 'after'. Thus, in the above examples, you can say for '3:20' *fél négy előtt tiz perccel*, but you could just as well say, *negyed négy után öt perccel;* similarly, for '3:40' you can say either *fél négy után tiz perccel*, or *háromnegyed négy előtt öt perccel*. Other examples: *tizenkét perccel fél hét előtt* or *három perccel negyed hét után* 'at eighteen minutes past six'; *öt perccel hat előtt* or *háromnegyed öt után tiz perccel* 'five of six'.

C. DATES

Ezerkilencszázhuszonegy, November nyolcadikán
On the 3rd of November, 1921

This sentence is a pattern for giving dates. When you wish to speak of the year alone, the suffix is *-ban/-ben* 'in', which you already know well: *ezerhatvanhatban* 'in 1066', *hetvenkilencben* 'in '79', and so forth. When you give the year and the month, you use the same suffix: *ezerkilencszáztizennégy márciusában* 'in the March of 1914'. But when you give a complete date, you use the suffix *-dik*, plus the lengthened vowel (*a* becoming *á, e* becoming *é*), and the suffix *-n*, all of which you have learned already. Thus, *február huszonnyolcadikán* 'on the 28th of February', *április elsején* 'on the 1st of April', *december másodikán* 'on the 2nd of December'.

D. SUFFIXED SUFFIXES

nekem	to me	velem	with me

You will recognize by glancing at these words that they are composed each of two elements. First, there is the suffix *-nek* and *-vel*, and each is followed by the suffix of 'my' *-m* (with auxiliary vowel *-e-*) as in the noun *Istenem* 'my God'. Now, you will find that most of the suffixes which you have learned can thus be suffixed, in all persons (first, second, third, singular and plural), and the resulting forms are various forms of the personal pronoun *én* 'I', *te* 'you (thou)', *ő* 'he (she, it)', *mi* 'we', *ti* 'you', *ők* 'they'. Here are some additional forms:

Forms corresponding to *én*

bennem	in me	belőlem	from inside me
belém	into me	rólam	from me (surface)
rám	upon me	nálam	by me
tőlem	from me	hozzám	to me

The object: engemet or engem "me"

Forms corresponding to *te*

benned	in thee	belőled	from inside thee
beléd	into thee	róled	from thee (surface)
rád	upon thee	nálad	by thee
tőled	from thee	hozzád	to thee
neked	to thee	veled	with thee

The object: tégedet or téged "thee"

Forms corresponding to *ő*

benne	in him	belőle	from inside him
belé	into him	róla	from him (surface)
rá (rája)	upon him	nála	by him
tőle	from him	hozzá	to him
neki	to him	vele	with him

The object: őt "him"

Forms corresponding to *mi* 'we'

bennünk	in us	belőlünk	from inside us
belénk	into us	rólunk	from us (surface)
ránk	upon us	nálunk	by us
tőlünk	from us	hozzánk	to us
nekünk	to us	velünk	with us

The object: minket or bennünket "us"

Forms corresponding to *ti*

bennetek	in you	belőletek	from inside you
belétek	into you	rólatok	from you (surface)
rátok	upon you	nálatok	by you
tőletek	from you	hozzátok	to you
nektek	to you	veletek	with you

The object: titeket or benneteket "you"

Forms corresponding to *ők*

bennük	in them	belőlük	from inside them
beléjük	into them	róluk	from them (surface)
rájuk	upon them	náluk	by them
tőlük	from them	hozzájuk	to them
nekik	to them	velük	with them

The object: őket "them"

Read this list carefully and you will note that there is but little there that you do not already know; the elements are familiar, you must learn to recognize the combinations.

előtt	before
után	after
ellen	against

These words can also receive the suffixes for 'my, your, his, our, their': ***előttem megy*** 'he goes before me', ***ellenem van*** 'he is against me', ***utánunk jön*** 'he comes after us', ***ellenük dolgozik*** 'he works against them', ***utána nézni*** 'to look after', ***ön előtt kell, hogy borotváljam*** 'it is necessary that I shave him before you'.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

I

How would you say in Hungarian:

1. July 7th, 1926.
2. Monday morning at eight.
3. Two and seven are nine.
4. Thursday afternoon at half past five.
5. Five times four is twenty.
6. Sunday night at a quarter of twelve.
7. The third day is a great holiday.
8. Tomorrow, at a quarter past eight.
9. Her address is 69 Heart Street, fourth floor, first door.
10. Every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday at a quarter of one.

II

Pick out the right answer or question:

1. *You ask her to come with you to the movie.*

a) Kérem, jöjjön velem a moziba.
b) Kérem, jöjjön velünk a moziba.
c) Kérem, jöjjön hozzánk a kocsival.

2. *You ask someone to please show it to him.*

a) Tessék neki megmutatni.
b) Tessék őket megszólitani.
c) Azt a szót nem tudom kimondani.

3. *You say that it is necessary that he study.*

a) Neked tanulnod kell.
b) Nektek tanulnotok kell.
c) Neki tanulnia kell.

4. *You say that you did not get a letter from her.*

a) Nem kaptam tőlük levelet.
b) A feleségemtől kaptam tegnap egy levelet.
c) Nem kaptam tőle levelet.

5. *You say you always have to clean up after it.*
- a) Utána mindig ki kell tisztitanom.
- b) Vacsora előtt ki kell a nadrágomat vasalnia.
- c) Az egész családja ellene van.

6. *You ask if it is usually hot in the United States in the fall.*
- a) Meleg szokott lenni tavasszal az Egyesült Államokban?
- b) Hideg szokott lenni télen az Egyesült Államokban?
- c) Hüvös szokott lenni nyáron az Egyesült Államokban?
- d) Meleg szokott lenni ősszel az Egyesült Államokban?

7. *You ask someone if his landlady lives with them.*
- a) A háziasszonyotok nálatok lakik?
- b) Hol lakik most a kisasszony?
- c) A nagyságos asszony vidéken lakik?

8. *You say you want to buy six handkerchiefs.*
- a) Hol lehet zsebkendőket kapni?
- b) Lehet itt zsebkendőket vásárolni?
- c) Szeretnék hat zsebkendőt venni.

9. *You say you have business in the factory.*
- a) Jó mulatást a moziban.
- b) Minden rendben van a gyárban.
- c) Dolgom van a gyárban.

10. *You offer someone candy.*
- a) Parancsoljon egy kis pipadohányt.
- b) Tessék egy doboz cigaretta.
- c) Parancsoljon egy kis cukorkát.

11. *You say that the doctor and the pharmacist are friends.*
- a) A szobalány férjhez ment a pincérhez.
- b) Az orvos és a gyógyszerész barátok.
- c) Az orvos egy ajándekot keres a gyógyszerésznek.

12. *You ask how old the little girl will be tomorrow.*
- a) Hány éves lesz holnap a kis lány?
- b) Hány éves volt tegnap a huga?
- c) Hány éves lesz holnap az öccse?

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *John and Paul plan to go to town.*

Record Side 23B, beginning.

Pál: Nekem be kell ma mennem a városba.
A hivatalban kell lennem tizenkettőre.

János: Akkor én is bemegyek, mert vásárolnom kell.
Menjünk be együtt a kocsival.

Pál: Rendben van.
Itt lesz a kocsim háromnegyed kilencre.
Most hány óra van?

János: Most negyed kilenc van csak.
Még van egy fél óránk.
Menjünk egy vendéglőbe reggelizni.

Pál: Hol egy jó vendéglő ezen a vidéken?

János: Épen a szállodával szemben van egy nagyon jó vendéglő, ha drága is.

2. *In the restaurant* (a vendéglőben).

János: Pincér, kérek egy étlapot.

Pincér: Jó reggelt, nagyságos uraim.
Tessék parancsolni.

Pál: Én először is kérek egy pohár hideg vizet.

János: Én kérek reggelire egy friss almát,
meleg teát, és kenyeret meg vajat.

Pál: Én elég éhes vagyok.
Hozzon sonkát meg tojást, és zsemlét meg vajat.

Pincér: Kávét, tejet, vagy teát tetszik parancsolni?

Pál: Kérek egy csésze feketét.

3. *After breakfast* (reggeli után).

Pincér: Tessék a számla.
Mindjárt itt lesz a főpincér.
Épen itt jön.

Főur: Melyik ur fizet?

Pál: Én. Mennyi az?

Főur: Két reggeli volt?
Az egyik uré nyolcvanöt fillér
és a másiké egy pengő harminc.
Köszönöm, uraim.

János: Tessék borravalóra.
Ott fekszik az asztalon.

4. *John in the shop* (János az üzletben).

János: Jó reggelt.
Szeretnék egy pár cipőt vásárolni,
és utána egy kabátot meg egy ruhát is talán.

Kisasszony: Cipők a harmadik emeleten vannak.
Kabátok és ruhák a negyediken.

János: Mi van itt az elsőn?

Kisasszony: Az elsőn csak cigarettát, gyufát, dohányt, és gyógyszert kapni.

János: Ez egy olyan nagy áruház, hogy itt mindent lehet venni!

Kisasszony: Nem, nem mindent.
Például nem lehet repülőgépeket venni.

János: Igazán? Az nagyon érdekes.
Köszönöm.
Hol van a kijárat, kérem?

Kisasszony: Bocsánatot kérek, uram.
De nagyon rossz fejfájásom van ma.

János: Igen? Akkor mért nincs az ágyban?
Hol a kijárat?

Kisasszony: Egyenesen előre, a második ajtó.
Ezek a külföldiek! Mind lehetetlenek!

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

Suggested Conversation Topics

1. An American soldier inquires from a waiter and a barber where he can go shopping.

2. You discuss with a friend, a doctor, where to buy medicine for a headache.

3. You go into a store and buy tobacco, cigarettes, and matches, and a pipe as a gift.

4. You go into a department store and buy shoes, a coat, clothes, a couple of shirts, socks and handkerchiefs.

5. You go into a postoffice to buy stamps, ask for the price, and try to pay. However, you only have foreign exchange, and are told to go to the bank across the street.

6. You go around town with a girl on a holiday. You see the sights, and finally you go to a restaurant and you buy her a box of candy. You invite her to the movies. You take her home, and she introduces you to her family.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of Parts I and II if necessary.

FINDER LIST

The names of the days of the week and months are not listed here.

ajándék (II.A.2a)	gift, present
áruház (II.A.1a)	department store
cukor (II.C.2)	sugar
csokoládé (I.A.)	chocolate
doboz (II.A.2b)	box
dohány (II.A.2b)	tobacco
dolgom van	I am busy
együtt	together
elfogad	he accepts
ellen	against
először is	first of all
fej (II.A.1a)	head
fejfájás (II.A.2b)	headache
gyógyszer (II.A.1b)	medicine
gyógyszerész (II.A.1b)	pharmacist
gyógyszertár (II.A.1b)	pharmacy

hány éves?	how old?
háromnegyed	three quarters
kijárat (II.A.2a)	exit
kis	small, little, some
külföldi (I.A.)	foreign(er)
lehetetlen	impossible
minőség (II.A.1a)	quality
negyed	quarter

olyan	that sort
orvosság (II.A.2a)	medicine
összes	all, total
összesen	altogether
pipa (I.B.1)	pipe
üzlet (II.A.1a)	shop, store
vásárolni	to buy things

UNIT 12

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN HUNGARIAN?

This section is a true-false quiz exactly like the one in *Learning Unit* 6, except that the first item is not a practice item. Prepare paper with numbers from 1 to 80 and mark the statements that you will hear from your Guide or the phonograph record (Records 24 and 25) either *T* or *F*. After you finish the quiz, the Leader will read out the correct answers for each statement. Check your paper and give your score to your Leader. He will figure out the average for your group. If your score is less than the average number of correct answers or less than 80% correct, you need more review of the previous units.

Spend the rest of the time going over the items on which you had difficulty.

SECTION B—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Hungarian for each of the following sentences.

Do not write anything down.

I

1. Do you live in town or in the country?
2. My apartment is quite near, in a big house.
3. His apartment consists of four rooms: a dining room, a bedroom, a kitchen, and a bathroom.
4. Please take a seat: here is a chair.
5. Wine is very good after lunch.
6. Our table stands in the middle of the room.
7. My husband lies in bed: he has a headache.
8. December 25th is a holiday.

II

1. Your warm bath is ready, sir.
2. My shirts are in the laundry.
3. These trousers are too short.
4. Where is my handkerchief?
5. It is necessary that you clean and press this coat.
6. Have you repaired my white pair of shoes?
7. Please cut my hair, especially in the back.
8. Her address is, 7 Texas Street, second floor, to the left.

III

1. Tomorrow breakfast will be around nine o'clock.
2. Yesterday dinner was at a quarter past seven.
3. Hungarian students eat a morning snack every day.
4. Is this egg fresh?
5. The butter is not cold enough.
6. Bring me ham after the broth.
7. Fifty-two chicken and thirty-five chicken are eighty-seven chicken.
8. Please bring me all the morning papers.

IV

1. I always heard that Budapest lies on two sides of the Danube.
2. It is possible to see the bridges from the mountains.
3. The cathedral is not far from the houses of parliament.
4. His pocket is full of money.
5. Opposite the church stands the Economic Museum.
6. Bring me a glass of beer.
7. Bring us two cups of black coffee.
8. The streetcar is much cheaper than the car.

V

1. Two times seven is fourteen.
2. In 1779, on the Fourth of July.
3. Every week, Tuesday, Thursday, and Saturday.
4. My son is eighteen years old.
5. The doctor is the friend of the pharmacist.
6. I have a heart-ache.
7. In February there are only twenty-eight days.
8. In Budapest there are many foreigners.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

This section is a drill on the work you did in Section B. Keep your book closed. The Leader will ask you to take turns speaking the sentences by saying: *Hogy mondják magyarul . . .?* If you have a Guide, he will check on your pronunciation and the correctness of your Hungarian.

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Hungarian for each of the following sentences.

Do not write anything down.

I

1. His whole family is against his wife.
2. In one hour there are sixty minutes.
3. Please come up with me in my airplane.
4. I should like to show you the armament factory.
5. There are double windows in every house.
6. Margaret is a simple but pretty girl.
7. My younger brother goes back immediately this evening.

II

1. My hands are full of cups.
2. I am ready: let's go.
3. It is impossible to look through from one side to the other.
4. In the shop it is possible to buy stockings.
5. Your suit will be ready tomorrow at half past four.
6. The haircut here is cheaper: it costs only ninety fillér.
7. I should like to buy a pair of black shoes.
8. The post office is in the other street.

III

1. Sometimes after dinner they drink white wine.
2. What do they customarily do during winter?
3. He goes to the movie once every week.
4. Ham with paprika is bad.
5. This coffee ice cream is very good.
6. I am sorry, but we have no apples.
7. Is this dessert fresh?
8. It is not necessary to eat pie every day.

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section D. Keep your book closed. The Leader will ask you to take turns in speaking sentences by saying: "Hogy mondják magyarul . . .?" If you have a Guide, he will check on your pronunciation and the correctness of your Hungarian.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

Hold a series of conversations, from one to two minutes, on as many of the topics which have been developed in Units 1–12 as you can, combining and varying them as you wish. All members of the group should take part.

1. *Husband and wife look for an apartment.*

(Include: questions about price, how many rooms there are, on which floor, inspection of rooms, are they clean, what's the landlady like, has the bathroom warm water, how is it located with regard to street car.)

2. *A soldier in a hotel.*

(Include: ordering breakfast in his room, discussion with waiter about weather, asking for his letters, wanting a hot bath, shoes cleaned, trousers pressed.)

3. *Two soldiers want to find a tailor and a barber.*

(Include: asking for full directions, going to the tailor by street car or by car—depending on the distance and time available—, ordering a coat, and asking if their suits were ready; going to the barber, having a haircut; they talk to the barber about his relatives in the United States.)

4. *A soldier and his girl go out for dinner.*

(Include: the soldier calling for the girl at her home, being introduced to members of the family; they talk about the weather; when she is ready, they go to a restaurant, order a dinner with drinks; afterwards he goes to the movie with her, then takes her to Buda to look across the Danube, as it is a beautiful spring evening.)

5. *An American doctor in Budapest goes to look at the sights.*

(Include: he calls on his friend, the pharmacist, who says he will take him around in his car; they visit Margaret's Island, and converse about the many baths of the town; they stop off in a café for something to eat; they pass by the houses of parliament, the cathedral, and many churches; their destination is a museum, which they reach.)

6. *A man goes shopping with his girl.*

(Include: argument about time to get started; she wants to buy gifts for her brother, who is a soldier; he gets a headache and they go to a pharmacy; they find that foreign currency is not accepted in the stores and go to a bank; finally, they buy stamps at the post office, and send off the presents by airplane.)

7 *A man, his landlady, and the laundress.*

(Include: discussion about the laundry not being ready on time; man must leave by the evening train for the country; he goes through the laundry in detail; he asks his landlady to be good enough to repair one of his shirts; he also asks her to take him to the station by her car.)

8. *An American and a Hungarian converse about trades.*

(Include: questions about the type of work done in the two countries, the work of various members of family of each man, where they work, and the pay they get.)

9. *Meeting a stranger.*

(Include: an American lady meets a Hungarian; they discover mutual acquaintances; they talk about each of them, and their relatives, what they do, where they are; he invites her for the summer to his country house.)

APPENDIX I

COMPARISON OF CONVENTIONAL SPELLING AND AIDS TO LISTENING

For the most part the letters are the same, with the following exceptions:

Aids to Listening	*Conventional Spelling*
dy	gy
s	sz
š	s
ts	c
č	cs
ž	zs
dž	dzs
y	j, ly

For changes in pronunciation, see Unit 5, pp. 92–93.

APPENDIX II

CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS

The nouns are classified in two large groups, those ending in a vowel are the vowel stems, and those ending in a consonant are consonant stems. In the *Finder List* at the end of the whole course all nouns that have appeared anywhere in this book are followed by numbers and letters referring to the proper group and sub-group according to the following scheme:

I. VOWEL STEMS
- A. Most Vowels
- B. a and e
  - 1. Final a becomes á
  - 2. Final e becomes é
  - 3. Final letter dropped before 3rd sing. poss. suffix.

II. CONSONANT STEMS
- A. No Stem Change
  - 1. With auxiliary vowel -a-, -ö-, -e-.
    - a. Auxiliary vowel appearing before all endings requiring it.
    - b. Auxiliary vowel dropped before the *-t* of the object suffix.
  - 2. With auxiliary vowel -o-
    - a. Auxiliary vowel appearing before all endings requiring it.
    - b. Auxiliary vowel dropped before the *-t* of the object suffix.
- B. Stem Change
  - 1. á becomes a
  - 2. é becomes e
- C. Two syllable stems with omission of last stem vowel.
  - a. Auxiliary vowel -a-, -ö-, -e-
  - b. Auxilary vowel -o-

SINGULAR NOUN PLUS ENDINGS

STEM final a becomes á — auxiliary vowel: none

óra, 'time, watch'	**-m, 'my'**	**-d, 'thy'**	**-ja, 'his'**	**-nk, 'our'**	**-tok, 'your'**	**-juk, 'their'**
subject	**óram**	**órád**	**órája**	**óránk**	**órátok**	**órájuk**
-t, object	**órámat**	**órádat**	**óráját**	**óránkat**	**órátokat**	**órájukat**
-ban, 'inside'	**órában**	**órádban**	**órájában**	**óránkban**	**órátokban**	**órájukban**
-ból, 'from inside'	**órámból**	**órádból**	**órájából**	**óránkból**	**órátokból**	**órájukból**
-ről, 'from surface'	**órámról**	**órádról**	**órájáról**	**óránkról**	**órátokról**	**órájukról**
-ra, 'upon'	**órámra**	**órádra**	**órájára**	**óránkra**	**órátokra**	**órájukra**
-nál, 'at'	**órámnál**	**órádnál**	**órájánál**	**óránknál**	**órátoknál**	**órájuknál**
-tól, 'from'	**órámtól**	**órádtól**	**órájától**	**óránktól**	**órátoktól**	**órájuktól**
-hoz, 'toward'	**órámhoz**	**órádhoz**	**órájához**	**óránkhoz**	**órátokhoz**	**órájukhoz**
-ig, 'until'	**órámig**	**órádig**	**órájáig**	**óránkig**	**órátokig**	**órájukig**
-(v)al, 'with'	**órámmal**	**óráddal**	**órájával**	**óránkkal**	**órátokkal**	**órájukkal**
-ul, 'as'	....	....	....	....	....	....
-kor, 'at time'	....	....	....	....	....	....
órakor, ('at . . . o'clock')						

PLURAL NOUN PLUS ENDINGS

STEM final a becomes á — auxiliary vowel: none

óra, ‘time, watch’	-im, ‘my’	-id, ‘thy’	-i, ‘his’	-ink, ‘our’	-itok, ‘your’	-ik, ‘their’
subject	**óráim**	**óráid**	**órái**	**óráink**	**óráitok**	**óráik**
-t, object	**óráimat**	**óráidat**	**óráit**	**óráinkat**	**óráitokat**	**óráikat**
-ban, ‘inside’	**óráimban**	**óráidban**	**óráiban**	**óráinkban**	**óráitokban**	**óráikban**
-ból, ‘from inside’	**óráimból**	**óráidból**	**óráiból**	**óráinkból**	**óráitokból**	**óráikból**
-ról, ‘from surface’	**óráimról**	**óráidról**	**óráiról**	**óráinkról**	**óráitokról**	**óráikról**
-ra, ‘upon’	**óráimra**	**óráidra**	**óráira**	**óráinkra**	**óráitokra**	**óráikra**
-nál, ‘at’	**óráimnál**	**óráidnál**	**óráinál**	**óráinknál**	**óráitoknál**	**óráiknál**
-tól, ‘from’	**óráimtól**	**óráidtól**	**óráitól**	**óráinktól**	**óráitoktól**	**óráiktól**
-hoz, ‘toward’	**óráimhoz**	**óráidhoz**	**óráihoz**	**óráinkhoz**	**óráitokhoz**	**óráikhoz**
-ig, ‘until’	**óráimig**	**óráidig**	**óráiig**	**óráinkig**	**óráitokig**	**óráikig**
-(v)al, ‘with’	**óráimmal**	**óráiddal**	**óráival**	**óráinkkal**	**óráitokkal**	**óráikkal**
-ul, ‘as’	....	....	....	....	....	....
-kor, ‘at time’	....	....	....	....	....	....

SINGULAR NOUN PLUS ENDINGS

STEM: é becomes e — auxiliary vowel: e

kéz, 'hand'	-m, 'my'	-d, 'thy'	-e, 'his'	-ü-nk, 'our'	-e-tek, 'your'	-ü-k, 'their'
Subject	kezem	kezed	keze	kezünk	kezetek	kezük
-t, object	kezemet	kezedet	kezét	kezünket	kezeteket	kezüket
-ven, 'inside'	kezemben	kezedben	kezében	kezünkben	kezetekben	kezükben
-ből, 'from inside'	kezemből	kezedből	kezéből	kezünkből	kezetekből	kezükből
-ről, 'from surface'	kezemről	kezedről	kezéről	kezünkről	kezetekről	kezükről
-re, 'upon'	kezemre	kezedre	kezére	kezünkre	kezetekre	kezükre
-nél, 'at'	kezemnél	kezednél	kezénél	kezünknél	kezeteknél	kezüknél
-től, 'from'	kezemtől	kezedtől	kezétől	kezünktől	kezetektől	kezüktől
-h(e)z, 'toward'	kezemhez	kezedhez	kezéhez	kezünkhöz	kezetekhez	kezükhöz
-ig, 'until'	kezemig	kezedig	kezéig	kezünkig	kezetekig	kezükig
-(v)el, 'with'	kezemmel	kezeddel	kezével	kezünkkel	kezetekkel	kezükkel
-ul, 'as' -kor, 'at time'	....	....	....	....	....	....
simple forms	'hands,' kezek	object kezet	'inside,' kézben	'from inside,' kézbol	'from surface,' kézről	'upon,' kézre

PLURAL NOUN PLUS ENDINGS

STEM: é becomes e — auxiliary vowel: e

kéz, 'hand'	-e-im, 'my'	-e-id, 'thy'	-e-i, 'his'	-e-ink, 'our'	-e-itek, 'your'	-e-ik, 'their'
subject	kezeim	kezeid	kezei	kezeink	kezeitek	kezeik
-t, object	kezeimet	kezeidet	kezeit	kezeinket	kezeiteket	kezeiket
-ben, 'inside'	kezeimben	kezeidben	kezeiben	kezeinkben	kezeitekben	kezeikben
-ből, 'from inside'	kezeimből	kezeidből]	kezeiből	kezeinkből	kezeitekből	kezeikből
-ről, 'from surface'	kezeimről	kezeidről	kezeiről	kezeinkről	kezeitekről	kezeikről
-re, 'upon'	kezeimre	kezeidre	kezéire	kezeinkre	kezeitekre	kezeikre
-nél, 'at'	kezeimnél	kezeidnél	kezeinél	kezeinknél	kezeiteknél	kezeiknél
-től, 'from'	kezeimtől	kezeidtől	kezeitől	kezeinktől	kezeitektől	kezeiktől
-h(e)z, 'toward'	kezeimhez	kezeidhez	kezeihez	kezeinkhez	kezeitekhez	kezeikhez
-ig, 'until'	kezeimig	kezeidig	kezeiig	kezeinkig	kezeitekig	kezeikig
-(v)el, 'with'	kezeimmel	kezeiddel	kezeivel	kezeinkkel	kezeitekkel	kezeikkel
-ul, 'as' -kor, 'at time'	....	....	....	....	....	....
Simple forms	'at,' kéznél	'from,' kéztől	'toward,' kézhez	'until,' kézig	'with,' kézzel	

SINGULAR NOUN PLUS ENDINGS

STEM: no change — auxiliary vowel -o-

nap, 'day, sun'	simple form	-m, 'my'	-d, 'thy'	-ja, 'his'	(u)nk, 'our'	tok, 'your'	(ju)k, 'their'
subject	nap	napom	napod	napja	napunk	napotok	napjuk
-t, object	napot	napomat	napodat	napját	napunkat	napotokat	napjukat
-ban, inside	napban	napomban	napodban	napjában	napunkban	napotokban	napjukban
-ból, from inside	napból	napomból	napodból	napjából	napunkból	napotokból	napjukból
-ról, from surface	napról	napomról	napodról	napjáról	napunkról	napotokról	napjukról
-ra, upon	napra	napomra	napodra	napjára	napunkra	napotokra	napjukra
-nál, at	napnál	napomnál	napodnál	napjánál	napunknál	napotoknál	napjuknál
-tól, from	naptól	napomtól	napodtól	napjától	napunktól	napotoktól	napjuktól
-hoz, toward	naphoz	napomhoz	napodhoz	napjához	napunkhoz	napotokhoz	napjukhoz
-ig, until	napig	napomig	napodig	napjáig	napunkig	napotokig	napjukig
-(v)al, with	nappal	napommal	napoddal	napjával	napunkkal	napotokkal	napjukkal
-nak, to	napnak	napomnak	napodnak	napjának	napunknak	napotoknak	napjuknak
-(o)n, upon surface	napon	napomon	napodon	napján	napunkon	napotokon	napjukon

PLURAL NOUN PLUS ENDINGS

STEM: no change — auxiliary vowel -o-

nap, 'day'	simple form	-ja-im, 'my'	-ja-id, 'thy'	-ja-i, 'his'	-ja-ink, 'our'	-ja-itok, 'your'	-ja-ik, 'their'
subject	napok	napjaim	napjaid	napjai	napjaink	napjaitok	napjaik
-t, object	napokat	napjaimat	napjaidat	napjait	napjainkat	napjaitokat	napjaikat
-ban, inside	napokban	napjaimban	napjaidban	napjaiban	napjainkban	napjaitokban	napjaikban
-ból, from inside	napokból	napjaimból	napjaidból	napjaiból	napjainkból	napjaitokból	napjaikból
-ról, from surface	napokról	napjaimról	napjaidról	napjairól	napjainkról	napjaitokról	napjaikról
-ra, upon	napokra	napjaimra	napjaidra	napjaira	napjainkra	napjaitokra	napjaikra
-nál, at	napoknál	napjaimnál	napjaidnál	napjainál	napjainknál	napjaitoknál	napjaiknál
-tól, from	napoktól	napjaimtól	napjaidtól	napjaitól	napjainktól	napjaitoktól	napjaiktól
-hoz, toward	napokhoz	napjaimhoz	napjaidhoz	napjaihoz	napjainkhoz	napjaitokhoz	napjaikhoz
-ig, until	napokig	napjaimig	napjaidig	napjaiig	napjainkig	napjaitokig	napjaikig
-(v)al, with	napokkal	napjaimmal	napjaiddal	napjaival	napjainkkal	napjaitokkal	napjaikkal
-nak, to	napoknak	napjaimnak	napjaidnak	napjainak	napjainknak	napjaitoknak	napjaiknak
-(o)n	napokon	napjaimon	napjaidon	napjain	napjainkon	napjaitokon	napjaikon

SINGULAR NOUN PLUS ENDINGS

II. A. 1 a

STEM: no change — auxiliary vowel a

ur, 'gentleman'	simple form	-am, 'my'	-ad, 'thy'	-a, 'his'	-unk, 'our'	-atok, 'your'	-uk, 'their'
subject	ur	uram	urad	ura	urunk	uratok	uruk
-t, object	urat	uramat	uradat	urát	urunkat	uratokat	urukat
-ban, inside	urban	uramban	uradban	urában	urunkban	uratokban	urukban
-ból, from inside	urból	uramból	uradból	urából	urunkból	uratokból	urukból
-ról, from surface	urról	uramról	uradról	uráról	urunkról	uratokról	urukról
-ra, upon	urra	uramra	uradra	urára	urunkra	uratokra	urukra
-nál, at	urnál	uramnál	uradnál	uránál	urunknál	uratoknál	uruknál
-tól, from	urtól	uramtól	uradtól	urától	urunktól	uratoktól	uruktól
-hoz, toward	urhoz	uramhoz	uradhoz	urához	urunkhoz	uratokhoz	urukhoz
-ig, until	urig	uramig	uradig	uráig	urunkig	uratokig	urukig
-(v)al, with	urral	urammal	uraddal	urával	urunkkal	uratokkal	urukkal
-nak, to	urnak	uramnak	uradnak	urának	urunknak	uratoknak	uraknak
-(o)n, on surface	uron	uramon	uradon	urán	urunkon	uratokon	urukon
-ért, for	urért	uramért	uradért	uráért	urunkért	uratokért	urukért

PLURAL NOUN PLUS ENDINGS

STEM: no change — auxiliary vowel a

ur, 'gentleman'	simple form plural, -ak	-a-im, 'my'	-a-id, 'thy'	-a-i, 'his'	-a-ink, 'our'	-a-itok, 'your'	-a-ik, 'their'
subject	urak	uraim	uraid	urai	uraink	uraitok	uraik
-t, object	urakat	uraimat	uraidat	urait	urainkat	uraitokat	uraikat
-ban, inside	urakban	uraimban	uraidban	uraiban	urainkban	uraitokban	uraikban
-ból, from inside	urakból	uraimból	uraidból	uraiból	urainkból	uraitokból	uraikból
-ról, from surface	urakról	uraimról	uraidról	urairól	urainkról	uraitokról	uraikról
-ra, upon	urakra	uraimra	uraidra	uraira	urainkra	uraitokra	uraikra
-nál, at	uraknál	uraimnál	uraidnál	urainál	urainknál	uraitoknál	uraiknál
-tól, from	uraktól	uraimtól	uraidtól	uraitól	urainktól	uraitoktól	uraiktól
-hoz, toward	urakhoz	uraimhoz	uraidhoz	uraihoz	urainkhoz	uraitokhoz	uraikhoz
-ig, until	urakig	uraimig	uraidig	uraiig	urainkig	uraitokig	uraikig
-(v)al, with	urakkal	uraimmal	uraiddal	uraival	urainkkal	uraitokkal	urainkkal
-nak, to	uraknak	uraimnak	uraidnak	urainak	urainknak	uraitoknak	uraiknak
-(o)n, on surface	urakon	uraimon	uraidon	urain	urainkon	uraitokon	uraikon
-ért, for	urakért	uraimért	uraidért	uraiért	urainkért	uraitokért	uraikért

Book Two

PART THREE

UNIT Page

13. Travelling. 221

Word Study: verbs; **-l.** 227

14. Keeping Cool. 236

Word Study: past tense. 242

15. Paying a Visit. 250

Word Study: words telling where, when, how; preverbs. 256

UNIT Page

16. Sports, Games and Entertainment. 264

Word Study: comparison of adjectives; present conditional. 271

17. An Evening Out. 282

Word Study: imperative. 289

18. Review. 299

PART FOUR

19. The Mail. 306

Word Study: **-ért**; pronouns; simple verb forms. 313

20. At the Bank. 321

Word Study: 'can'; **-va/-ve.** Verb charts. 327

21. In an Office. 335

Word Study: judgment words; connective words; coordinate phrases; use of **is.** 341

22. At the Hospital. 349

Word Study: nouns changed to verbs; **-atlan/-etlen, -talan/-telen.** 356

23. Preparations for an Outing. 363

Word Study: asking questions. 368

24. Review. 375

PART FIVE

UNIT — Page

25. GOVERNMENT. 380
Word Study: **-é; -né; -ság/-ség; -t.** 387

26. THE MILITARY. 395
Word Study: word analysis. 400

27. INDUSTRY. 409
Word Study: **-(t)at/-(t)et; -ul/-ül, -it.** 415

UNIT — Page

28. AGRICULTURE. 421
Word Study: compounds. 427

29. CULTURE. 436
Word Study: kinship terms. 442

30. REVIEW. 452

PART THREE — UNIT 13

TRAVELLING

To the Group Leader and Members of the Group: If you have been working without a Guide and only with the phonograph records, from now on you will have to proceed by yourselves. When you go through the *Basic Sentences* of this and later units, you may read the English equivalents as you have done up to now and call on different members of the group to speak the Hungarian twice for each item in the *Basic Sentences*. Or, if you prefer, you can have one student read the English and another student say the Hungarian twice. Then have the student who has read the Hungarian, read the English for the following item, and another student say the Hungarian twice, and so on, chain fashion. Both you and the other members of the group should be on the watch to detect and correct faulty pronunciation.

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, and then go twice more through the *Basic Sentences* individually.

A gentleman goes on a trip.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
	Ur
pertaining to the road	uti
track	pálya
court	udvar
station	pályaudvar
Is this the railroad station?	Ez a vasuti pályaudvar?
	Idegen*
It is (literally, this [is]).	Ez.

**Idegen* 'stranger'.

where to	hova
to travel	utazni
Where do you want to go?	Hova akar utazni?
	Ur
To Budapest.	Budapestre.
which	melyik
for me to board	szállnom
Which train shall I take?	Melyik vonatra kell szállnom?
	Idegen
fast	gyors
he boards	száll
within *or* below	alatt
you arrive	megérkezik
If you go by the express (train), you'll arrive in two hours.	Ha a gyorsra száll, két óra alatt megérkezik.
person	személy
local train	személyvonat
The local won't be there till half past four.	A személyvonat csak fél ötkor lesz ott.
	Ur
why	mért
Why is that?	Mért?
	Idegen
it stops	megáll
Because it stops at every little station.	Mert minden kis állomáson megáll.
cashier's office	pénztár
But here we are at the ticket office.	Itt vagyunk a jegypénztárnál.

	Ur
Thank you very much, sir.	Nagyon köszönöm, uram.
	Idegen
You're welcome.	Nincs mit.
Good-bye.	Viszontlátásra.
lucky	szerencsés
Have a good trip!	Szerencsés utat!
	Ur
Please give me a ticket for Budapest.	Kérek egy jegyet Budapestre.
ticket agent	jegypénztáros
class	osztály
Which class?	Melyik osztályon?
	Ur
Are there classes on the railway in Hungary?	Magyarországon osztályok vannak a vasuton?
	Jegypénztáros
Sure!	Igen.
First, second, and third class.	Első, második, és harmadik osztály.
Which one do you want?	Melyiken akar utazni?
	Ur
Second; on the express.	A másodikon; gyorsvonaton.

	Jegypénztáros
Here you are.	Tessék.
Thirteen pengő, sixty-four.	Tizenhárom pengő hatvannégy.
	Ur
Porter!	Hordár!
	Hordár
baggage	poggyász
Have you much baggage, sir?	Sok poggyásza van, nagyságos uram?
	Ur
There isn't too much, but quite enough.	Nem tul sok, de épen elég.
	Hordár
I put it	teszem
I'll put it (up) on the train.	Felteszem a vonatra.
smoker	dohányzó
Do you want a smoker or a nonsmoker?	Dohányzó vagy nemdohányzó tetszik?
	Ur
Smoker.	Dohányzó.
to sit	ülni
If possible, I'd like to sit by the window.	Ha lehet, az ablaknál szeretnék ülni.
I want it	akarom
I want to see the Hungarian countryside.	Látni akarom a magyar vidéket.

	Hordár
I think there'll be plenty of seats.	Azt hiszem lesz elég hely.
The train is to the right of the exit.	A vonat a kijárattól jobbra áll.
that is	azaz
entrance	bejárat
That is, to the left of the entrance.	Azaz, a bejárattól balra.
	Ur
number	szám
What's your number?	Mi a száma?
	Hordár
Thirty-three.	Harminchárom.
	Ur
When does the train start?	Mikor indul a vonat?
	Hordár
At a quarter of three.	Háromnegyed kettőkor.
	Ur
I buy	veszek
Then I'll buy some chocolates.	Akkor veszek egy kis csokoládét.
newspaper	ujság
I want some newspapers too.	Ujságot is akarok.
	Hordár
You can get candy and papers at the entrance.	Ujságot és cukorkát a kijárat mellett lehet venni.

	Ur
by	mellett
Please give me the afternoon papers.	Kérem a délutáni lapokat.
Have you a box of candy?	Van egy doboz cukorkája?
I'm in a hurry!	Sietek!
conductor	kalauz
All aboard!	Tessék beszállni!
Tickets please!	A jegyeket kérem!
	Ur
dining car	étkező (kocsi)
Conductor, is there a diner on this train?	Kalauz, van étkező ezen a vonaton?
	Kalauz
Yes, just ahead of your car.	Igen, épen az ön kocsija előtt.
	Ur
with ham	sonkás
Then I'm going to get a roll with ham.	Akkor megyek egy sonkászsemlét venni.
Tell me, please, at what station do we come in?	Mondja kérem, melyik állomáson érkezünk meg?
	Kalauz
pertaining to the west	nyugati
At the West Station.	A Nyugati Pályaudvaron.

pertaining to the east	keleti
Not at the East [Station].	Nem a Keletin.

Ur

pertaining to the south	déli
Is there a South Station too, in Budapest?	Van Budapesten Déli Pályaudvar is?

Kalauz

pertaining to the north	északi
Yes, but there is no North [Station].	Igen, de Északi nincs.
Good-bye.	Jó napot.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. HOW TO SAY THAT SOMEONE IS DOING SOMETHING

akar	he wants	iszik	he drinks
mond	he tells	dolgozik	he works
keres	he earns	lakik	he dwells

These verbs differ in that those on the right have the ending *-ik* when they express that he, she, it does something. Those on the left and most verbs in Hungarian have no ending for this form. It is very useful to memorize the *-ik* verbs (as we shall call them from now on) because other endings as well as these differ slightly for the *-ik* verbs from those of most other verbs.

You have already met certain other forms of the verb, such as *akarok* 'I want', *értek* 'I understand', *vágunk* 'we cut', *esznek* 'they eat', and *isznak* 'they drink'. The verbs that follow show the same endings. Notice that you have had no second person forms at all before. The second singular form is used in the same places where you might use *te* for emphasis, and the plural where you are talking familiarly to more than one person and might use *ti* for emphasis (see Unit 5, pp. 94–95).

	look	*sit*	*want*	*eat*	*dwell*
I	nézek	ülök	akarok	eszem	lakom
you	nézel*	ülsz	akarsz	eszel	laksz
he	néz	ül	akar	eszik	lakik
we	nézünk	ülünk	akarunk	eszünk	lakunk
you	néztek	ültök	akartok	esztek	laktok
they	néznek	ülnek	akarnak	esznek	laknak

You will notice that the verbs on the left of the vertical line have the endings for I *-ok/-ök/-ek*, for you *-sz* (*-el*)*, for we *-unk/-ünk*, for you *-tok/-tök/-tek*, and for they *-nak/-nek*. Those on the right are the same except that the forms when speaking of one person are different: I *-om/-öm/-em*, you *-ol/-öl/-el*, he *-ik*. These are the regular forms of personal endings for all verbs. You will recognize some of them from the possessive endings of nouns, but notice also that they are not exactly the noun endings.

Here is a summary of the forms:

	Most verbs	*-ik verbs*
I	-k -ok -ök -ek	-m -om -öm -ek
you (sg.)	-sz (-el)	-l -ol -öl -el
he, she, it		-ik
we	-unk -ünk	
you (pl.)	-tok -tök -tek	
they	-nak -nek	

This set of endings is called the set of indefinite endings. They are used when the verb has no object, for example when you simply say 'I understand' or 'I am eating' but you do not say what you understand or what

---

*-*el* occurs only with stems ending in *-s*, *-sz*, or *-z*, except, of course, for the *-ik* verbs, which mostly have that ending.

you are eating. They are also used when the verb has an indefinite object, that is, when no particular thing is mentioned but just something. *A*, *any*, *some*, *no* are indefinite words in English. 'I read a book', 'I eat some bread', 'I drink no wine' require indefinite endings when put in Hungarian. Some other words we'll point out later when you come to them also require these endings on the verb. But when a particular thing eaten, understood, read, is mentioned, then you use a different set of endings. In English, personal names or names of cities and countries are always definite words. Also *the*, *this*, *that* and possessive words like *his*, *her*, *my*, *your*, *our*, *their* all indicate definite things. Below are the endings that you use with a definite object: 'I understand *the* book', 'I want *that* address', 'I eat *your* chocolates', or 'I understand, eat, want *it*'. *It* is definite because it stands for 'that thing already mentioned'; if you said 'I want *one*, or *some*', then it would be indefinite.

értem	I	understand it	akarom	I	want it	eszem	I	eat it
érted	you	" "	akarod	you	" "	eszed	you	" "
érti	he understands it		akarja	he wants it		eszi	he eats it	
értjük	we	understand it	akarjuk	we	want it	esszük	we	eat it
értitek	you	" "	akarjátok	you	" "	eszitek	you	" "
értik	they	" "	akarják	they	" "	eszik	they	" "

In these *definite* endings, there is no difference between the *-ik* verbs and any others. You will meet these endings again and again in verb forms, so you will get a good bit of practice on them.

B. THE SUFFIX *-i*

nyugati	pertaining to the west	keleti	pertaining to the east
déli	pertaining to the south	északi	pertaining to the north
uti	pertaining to the road		

The suffix *-i* 'pertaining to', may be added to noun (and adverb) stems to produce adjectives of the sort illustrated by the above examples. Here are some more: *budapesti* 'of Budapest', *mai* 'of today' (for example, *Mai Nap* 'Today's Day', name of a leading Hungarian daily), *külföldi* 'foreigner, pertaining to abroad' (from *külföld* 'abroad, foreign soil'), *reggeli* 'breakfast, that of the morning' (for example, *Reggeli Ujság* 'Morning News', another Hungarian daily), *szerdai osztály* 'the class of Wednesday', *Magyarország elleni* 'anti-Hungarian' (from *ellen* 'against').

C. THE WORD *MÉRT*

mért	why, what for

You may find this word written *miért* (composed of *mi* 'what', and the suffix *-ért* 'for the sake of'), and so pronounced in careful speech; but in rapid conversation you are more likely to hear *mért*, or even *mér*.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

I. In the following sentences translate the English words in parentheses into Hungarian; then fit each in its respective sentence by adding the appropriate suffix(es). Read each completed sentence aloud.

1. Bocsánatot kérek, de ez az én (*seat*).
2. A (*Monday*) Lap tiz fillérbe kerül.
3. Maguk (*are lucky*).
4. (*His number is*) kilencvenkettő.
5. Tetszik (*the girls*).
6. Buda a Duna (*western*) oldalán fekszik.
7. Kilencszer hét (*63*).
8. (*With the doctor*) akar beszélni.
9. A hugomnak csak egy (*son*) van.
10. Minden este (*at a quarter of seven*).

II. Combinations:

1. hozzám
2. nekem
3. velem
4. nincs
5. tőletek
6. benned
7. szemben
8. előttünk
9. rá
10. bort
11. itt
12. mibe
13. kell

a. kéri
b. fekszik
c. isznak
d. lakik
e. csinálnom
f. ül
g. hisz
h. adja
i. kerül
j. foglalkozik
k. pénzem
l. jön
m. esik
n. eszik
o. beszélsz
p. mondja
q. állnak
r. családom
s. érkezik
t. csókolniok
u. utazni
v. parancsolnak

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding sections, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat each conversation if necessary; then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Károly ül az étkezőben; István áll a bejáratnál.*

Károly: Szervusz, István!
István: Szervusz.
Károly: Nem akarsz leülni?
István: De igen, szivesen. Köszönöm.
Károly: Mi ujság?
István: Semmi különös.[*] És veled?
Károly: Semmi. Hova utazol?
István: Budapestre.
Károly: Mit akarsz inni?
István: Egy csésze hideg kávét.
Károly: Pincér! Az ur egy csésze kávét akar.
Pincér: Hideget vagy meleget?
István: Hideget kérek.
Károly: Nem akarsz enni?
István: Nem vagyok éhes. Most ettem egy félórával ezelőtt.
Károly: Tul meleg van.
István: Igen. Tegnap még elég hüvös volt, de ma már itt a nyár.
Hanyadika van ma?

---

[*] 'Nothing special'.

Károly: Azt hiszem vasárnap, május huszonnyolc.

István: Mikor érkezünk Budapestre?

Károly: Ötkor.

István: Évával és Máriával találkozom a pályaudvaron.

Károly: Én mindjárt az anyámhoz megyek, aztán majd találkozunk.

István: Pár perc még és megérkezünk.

Károly: Akkor viszontlátásra.

2. *A villamoson.*

Mária: A gyorsvonat háromkor érkezik.

Éva: A Keletin vagy a Délin?

Mária: A Keleti pályaudvaron.

Éva: Mindjárt ott leszünk.

Mária: Igen, itt kiszállunk.

Éva: István beszél magyarul?

Mária: Persze.

Éva: Az jó, mert én nem beszélek angolul.

Mária: Hova menjünk most?

Éva: Menjünk a bejárathoz.

3. *A bejáratnál.*

Hordár: Kocsit tetszik parancsolni?

István: Köszönöm, nem. Tessék egy pengő.

Hordár: Köszönöm uram.

4. *István és a két lány.*

Mária: Isten hozta, István.

István: Mi ujság, Mária?

Mária: Szeretném bemutatni a hugomnak. Éva, ez István, az amerikai rokon.

István: Hova megyünk most?

Éva: A szállodába. Károly is ott lesz vacsorára. Jó lesz sietni.

Mária: Tiz perc alatt a szállodában leszünk.

István: Melyik szállodába megyünk?

Mária: A Bazilika mellett van, jó és olcsó szálloda.

István: Lehet drága is. Menjünk a margitszigeti szállodába.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. At a railroad station, you ask where the tickets are sold; the price of the various classes, whether the train carries dining car, the time of departure, etc.

2. You meet a friend at a station, you tell him where you are going, the interesting points of your sight-seeing trip. He tells you he is going to see his relatives in the country.

3. You discuss with a friend the things you saw and the people you met on recent trips.

4. On the train you meet a gentleman, and join him in going to the dining room, where you order a meal.

5. When you arrive at your destination, you call a porter because you have lots of baggage. He takes you to a car, and you inquire about the hotels, and your driver takes you there. You book a room, and inquire about various facilities in the hotel.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

All verbs, irrespective of the form in which they occur in the *Basic Sentences*, will be listed by the present, third person singular forms, for the sake of easy identification.

akar	he wants
alatt	under, below, within
azaz	that is

bejárat (II.A.2a)	entrance
beszáll	he enters, he steps in
dél (II.B.2)	south
dohányzó (I.A.)	smoker
észak (II.A.2a)	north
étkező (kocsi) (I.A.)	diner
gyors	fast, quick (train)
hordár (II.A.2b)	porter
hova	where to
kalauz (II.A.2b)	conductor
kelet (II.A.1a)	east
megáll	he stops
megérkezik	he arrives
mellett	next to, by
melyik	which one
mért	why
nincs mit	you're welcome
nyugat (II.A.2a)	west
osztály (II.A.2a)	class
pálya (I.B.1)	track, course
pályaudvar (II.A.2b)	railroad station
pénztár (II.A.1b)	cashier's office
poggyász (II.A.2b)	baggage
siet	he is in a hurry, he hastens
sonkás	with ham
szám (II.A.2a)	number
személy (II.A.1b)	person
személyvonat (II.A.2a)	local train
szerencsés	lucky
tesz	he puts
udvar (II.A.2b)	court
ujság (II.A.2a)	newspaper
ut (II.A.1a)	road
utazik	he travels
ül	he sits
vesz	he buys

UNIT 14

KEEPING COOL

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Elisabeth tells George what she did during the holiday.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
George	*György*
you did	csináltál
What did you do yesterday?	Mit csináltál tegnap?
Elisabeth	*Erzsébet*
terrible	borzasztó
It was terribly warm yesterday.	Tegnap borzasztó meleg volt.
I got up	(fel)keltem
early	korán
I got up early.	Korán keltem.
At a quarter past eight.	Negyed kilenckor.
he ate breakfast	reggelizett
The whole family had breakfast together.	Az egész család együtt reggelizett.
	György
you (all) did	csináltatok
And what did you do after breakfast?	És mit csináltatok (reggeli) után?

	Erzsébet
we sat	ültünk
We sat around the table.	Az asztal körül ültünk.
he read it	olvasta
with pictures	képes
My father read the papers and the magazines.	Az apám az ujságokat és a képes lapokat olvasta.
	György
till when	meddig
he read	olvasott
How long did he read?	Meddig olvasott?
	Erzsébet
Till a quarter of nine.	Háromnegyed kilencig.
Afterwards my father said:	Azután azt mondta az apám:
"Today is a holiday."	"Ma ünnep van."
"I don't have to work."	"Nem kell dolgoznom."
who	ki
"Who wants to go to a bath?"	"Ki akar fürdőbe menni?"
everybody	mindenki
Of course, everybody wanted to go.	Persze mindenki menni akart.
	György
you (all) got started	indultatok
When did you get started?	Hánykor indultatok?

	Erzsébet
Not until half past nine.	Csak fél tizkor.
	György
late	későn
Why so late?	Mért olyan későn?
	Erzsébet
she packed it	becsomagolta
Because my mother packed our lunch.	Mert az anyám becsomagolta az ebédünket.
	György
she put	tett
package	csomag
What did she put in the package?	Mit tett a csomagba?
	Erzsébet
A whole chicken.	Egy egész csirkét.
And a lot of fresh fruit.	És sok friss gyümölcsöt.
iced	jeges
we took	vittünk
We took iced drinks too.	Vittünk jeges italokat is.
	György
Did you take cold beer?	Vittetek hideg sört?
	Erzsébet
Certainly not!	Dehogy!

orange	narancs
lemon	citrom
juice	lé
ice	jég
Only iced orange and lemon juice.	Csak narancs és citrom lét jéggel.
And some iced tea.	És egy kis jeges teát.
	György
Did you go by street-car?	Villamossal mentetek?
	Erzsébet
We went in my father's car.	Az apám kocsiján mentünk.
	György
How many of you were there?	Hányan voltatok?
	Erzsébet
There were five of us.	Öten.
My parents, my sisters, and I.	A szüleim, a nővéreim, és én.
	György
Which bath did you go to?	Melyik fürdőbe mentetek?
	Erzsébet
emperor	császár
To the Emperor Bath.	A Császár Fürdőbe.

	György
I believed	hittem
closed	zárva
I thought it was closed on holidays.	Azt hittem ünnepkor zárva van.
	Erzsébet
open	nyitva
It was open yesterday.	Tegnap nyitva volt.
man	ember
It was full of people.	Tele volt emberrel.
agreeable	kellemes
The water was very agreeable.	A viz nagyon kellemes volt.
Not too cold, not too hot.	Nem tul hideg, nem tul meleg.
Just fine.	Épen jó.
	György
How long were you there?	Meddig voltatok ott?
	Erzsébet
early	kora
Till the early afternoon.	Kora délutánig.
we were dressing	öltöztünk
Then we got dressed.	Azután felöltöztünk.
We sat in the car.	Beültünk a kocsiba.
And we got back to Pest.	És visszajöttünk Pestre.

We stopped by Margaret's Island.	A Margit-szigetnél megálltunk.
But there were a lot of cars on the bridge.	De a hidon sok kocsi volt.
policeman	rendőr
A policeman said that we weren't allowed to stop.	A rendőr azt mondta, hogy nem szabad megállni.
	György
So where did you go?	Akkor hova mentetek?
	Erzsébet
My parents wanted to go to a café.	A szüleim kávéházba akartak menni.
still	még mindig
Late in the afternoon it was still warm.	Késő délután még mindig meleg volt.
	György
Why didn't you go to a movie?	Mért nem mentetek moziba?
	Erzsébet
picture	film
We'd seen all the good pictures already.	A jó filmeket már mind láttuk.
Got a cigarette, George?	Van egy cigarettád, György?
	György
Here you are.	Tessék.
Here's a match.	Itt a gyufa.
What did you do in the evening?	Mit csináltatok este?

	Erzsébet
since	miután
We went to church, since it was a holiday.	Miután ünnep volt templomba mentünk.
And in church it was nice and cool too.	A templomban jó hüvös volt.
he laughs	nevet
Why are you laughing?	Miért nevetsz?
	György
You don't go to church because it's cool there.	Az ember nem azért megy templomba, mert hüvös.
	Erzsébet
We were only at the cathedral for a little while.	Csak rövid ideig voltunk a bazilikában.
	György
When did you get home?	Hánykor érkeztetek haza?
	Erzsébet
I went to bed at eleven.	Tizenegykor lefeküdtem.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

HOW TO EXPRESS THE PAST

You learned in Unit 13 that the suffixes of the present tense are really personal suffixes, that is to say, they indicate whether the form is in the first person, the second person, or the third person — singular or plural. Now, notice that these very same suffixes are used for the very same purpose, in the forms for the past tense also. Naturally, you would expect some sort of a way of showing that the form in question is not present but past: and, indeed, this is taken care of by either a simple *-t* or by a *-tt* (the latter being preceded by one of the three auxiliary vowels *-e-*, *-ö-*, or *-o-*, as the case may be).

1

csináltam	I made (did)	csináltam	I made (did) it
csináltál	you made	csináltad	you made it
csinált	he made	csinálta	he made it
csináltunk	we made	csináltuk	we made it
csináltatok	you made	csináltátok	you made it
csináltak	they made	csinálták	they made it

Verbs, exactly like nouns, in Hungarian, can be classified according to their stems (or, rather, according to the last sound or sounds before the suffix, if any). Now, the above forms of *csinál* 'he makes', are the pattern you must follow in making the past tense (according to the left hand column, for the indefinite, according to the right hand column, for the definite or objective forms) of all stems which end in a vowel, or in any one of the following consonants: *-l*, *-r*, *-n*, *-ny*, *-j* (*-ly*). Thus: *helyet foglaltunk* 'we took a seat' (*foglal-tunk*); *a széken ültek* 'they sat on the chair' (*ül-tek*); *egy pohár vizet kértem* 'I asked for a glass of water' (*kér-tem*); *nagyon örültetek* 'you were very glad' (*örül-tetek*).

2

értettem	I understood	értettem	I understood it
értettél	you understood	értetted	you understood it
értett	he understood	értette	he understood it
értettünk	we understood	értettük	we understood it
értettetek	you understood	értettétek	you understood it
értettek	they understood	értették	they understood it

The above forms of *ért* 'he understands', are the patterns you must follow in making the past tense of all verb stems ending in two consonants (except in *-ng*), or in *t*, when that *t* is preceded by any of the long vowels (*á*, *é*, *ó*, *ő*), with the exception of *lát* 'he sees'. Here belong also stems of one syllable ending in *t*, when that *t* is preceded by any of the short vowels.

3

adtam	I gave
adtál	you gave
adott	he gave
adtunk	we gave
adtatok	you gave
adtak	they gave

adtam	I gave it
adtad	you gave it
adta	he gave it
adtuk	we gave it
adtátok	you gave it
adták	they gave it

The above forms of *ad* 'he gives', are the patterns you must follow in making the past tense of all verb stems ending in any other simple consonant than that under **1** or **2**, that is, *-b*, *-p*, *-d*, *-gy*, *-k*, *-h*, *-s*, *-sz*, *-v*, and all exceptions to **1** and **2** belong here too (such as *lát* 'he sees').

4

voltam	I was
voltál	you were
volt	he was
voltunk	we were
voltatok	you were
voltak	they were

mentem	I went
mentél	you went
ment	he went
mentünk	we went
mentetek	you went
mentek	they went

The above forms of *van* 'he is', and *megy* 'he goes', are somewhat irregular and you had better memorize them separately. Notice that the irregularity is in the use of the stems *vol-* and *men-*, not in the endings.

5

ettem	I ate (it)
ettél (etted)	you ate (it)
evett (ette)	he ate (it)
ettünk (ettük)	we ate (it)
ettetek (ettétek)	you ate (it)
ettek (ették)	they ate (it)

vittem	I carried (it)
vittél (vitted)	you carried (it)
vitt (vitte)	he carried (it)
vittünk (vittük)	we carried (it)
vittetek (vittétek)	you carried (it)
vittek (vitték)	they carried (it)

ittam	I drank (it)
ittál (ittad)	you drank (it)
ivott (itta)	he drank (it)
ittunk (ittuk)	we drank (it)
ittatok (ittátok)	you drank (it)
ittak (itták)	they drank (it)

jöttem	I came
jöttél	you came
jött	he came
jöttünk	we came
jöttetek	you came
jöttek	they came

Note these somewhat irregular forms of the verbs ***eszik*** 'he eats', ***iszik*** 'he drinks', ***visz*** 'he carries', and ***jön*** 'he comes'. You would do well to learn these by heart. Again, the irregularity is in the stem.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences*, covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Prepare orally the following anecdotes — retelling them as directed.

I. A father whose son is sick in bed is telling the following.

Read aloud carefully what he says. Then imagine that he is telling the same thing about his son who *was* sick some time ago. How would he say it in Hungarian? (You must change the verb forms from present to past.)

A fiam az ágyban fekszik. A fiu anyja nincs itthon — csak délután érkezik a vonattal vidékről. A fiam egy csésze teát kér. A szobalány behozza, és azután a gyógyszerészhez megy. A gyógyszer elég drága — a lány hat pengőt fizet. Az orvosnak sok dolga van és siet.

II. Someone tells the following as if the action had taken place some time ago. How would you tell the same thing in the present? (You must change the verb forms from past to present.)

Sándor ivott egy pohár bort mikor hozzám jött a csomaggal. Nagyon sokat beszélt. Azt hittem, hogy nagyon örült a szerencséjének mikor egy ajándékot adtam neki, de azt hallottam, hogy nem tetszett mert nem volt elég nagy.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

A szállodában.

István: Milyen szép ez a város! Milyen kellemes a sziget!

Éva: Örülök, hogy tetszik. Nyáron mindig szép a város.

István: A lányok is szépek Budapesten.

Mária: Ma éjjel nagyon meleg lesz.

István: Majd iszunk narancslét, vagy citromlét sok jéggel.

Éva: Holnap talán a Császár fürdőbe megyünk.

Mária: Mért nem viszi fel a poggyászát és ezt a nagy csomagot?
A szobaszám huszonhárom.

István: Nem sietek. Inni szeretnék. Éva, mit szeretne inni?

Éva: Talán hideg kávét.

István: Ha nincs tul késő, moziba szeretnék menni.
Melyik moziban van jó film?

Mária: Már késő van és a moziban tul meleg van.

Éva: Olyan vagy mint egy rendőr, mindent megállitsz.

Mária: Meddig lesz Budapesten, István?

István: Ameddig tetszik.

Éva: A város, vagy a lányok?

István: Maga! Különösen akkor, amikor nevet.

Mária: Én talán most megyek.

István: Viszontlátásra Mária! (*Mária el*)

Éva: Én is megyek.

István: Miért siet?

Éva: Késő van.

István: Nem igaz, korán van.
Ma láttam először.
És most mindig akarom látni.

Éva: Majd lát vacsoránál.
István: És reggelinél?
Éva: Talán ebédnél is.
Mária: (*jön*) István, itt az ujság.
István: Köszönöm, de minek?
Mária: Itt vannak képeslapok is.
István: Azt is köszönöm, de minek?
Mária: Nem akar olvasni?
István: Mit?
Éva: Ujságot és képeslapokat.
István: A maga szivében akarok olvasni, Éva!
Éva: Talán nincs is szivem.
Mária: Nincs sziv, nincs ujság, nincs képeslap. Talán jó lesz egy kis viz, sok jéggel?
István: Borzasztó! Ki is mondta, hogy maga olyan mint a rendőr?!

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Cover the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. Plan to go out with a friend. It is hot weather: you want to go to the baths, the friend wants to go up a mountain. Settle the difference one way or another. Decide where you will meet, whether you will go by street-car, train, or automobile.

2. Continue the plans for the outing. Recall how your mother used to put up lunch with cold chicken and white wine. Your friend offers to take lunch for the two of you. He (she) will buy the chicken next day. But you cannot decide on whether you will have beer, coffee, or wine so you decide to get your drinks there, since there is a restaurant near the bath or the

mountain where you can buy iced drinks, coffee, beer, and wine.

3. You meet a soldier in a café and talk about the town, the amount of traffic (many cars or not), the bridges (pretty or not), the cathedral and how you like it, the movie theaters, etc. Finally you go off together to the latest Hedy Lamarr picture.

4. Invite a girl to a movie. You say the evening is hot and the movie will be cool. She says you will find the church cool too, and that she did not see you there in the morning. She thinks it good if you go this evening. Tell her you can buy iced drinks across from the theater, and even eat an orange in front of the theater. She says she will go to the movie with you tonight if you will go to church with her another Sunday.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

becsomagol	he packs
borzasztó	terrible
citrom (II.A.2a)	lemon
császár (II.A.2b)	emperor
csomag (II.A.2a)	package
dehogy	by no means, oh no! certainly not
elolvas	he reads through
ember (II.A.1b)	man, one
felkel	he gets up
film (II.A.1a)	picture, film
jég (II.B.2)	ice
jeges	iced
kellemes	agreeable
kép (II.A.1a)	picture
késő(n)	late
ki	who
kora (korán)	early
lé (*stem in some combinations:* lev-)	juice
meddig	till when
mindenki	everybody
miután	since
narancs (I.A.2a)	orange
nevet	he laughs
nyitva (van)	(it is) open
olvas	he reads
öltözik	he is dressing
reggelizik	he eats breakfast
rendőr (I.A.1b)	policeman
visz	he carries, takes
zárva (van)	(it is) closed

UNIT 15

PAYING A VISIT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

An officer visits Mr. Kovács.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
	Szobalány
second lieutenant	hadnagy
Good morning, lieutenant.	Jó reggelt, hadnagy ur.
	Hadnagy
Good day.	Jó napot.
Is Mr. Smith at home?	Itthon van Kovács ur?
	Szobalány
Yes, he just got up.	Igen, épen most kelt fel.
	Hadnagy
announce me	jelentsen be
Please, announce me.	Legyen szives, jelentsen be.
	Szobalány
May I ask your name?	Szabad kérnem a nevét?

	Hadnagy
My name is Green.	A nevem Green.
officer	tiszt
America	Amerika
army	hadsereg
I'm an officer in the American army.	Tiszt vagyok az amerikai hadseregben.
	Szobalány
he announces	bejelent
I'll announce you at once, lieutenant.	Minjárt bejelentem, hadnagy ur.
he steps	lép
he steps in	belép
Please step in (meanwhile).	Tessék addig belépni.
he occupies	foglal
And please have a seat.	És kérem tessék helyet foglalni.
promptly	azonnal
Mr. Smith will be here right away.	Kovács ur azonnal itt lesz.
	Kovács
What can I do for you, lieutenant?	Mit parancsol, hadnagy ur?
	Hadnagy
he knows	ismer
Don't you recognize me?	Nem ismer rám?
	Kovács
face	arc
familiar *or* acquaintance	ismerős
Your face is familiar.	Az arca ismerős.

But I don't remember you.	De nem emlékszem magára.
Where have we met?	Hol találkoztunk?
	Hadnagy
Weren't you in the United States six years ago?	Nem volt az Egyesült Államokban hat évvel ezelőtt?
With your charming daughter?	A kedves lányával?
	Kovács
Of course, now I remember you.	Persze, most már emlékszem magára.
We met in New York.	New Yorkban találkoztunk.
	Hadnagy
In a restaurant on 44th Street.	Egy vendéglőben a negyvennegyedik utcában.
he drinks beer	sörözik
We drank a lot of beer together there.	Sokszor söröztünk ott együtt.
Mary and I became good friends.	Mária és én jó barátok lettünk.
Then one day you went back to Hungary.	Azután, egy szép napon, visszamentek Magyarországra.
	Kovács
he writes	ír
Didn't you write a couple of letters to Mary?	Azt hiszem, irt egy pár levelet Máriának?
	Hadnagy
I did write.	Irtam.
reply	válasz
But I didn't get an answer from her.	De nem kaptam tőle választ.

	Kovács
heavy *or* serious	sulyos
sick	beteg
My daughter was very sick.	A lányom sulyos beteg volt.
She lay in bed for two years.	Két évig ágyban feküdt.
Then she went to Italy for a year.	Azután egy évre Olaszországba ment.
	Hadnagy
I'm very sorry.	Nagyon sajnálom.
he knows	tud
I didn't know about it.	Nem tudtam róla.
better	jobban
I hope she's better now.	Remélem már jobban van.
	Kovács
Yes, she's quite well.	Igen, már egész jól van.
gratitude	hála
Thank God.	Hála Istennek.
some *or* something	valami
Would you care for something?	Parancsol valamit?
	Hadnagy
I would.	Kérek.

	Kovács
Would you like an American or a Hungarian drink?	Amerikai vagy magyar italt parancsol?
apricot	barack
brandy	pálinka
Perhaps some Hungarian apricot brandy?	Talán egy kis magyar barackpálinkát?
	Tiszt
Thank you.	Köszönöm.
I apologize	bocsánatot kérek
thus *or* this sort	ilyen
I [must] apologize for coming so early.	Bocsánatot kérek, hogy ilyen korán jöttem.
he sends	küld
troop *or* outfit	csapat
But this afternoon they're sending my outfit to the country.	De ma délután vidékre küldik a csapatomat.
I might not be back for a couple of weeks.	Lehet, hogy nem jövök vissza egy pár hétig.
	Kovács
Can you tell me where you're going?	Szabad tudnom hova megy?
	Hadnagy
village	falu
To a little village by the Balaton.	Egy kis faluba a Balaton mellé.
What are you laughing at?	Miért nevet?
	Kovács
That's interesting.	Érdekes.

Mary lives by the Balaton too.	Mária is a Balatonnál van.
lake	tó
She's staying in a small village near the lake.	Egy kis faluban lakik a tó mellett.
	Hadnagy
Really?	Igazán?
I'm very glad [to know] that.	Annak nagyon örülök.
If she's not too far away I'll look her up.	Ha nincs tul messze, felkeresem.
May I ask her address?	Szabad a cimét kérnem?
	Kovács
Sure.	Szivesen.
How are you traveling?	Hogy utazik?
	Hadnagy
On the evening express.	Az esti gyorssal.
It leaves the station at seven-thirty.	Fél nyolckor indul a pályaudvarról.
	Kovács
Have you bought your ticket yet?	Már megvette a jegyét?
	Hadnagy
Not yet.	Még nem.
	Kovács
listen here	hallgasson ide
Then listen.	Akkor hallgasson ide.

down	le
I'm going down by car.	Én leutazom kocsival.
Come with me.	Jöjjön velem.
We'll be there early tomorrow morning.	Holnap korán reggel ott leszünk.
remain	maradjon
And please stay for lunch.	És kérem, maradjon ebédre.
she will be happy	örülni fog
My daughter'll be glad you're here in Hungary.	A lányom örülni fog, hogy itt van Magyarországon.
She spoke of you often.	Gyakran beszélt magáról.
	Tiszt
Thanks very much.	Nagyon köszönöm.
gratefully	hálásan
I'd be glad to.	Hálásan elfogadom.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. WORDS TELLING WHERE

itthon	at home (here)	előre	to the front
otthon	at home (there)	oldalt	on the side
haza	(to) home	hátul	at the back
közel	near	elől	at the front
messze	far	hátra	to the back

All these words indicate where something is. Some of them, in particular *elől*, *hátul*, *közel*, *itthon*, and *otthon*, may take a few of the noun suffixes, namely *-ról/ -ről*, and *-ig: elment itthonról* 'he went away from home'.

B. WORDS TELLING WHEN

most	now	ma	today
tegnap	yesterday	holnap	tomorrow
kora, korán	early	késő(n)	late
már	already	mindig	always
megint	again	mindjárt	immediately

These are some of the words in Hungarian which tell when something happened or will happen. A few of them can be combined: *tegnap* 'yesterday', and *előtt* 'before', give *tegnapelőtt* 'the day before yesterday'; *holnap* 'tomorrow', and *után* 'after', give *holnapután* 'the day after tomorrow'. Some of the noun suffixes can also be added: *holnapig* 'until tomorrow', *tegnaptól máig* 'from yesterday until today'; and, of course, you will discover the suffix *-n* in both *korán* 'early', and *későn* 'late'.

C. WORDS TELLING HOW

elég	enough	együtt	together
épen	just	csak	only
még	yet	igen	very (yes)
ellen	against	után	after
tul	beyond	át	through, across

Some of these words occur with a few of the noun suffixes, but on the whole not very often.

D. P[illegible]RBS

You have doubtless noticed the following verbs:

jön	he comes	feljön	he comes up
jön	he comes	eljön	he comes away
mond	he says	kimond	he pronounces

mutat	he shows	bemutat	he introduces
megy	he goes	felmegy	he goes up
áll	he stands	megáll	he stops
néz	he looks	átnéz	he looks across
tisztit	he cleans	kitisztit	he cleans
vág	he cuts	levág	he cuts off

Glance at the list of verbs in the right hand column and compare the list with the left hand column. You will find the identical verbs in each row, but on the right an additional element will precede the verb in each case. This element is a *preverb*, which changes the meaning of the verb somewhat. Most of these can be used alone as well, but six occur with verbs only; they are: *be* 'into', *el* 'away, forth', *fel* (*föl*) 'up', *ki* 'out', *le* 'down', *meg* 'wholly'. There are a number of preverbs you have already had, but which are not among those examples quoted above: *ellen* 'against', *elől* 'in front of', *bele* 'into', *hozzá* 'to', *körül* 'around', *mellé* 'beside', *össze* 'together', *rá* 'onto', *tele* 'full', *tul* 'beyond', *vissza* 'back'. You will note that many of these serve, when not used as preverbs, as plain words telling when or where or how. Note also that it is the custom to write preverbs together with the verbs they precede, and the stress of a verb with a preverb falls on the preverb. Now study the use of the preverbs very carefully in the following examples:

visszacsókóltam Margitot	I kissed Margaret back
felnézett (fölnézett)	he looked up
mind elutaztak	they all went away (traveled)
lenézi Jenőt	he looks down on Eugene (with contempt)
kinéz az ablakon	he looks out the window
felvette a kabátját	he put his coat on
leveszi a nadrágját	he is taking his pants off
behozta az almát	he brought the apple in
ellenáll	he resists
megborotvált	he shaved me (completely)
kivágta a képeket	he cut the pictures out
megette a tésztát	he ate (completely) the dessert
kiitta borát	he drank his wine
összehozta őket	he brought them together
körülment	he went around
mindjárt visszateszem	I'll put it back at once
lefeküdtem	I lay down
megcsináltuk	we did it (finished it)

Now notice the following examples where the preverb is separated from the verb:

ki kell mennem	I have to go out
meg szabad szólitani?	may one address him?
ha mellé nem megy	if he does not go next to him
vissza is jött	indeed he came back
meg lehet nézni?	may one look at it?
rá kell tenni	it is necessary to put it on

The preverb is generally separated from its verb under these conditions: (1) when something is stressed in the sentence (*vissza is jött* 'indeed he came back'), (2) when there is a verb like *kell* 'it is necessary', *szabad* 'it is permitted', *lehet* 'it is possible', and a few others you have not yet learned. Note the negative sentence: *nem megy ki* 'he doesn't go out', as contrasted with *kimegy* 'he goes out'.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

The answers to all of the following questions will be easily found in the *Basic Sentences*. Ask yourself the questions and say the answers aloud until you can give them all without looking at the *Basic Sentences*.

1. Ki áll a bejáratnál?
2. Kivel beszél?
3. Mi a foglalkozása?
4. Honnan jött?
5. Kit akar látni?
6. Hol találkozott a két ember?
7. Mikor?
8. Hova ment Mária az apjával?
9. Miért nem irt Mária a tisztnek?
10. Hova ment Mária egy évre?
11. Mit ivott a hadnagy?
12. Mért kért bocsánatot?
13. Hova kell, hogy menjen este?
14. Ki nem lakik messze a tótól?
15. Hogy akart a hadnagy utazni?

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *An anecdote about a sick soldier and his girl.*

Egy szép napon egy katonának nagyon fájt a feje. Lefeküdt az ágyba.

Azt mondta az orvos:
—Maga sulyos beteg.
Nem szabad felkelnie.
És megparancsolta, hogy csak rokonnak szabad bemenni hozzá.
De volt a fiunak egy barátnője.
Ez a kislány beszélni akart vele és felment hozzá.
A bejáratnál állt egy asszony.
—Csak rokonnak szabad bemenni.
—Én rokona vagyok (mondja gyorsan a lány).
—Igazán (kérdezi az asszony), milyen rokona?
—A nővére.
Az asszony nagyot nevet.
—Örülök, hogy találkozunk, lányom!
Én az anyja vagyok.

2. *An anecdote about a soldier, his girl, and his superior officer.*

Egy szép tavaszi napon egy katona megy az utcán egy kislánnyal.
Szembe jön vele a csapat egyik hadnagya.
—A nővérem (mondja a katona a tisztnek).
A hadnagy nevetett és ez volt a válasza:
—Két héttel ezelőtt még az én nővérem volt.

3. *The lucky man—sometimes.*

—Kovács Mária férjhez ment.
—Ki a szerencsés?
—Az apja, kedvesem.

4. *Vacsoránál.*

Károly: Hogy tetszik Magyarország Amerika után?
István: Nagyon! Budapest nagyon szép város.
De a Balatont is szeretném látni.
Mária: Az apám lemegy kocsin a Balatonhoz.
Mért nem megy vele?
Holnap reggel indul.
István: Dehogy megyek holnap! Holnap Évával fürdőbe megyek.
Éva: Hallgasson ide.
Holnap vasárnap van és a fürdő tele lesz diákkal.*
Menjünk holnapután.
István: De Mária elküld!
Éva: Én meg azt mondom hogy maradjon. Mi a válasz?
István: Maradok!
Károly: Erre iszunk egyet! Jó magyar barackpálinkát.
István: Hálásan köszönöm.
Mária: Én nem iszom. Hazamegyek. Késő van.

***Diák* 'student'.

Éva: Mért nem mész apával a Balatonhoz? Tele van ismerőssel.
Mária: Megyek is.
Éva: Apa örülni fog ha vele mész.
Mária: Azt hiszem te is örülni fogsz. Igaz?
Károly: Én is magukkal megyek, Mária. Jó?
Mária: Nagyon fogunk örülni.
István: Viszontlátásra, Mária.
Éva: Isten veled, Mária.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. Call on a friend's friend whom you have been asked to look up when you get to Budapest. Introduce yourself. He will ask you to be seated and offer you something to drink. He had met your friend at Lake Balaton, and later they had lived near together in Budapest. He asks where you come from, and what your work is. You answer his questions. (Give imaginary rank if in the army.) Then he asks you to join him at dinner—accept or excuse yourself.

2. Ask a friend to have a drink with you. After you have ordered your drinks and paid for them you start telling stories. Each time one starts a story, the other steals his punch line. Use at least two of the anecdotes of the lesson. When you are through, decide to go off to see the movies where perhaps you can really laugh.

3. Discuss with a friend a visit you had to call on your girl on a Sunday afternoon. You met all her family and relatives. Your friend asks questions such as how many there were, what you talked about (weather and the business of her numerous relatives), how long you stayed, whether you finally got a date with her.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

Amerika (I.B.1)	America
arc (II.A.2a)	face
azonnal	promptly
Balaton (II.A.2b)	Balaton (the largest Hungarian lake)
barack (II.A.2a)	apricot
be	into
beteg	(he is) sick
csapat	troup, outfit
diák	student
el	away
falu (*in some combinations the stem is* falv-)	village
foglal	he occupies
hadnagy (II.A.2a)	lieutenant
hadsereg (II.A.1a)	army
hallgasson ide	listen to me
haza	home (to)
hála (I.B.1)	gratitude
hálásan	gratefully
ilyen	this sort, thus, so
ir	he writes
ismer	he knows
ismerős	familiar, acquaintance
jelent	it means
jelentsen be	announce me
jobban	better
küld	he sends
lép	he steps
maradjon	stay, remain
meg	wholly
messze	far
Olaszország (II.A.2a)	Italy
otthon	at home (there)
örülni fog	he'll be glad
pálinka (I.B.1)	brandy, whisky, gin, spirits in general
sörözik	he drinks beer
sulyos	heavy, serious
tiszt (II.A.1a)	officer
tó (*in some combinations the stem is* tav-)	lake
tud	he knows
valami	some (thing)
válasz	reply

UNIT 16

SPORTS, GAMES AND ENTERTAINMENT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Vasárnap. A család ül a reggeli asztal körül.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
	Apa
Today it's Sunday.	Ma vasárnap van.
Tomorrow, Monday, will be a holiday.	Holnap, hétfőn, ünnep lesz.
I have two days off.	Két szabad napom van.
tired	fáradt
I'm tired.	Fáradt vagyok.
work	munka
it pleases	jól esik
rest	pihenés
It's nice to have a rest after work.	Munka után jól esik a pihenés.
	Anya
lie	feküdj
Go back to bed.	Feküdj vissza az ágyba.

	Fiu
Certainly not.	Dehogy.
entertainment *or* fun	szórakozás
It's nice to have some fun after work.	Munka után jól esik a szórakozás.
	Apa
You're right, son.	Igazad van fiam.
I should go	mennék
soccer	futbal
I'd be glad to go to the soccer field in the afternoon.	Szivesen mennék délután a futbalpályára.
he plays	játszik
Which team is playing today?	Melyik csapat játszik ma?
	Fiu
The English, against us.	Az angolok, ellenünk.
past	mult
he beats	ver
Last week they beat the Germans.	Mult héten megverték a németeket.
And last month we beat the Italians.	És a mult hónapban mi vertük meg az olaszokat.
better	jobb
than	mint
We play better than the Germans.	Mi jobban játszunk mint a németek.
The English are better than the Italians.	Az angolok jobbak mint az olaszok.
They're better than us, too.	Nálunk is jobbak.
They're the best.	Ők a legjobbak.

	Apa
How come they're so good?	Hogy lehet, hogy olyan jók?
	Fiu
They're faster than we are.	Gyorsabbak mint mi.
They're the fastest.	Ők a leggyorsabbak.
	Apa
When does it begin?	Hánykor kezdődik?
	Fiu
At half past two.	Fél háromkor.
from here	innen
The field is twenty-five minutes from here by streetcar.	A pálya huszonöt percre van innen villamossal.
I'd be glad to go.	Szivesen mennék.
	Apa
he thinks	gondol
What do you think, Margaret?	Mit gondolsz, Margit?
Do you want to go, my dear?	Akarsz menni, kedvesem?
	Anya
interests me	érdekel
Soccer doesn't interest me.	Nem érdekel a futbal.
he'd like	szeretne
But if you'd like to go . . .	De ha ti szeretnétek menni . .

Apa

you'd do	csinálnál
rather	inkább
What would you rather do?	Te mit csinálnál inkább?

Anya

I'd rather go down to the Balaton for a couple of days.	Én inkább lemennék két napra a Balatonra.
I like to bathe.	Én fürdeni szeretek.
he is fishing	halászik
And you like to fish in the lake.	Te meg halászni szeretsz a tóban.

Fiu

I'm not going.	Én nem megyek.
Have a good time.	Jó mulatást.

Anya

What's the matter with you?	Mi bajod van?

Fiu

You heard that my father was tired.	Hallottad, hogy az apám fáradt.
travel *or* he should travel	utazzon
Why do you want him to travel?	Miért akarod, hogy utazzon?
And who ever heard of going bathing in the middle of autumn?	És ki hallott már fürdeni menni ősz közepén?
It's too cool.	Tul hüvös van.
The Balaton may even be frozen over.	A Balaton talán be is fagyott.
he skates	korcsolyázik
You can skate on it.	Korcsolyázni lehet rajta.

Anya

don't be	ne légy
silly (*literally*, little donkey)	csacsi
Don't be silly.	Ne légy csacsi.
its end	vége
It's only the end of September.	Még csak szeptember vége van.

Apa

it would be	volna
That's true; it would have been better to go during the summer.	Igaz! Jobb lett volna nyáron menni.

Anya

later	később
We'll talk it over later.	Később megbeszéljük.
It's still early in the day.	Még csak kora délelőtt van.
What do we do till lunch?	Mit csinálunk ebédig?

Apa

he plays cards	kártyázik
Who wants to play cards?	Ki akar kártyázni?

Anya

Play cards on Sunday?	Vasárnap kártyázni?
Wouldn't it be better to go to church?	Nem volna jobb templomba menni?
Don't you think so?	Nem gondolod?

	Fiu
But the church is even farther away than the field!	De a templom messzebb van a pályánál is!
And my father is too tired.	És az apám tul fáradt.
he plays chess	sakkozik
Let's play chess.	Sakkozzunk.
	Apa
O. K.	Rendben van.
I'd like my pipe and a box of matches.	Szeretném a pipámat és egy doboz gyufát.
	Anya
Here you are.	Tessék.
Where are the papers?	Hol vannak a lapok?
	Fiu
The magazines or the newspapers?	A képeslapok vagy az ujságok?
	Anya
The morning paper.	A reggeli ujság.
	Fiu
There it is on the chair in the bedroom.	Ott fekszik a széken a hálószobában.
	Apa
he could get	kaphatna
Could we get another cup of coffee?	Kaphatnánk még egy csésze kávét?
Before you sit down.	Mielőtt leülsz.

	Anya
I'll bring some from the kitchen right away.	Mindjárt hozok a konyhából.
	Apa
Where's the small table?	Hol a kis asztal?
	Fiu
radio	rádió
The radio's on it.	A rádió áll rajta.
	Apa
Is it on?	Nyitva van?
	Fiu
No, but I'll turn it on.	Nem, de kinyitom.
	Apa
music	zene
That's nice music.	Szép az a zene.
he dances	táncol
You can dance to it.	Lehet rá táncolni.
	Fiu
he allows *or* lets	enged
My mother doesn't allow us to dance at home.	Itthon az anyám nem enged táncolni.
	Apa
Women are like that, son.	Ilyenek a nők, fiam.

2. Check Your Pronunciation

How to pronounce the letter combination ty. This letter combination *ty* is pronounced like the letter *t* run together with the letter *y*. You remember *bátyám* in Unit 4. If you cannot remember the sound, listen carefully to your guide or turn back to the Practice for that unit.

Practice

kártya	card	kártyázik	he plays cards
kártyáim	my cards	kártyázott	he played cards

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

olcsó	cheap	olcsóbb	cheaper
jó	good	jobb	better
gyors	fast	gyorsabb	faster
késő	late	később	later
messze	far	messzebb	farther

Corresponding to the English suffix '-er', used in comparisons, there is the Hungarian suffix *-bb*, with or without the auxiliary vowels *-e-* or *-a-* (very rarely *-o-*), in accordance with rules you already know. Other examples: *ez a pohár viz melegebb mint a másik* 'this glass of water is warmer than the other one'; *a fiam nagyobb mint a lányom* 'my son is bigger than my daughter'; *a falu közelebb van mint a város* 'the village is nearer than the town'; *ez rosszabb, mint gondoltam* 'this is worse than I thought'; *az feketébb a feketénél* 'that's blacker than black'; *sokkal kisebb* 'much smaller'.

jobb	better	legjobb	the best
gyorsabb	faster	leggyorsabb	the fastest

The superlative (the form that in English has *most* or *-est*) in Hungarian is formed from the comparative by the prefix *leg-*. Note that this is added, not to the word as it appears simply, but as it appears with the suffix of the comparative *-bb*. Other examples: *ez a legszebb* 'this is the prettiest one' (note: *szép* is somewhat irregular, because the *-p* of the stem is dropped before the suffix *-bb*); *a vonat itt lesz legkésőbb negyed hétre* 'the train will be here at the latest at a quarter past six'; *kérem a legolcsóbbat* 'give me the cheapest one'; *a közepén a leghidegebb* 'it is coldest in the middle'.

jobban van	he's feeling better
gyorsabbak	they are faster

Further suffixes can be added after the *-bb* such as *-k*, *-t* (or both together), or *-n*, and so on. Other examples should be carefully noted:

ő jött a leggyorsabban	he came the fastest
ma rosszabbul van	he is worse today (more ill)
kérem a legfehérebbeket	please give me the whitest ones
igazabbakat akar hallani	he wants to hear truer ones
nem adja olcsóbban	he does not give it cheaper

B. HOW TO EXPRESS THE CONDITIONAL IN THE PRESENT

Observe carefully the following expressions:

szeretnék egy csésze teát	I'd like a cup of tea
szivesen mennék	I'd gladly go
nagyon örülnék	I'd be very happy

ha mennénk	if we went (we'd go)
mit csinálnál	what'd you do
inkább lemennék	I'd rather go down
volna	it'd be

If you study these verbs you will immediately note that every one of them has the personal suffixes you already are familiar with from your study of the present and the past. To express what you *would* do, or (with *if*) what you *might* do, you must use an *-n* before the personal suffix, exactly in the same way that you had to use a *-t* (and so forth) for the past. Here are some complete series (the stems, of course, are the same that you learned before).

1

adnék	I'd give	adnám	I'd give it
adnál	you'd give	adnád	you'd give it
adna	he'd give	adná	he'd give it
adnánk	we'd give	adnánk	we'd give it
adnátok	you'd give	adnátok	you'd give it
adnának	they'd give	adnák	they'd give it

2

laknám (laknék)	I'd dwell
laknál	you'd dwell
lakna	he'd dwell
laknánk	we'd dwell
laknátok	you'd dwell
laknának	they'd dwell

3

Note these two irregular verbs *van* and *megy:*

volnék lennék	I'd be	mennék	I'd go
volnál lennél	you'd be	mennél	you'd go
volna lenne	he'd be	menne	he'd go
volnánk lennénk	we'd be	mennénk	we'd go
volnátok lennétek	you'd be	mennétek	you'd go
volnának lennének	they'd be	mennének	they'd go

(Note: both stems are about equally common with *van*. In general, *voln-* refers more to the past and the present, *lenn-* more to the future. Use whichever forms the people about you use.)

4

tennék	I'd put	tenném	I'd put it
tennél	you'd put	tennéd	you'd put it
tenne	he'd put	tenné	he'd put it
tennénk	we'd put	tennénk	we'd put it
tennétek	you'd put	tennétek	you'd put it
tennének	they'd put	tennék	they'd put it

5

innám (innék)	I'd drink
innál	you'd drink
inna	he'd drink
innánk	we'd drink
innátok	you'd drink
innának	they'd drink

innám	I'd drink it
innád	you'd drink it
inná	he'd drink it
innánk	we'd drink it
innátok	you'd drink it
innák	they'd drink it

6

jönnék	I'd come
jönnél	you'd come
jönne	he'd come
jönnénk	we'd come
jönnétek	you'd come
jönnének	they'd come

The "'d" in these forms stands for "should" or "would". You must translate *nem jönnék* as "I wouldn't come", and *nem innák* as "they wouldn't drink it". The contracted form is used here to make clear that we do *not* mean "I should (ought to) do it". You use these forms very much as we use the "would" form in English. But where we can say "He would come every day at evening" or "He used to come every day at evening" the Hungarians can only use the form you have already had *szokott* "used to" plus the infinitive: *szokott jönni.*

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say?

I

Read aloud the following sentences. Then change the verb in each to the conditional form. (Example: ***sokba kerül*** 'it costs much', ***sokba kerülne*** 'it would cost much'.)

1. Szeretem megcsókolni.
2. Hálát adok Istennek ha valaki megveri.
3. Ha elutazik, nem marad senki a lakásban.
4. Jobban dolgozik, ha jobban fizetik.
5. Munka után jól esik megfürödni.
6. Egy rózsa van a hajában.

II

Read aloud the following paragraph, in which János is telling what he is doing:

Nagyon fáradt vagyok. Azt gondolom, hogy elmegyek egy moziba. Mennyi pénz van a zsebemben? Ez elég. Hánykor kezdődik a mozi? Akkor még van elég időm. Épen indulni akarok, és a bejáratnál találkozom a nővéremmel. Persze vissza kell mennem a lakásba. Adok neki egy pohár bort, és később megkérem, hogy jöjjön velem a moziba.

Imagine that all this happened to you yesterday. Figure out how you would say each expression and then practice it several times.

III

Fill in the appropriate word from the list to the right in the following sentences (after reading them aloud):

1. Minden este lefekszem az . . . . . .
2. Háromszor . . . . . az huszonhét.
3. . . . . . után szombat jön.
4. Tele van a falu . . . . .tiszttel.
5. A hid a tó . . . . . oldalán van.
6. Az orvos szobalánya . . . . . a gyógyszerészt.
7. Ha fáradt, menjen . . . . . .
8. Ha az ajtó . . . . volna, nem hallanám a rádiót.

a. haza
b. otthon
c. tizenegy
d. péntek
e. kilenc
f. a székre
g. külföldi
h. ágyba
i. északi
j. zárva
k. bejelenti
l. korán

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by your Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

I. PROVERBS

a) Nem esik messze az alma a fájától.*

b) Minden jó, ha jó a vége.

c) Akkor megy a csacsi a jégre, ha jó dolga van.

d) Mindenhol jó, de legjobb otthon.

II. ANECDOTES

1. *The Added Handicap*

Volt egyszer két ur, az egyik nős, a másik nem.

Egy szép tavaszi napon elmentek a Balatonra halászni.

Halásztak egész nap és késő este elindultak haza.

Nagyon fáradtak voltak.

Azt mondja az egyik a másiknak:

—Barátom, én olyan fáradt vagyok mintha katona lennék a hadseregben és egész nap dolgoztam volna.

A nős ember leteszi a dobozokat és csomagokat.

—Nem, nem, ez sokkal rosszabb.

Nekem a feleségemhez kell haza mennem.

2. *The Size of Texas*

Egy magyar katona találkozott a kávéházban egy amerikai katonával. Azt kérdezi:

—Te igazán Texasból jöttél Magyarországra?

—Igazán.

—Meg tudod nekem mondani, hogy milyen nagy az a Texas?

Átgondolja a külföldi katona és azután ezt a választ adja:

—Ha felülsz egy vonatra Texas déli oldalán reggel nyolckor,

huszonnégy óra mulva még mindig Texasban vagy.

Azt mondja erre a magyar fiu:

—Az nem jelent sokat, barátom.

Itt nálunk is vannak olyan vonatok.

3. *The Soldier Who Has Had a Couple*

Egy tiszt késő éjjel—fél kettőkor—jött haza.

**Fa* 'tree'.

Háza bejárata előtt, épen a lámpa alatt, feküdt egy katona.
Mondja a tiszt a katonának:
—Mit csinálsz ott?
Azt mondja a katona:
—Pénzt keresek.
—Pénzt? Milyen pénzt?
—Egy pár pengőt.
—Leesett?
—Le
—Hol esett le?
—A másik utcában.
Kérdezi a tiszt:
—De ha a másik utcában esett le, mért keresed itt az én házam előtt?
—Hadnagy uram, itt sokkal jobban lehet látni, mert ez a lámpa sokkal jobb.

III

Paul and Mary are talking about summer vacation.

Mária

Mit szoktatok nyáron csinálni?

Pál

Az apám és én halászni szoktunk menni a Balatonra.
Az anyám a barátnőivel minden délután kártyázni szokott.
A hugom mindig fiukkal játszik, de csak tizennégy éves.

Mária

Az már nagy lány! Hova mentek ezen a nyáron?

Pál

Nem tudom még.
Az apám egész éven át beteg volt,
és jól esne neki egy kis pihenés.
Talán a hegyekbe megyünk.
Ti hova mentek?

Mária

Mi külföldre megyünk, talán Olaszországba.
Én szeretek utazni, és különösen délen, mert ott jó meleg van.

Pál

Jó volna együtt menni.
Ha volna elég pénzem, én is Olaszországba mennék.

Mária

Nem kerül az olyan sokba!
Még olcsóbb is mint itthon.
Nagyon örülnék ha velem jönnél:
akkor igazán kellemes volna a nyár.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. A asks B about C whom he hasn't seen for a whole month. B explains that C has been fishing at the lake, and they were up in the mountains. A asks why he went, and B says that he was tired, he had been working a great deal. A asks if he had a good time, and B says it is always pleasant to have a rest.

2. Q favors the *Green Bay Packers* and R the *Chicago Bears*. (Use names of teams). Q says the men from Green Bay are bigger, R says the Bears are faster. Q says the one that is beaten by the other is worst. R says they both play well and that he would like to go to a soccer field again. R suggests that they go and have a drink together.

3. Two soldiers return from a free day. They talk over where they went (to the mountains, to the lake, or to towns); what they did there, the kind of weather they had, whom they met; any adventures when traveling, etc.

4. Discuss with your girl: she wants to go to the movies, you want to go to the football game. In the end you consent to go to the movies, but she promises to come bathing with you tomorrow.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

csacsi (I.A.)	silly (*literally*, little donkey)
enged	he allows *or* lets
érdekel	it interests me
fa (I.B.1)	tree
fáradt	tired
feküdj (le)	lie (down)
futbal (also spelled football) (II.A.2b)	soccer
gondol	he thinks
halászik	he's fishing
inkább	rather
innen	from here, hence
játszik	he plays
jól esik	it is pleasant
kaphat	he can get
kártyázik	he plays cards
korcsolyázik	he skates
mult	after, the past, last (week, month, year)
munka (I.B.1)	work, labor
nő (I.A.)	woman
pihenés (II.A.1b)	resting
rádió (I.A.)	radio
sakkozik	he plays chess
szórakozás (II.A.2b)	entertainment
táncol	he dances
utazzon	travel
ver	he beats
vége	its end
zene (I.B.2)	music

UNIT 17

AN EVENING OUT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Charles and his American girl friend plan to go out.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
	Eve
Where'll we go tonight?	Hova menjünk ma este?
You know I only have three days left.	Tudja, hogy már csak három napom van.
Then I'm going back to the United States.	Azután visszautazom az Egyesült Államokba.
	Károly
I know, that's too bad.	Tudom, elég baj az.
let's do	csináljunk
I tell you what we'll do, dear (*lit.* my heart).	Megmondom, mit csináljunk, szivem.
let's have dinner	vacsorázzunk
First of all, let's have dinner together.	Először is vacsorázzunk együtt.
After dinner, let's go and dance.	Vacsora után menjünk táncolni.
let's seek	keressünk
gypsy	cigány
Let's look for a place where there's gypsy music.	Keressünk egy helyet ahol cigányzene van.

	Eve
magnificent	nagyszerü
That'll be wonderful.	Az nagyszerü lesz.
	Károly
theater	szinház
And tomorrow we'll go to a theater.	És holnap szinházba megyünk.
let's look	nézzünk
nightclub	mulató (hely)
And after that let's drop into a couple of nightclubs.	Utána nézzünk be egy pár mulatóhelyre.
let's buy	vegyünk
opera	opera
And for the evening of the day after tomorrow let's buy tickets for the opera.	És holnapután estére vegyünk jegyet az operába.
	Eve
Where are we to dine?	Hol vacsorázzunk?
	Károly
give it	adja
Give me the papers, my dear.	Adja ide az ujságokat, kedvesem.
	Eve
I'd prefer to go to the island.	Én legszivesebben a szigetre mennék.
It's such nice spring weather.	Olyan szép tavaszi idő van.

	Károly
All right, darling.	Rendben van, drágám.
But this week there are no gypsies at the island restaurant.	De ezen a héten nincs cigány a szigeti vendéglőben.
	Eve
That doesn't matter.	Az nem baj.
shore	part
The cafés on the shore of the Danube are quite near.	A dunaparti kávéházak egész közel vannak.
	Károly
both	mindakét
That's right, both sides are full of cafés.	Igaz, mindakét oldal tele van kávéházzal.
let's start	induljunk
What time shall we start?	Hánykor induljunk?
	Eve
by what by that	minél annál
The sooner the better.	Minél korábban, annál jobb.
It's now a quarter of five.	Most háromnegyed öt van.
By five I must be at a girl-friend's for tea.	Ötre egy barátnőmhöz kell mennem teára.
to change (dress)	átöltözni
Then I'll go back to the hotel to change.	Azután visszamegyek a szállodába átöltözni.
I'll be ready by seven thirty.	Kész leszek fél nyolcra.

	Károly
what for	minek
Why change?	Minek átöltözni?
in this way	igy
You are beautiful the way you are.	Igy is szép.
Why are you laughing?	Mért nevet?
	Eve
man (male)	férfi
A man doesn't understand these things.	Férfi nem érti ezeket a dolgokat.
dot	pont
Be there at seven thirty, sharp.	Legyen ott pont fél nyolcra.
	Károly
as	ahogy
Anything you say.	Ahogy akarja.
let's think	gondoljunk
But let's think about tomorrow a little.	De gondoljunk egy kissé holnapra.
What do you want to see at the theatre?	Mit akar látni a szinházban?
	Eve
nation they play	nemzet adnak
What's playing at the National Theatre?	Mit adnak a Nemzeti Szinházban?

	Károly
Is tomorrow Thursday?	Holnap csütörtök van?
Then nothing, I'm afraid.	Akkor sajnos semmit.
It's closed tomorrow.	Holnap zárva van.
It's only open on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday.	Csak hétfőn, szerdán, és pénteken van nyitva.
	Eve
What's playing at the Hungarian Theatre?	Mit adnak a Magyar Szinházban?
	Károly
new	uj
piece *or* play	darab
A new play by Molnár.	Egy uj Molnár darabot.
I haven't seen it yet.	Én még nem láttam.
	Eve
Let's see it then.	Akkor nézzük meg.
	Károly
he calls	hiv
I'll call up the ticket office later on.	Később felhivom a jegypénztárt.
	Eve
don't	ne
phone	telefonáljon
Don't telephone too late!	Ne telefonáljon tul későn!

	Károly
kiss me Kiss me first, then I'll call them up right away.	csókoljon meg Csókoljon meg először, aztán mindjárt felhivom őket.
	Eve
quickly Not so fast, my friend.	gyorsan Ne olyan gyorsan, barátom.
Let's talk about the opera!	Beszéljünk az operáról.
	Károly
There'll be plenty of seats.	Lesz elég hely.
a couple after We won't be going for a few days.	néhány mulva Csak néhány nap mulva megyünk.
	Eve
The day after tomorrow.	Holnapután.
Oh, it's five after five!	Öt perccel mult öt.
I must hurry.	Sietnem kell.
	Károly
hat Here's your hat.	kalap Itt a kalapja.

	Eve
Where's my coat?	Hol a kabátom?
	Károly
In the bedroom, on the bed.	A hálószobában, az ágyon.
he forgets Haven't you forgotten something?	elfelejt Nem felejtett el valamit?
	Eve
I hope not!	Remélem nem.
	Károly
Yes, you have.	De igen.
You forgot to kiss me.	Elfelejtett megcsókolni.
	Eve
well All right, but only a short one.	na Na jó, de csak egy rövidet.
she waits My girl friend is waiting for me.	vár A barátnőm vár rám.
	Károly
Let her wait.	Várjon.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

HOW TO GIVE ORDERS: THE IMPERATIVE

You have already met the following forms:

adjon	give!
parancsoljon	order!
jöjjön	come!
foglaljon	occupy!
mondja	say it!
menjünk	let's go!
induljunk	let's start!
telefonáljon	telephone!
csókoljon meg	kiss me!
beszéljünk	let's talk!

If you examine these verb forms, you will note that the usual personal suffixes are present—which you have met repeatedly and know well by now. In addition, in each form you will observe an additional element, a *-j;* this is the sign of the imperative, precisely as the *-t* was the sign of the past, the *-n* was the sign of the conditional, and so forth.

vacsorázzunk	let's have dinner!
keressünk	let's look for!
nézzük meg	let's look at it!

When the *-j* comes in contact with certain consonants, it changes into another consonant. Therefore, it will be necessary for you to learn a few simple rules:

a) Stems ending in *-s, -sz, -z:*

s + j becomes *ss* (as in ***keres + jetek***, which becomes ***keressetek*** '(you) look for!').

sz + j becomes *ssz* (as in ***halász + junk***, which becomes ***halásszunk*** 'let us fish').

z + j becomes *zz* (as in ***fáz + jon***, which becomes ***fázzon*** 'let him be cold').

b) Stems ending in *-tsz:*

tsz + j becomes *ss* (as in ***tetsz + jék***, which becomes ***tessék*** 'here you are, please have').

c) Stems ending in *-t:*

st + j becomes *ss*

szt + j becomes *ssz*

t + j becomes *ss*, provided the stem vowel is short, or with the verbs ***lát*** 'he sees', and ***bocsát*** 'he forgives' (as in ***fizet + jünk***, which becomes ***fizessünk*** 'let's pay', or as in ***lát + juk***, which becomes ***lássuk*** 'let's see it').

t + j becomes *ts*, in all other cases.

Now, be sure to keep in mind, in addition to these simple rules, the ones you have learned in *Unit 9*, and elsewhere, concerning the combination of consonants with *j*.

In Hungarian you will have no trouble recognizing the imperative because it will have a *-j* or some of the combined forms listed above. You may have more trouble knowing when to put what you want to say in the imperative. In English we say "I am to," "I ought to," "I should" when we mean that someone expects us to do something or we feel it is our duty to do it. Sometimes we order people to do things we think they should do. In Hungarian all this is expressed by the "imperative". This takes both definite and indefinite endings, like other forms of verbs. The *indefinite* endings, you remember, are used when there is no object (*it* in the sentences below), and the *definite* endings when we do have *it* or some other definite thing expressed. Here are the forms and some possible translations:

1

Indefinite		*Definite*
adjak	I should give (it), I am to give (it)	adjam
adj, adjál	give (it)! you should give (it), you are to give (it)	add, adjad
adjon	let him give (it), he is to give (it), he should give (it)	adja
adjunk	let's give (it), we are to give (it), we should give (it)	adjuk
adjatok	give (it)! you should give (it), you are to give (it)	adjátok
adjanak	let them give (it), they are to give (it), they should give (it)	adják

2

Note these imperatives of *jön* 'he comes', and *megy* 'he goes' (and note that the verb *van* 'he is', has no imperative at all):

jöjjek	I am to come	menjek	I am to go
jöjj(él)	come!	menj(él)	go!

jöjjön	he should come	menjen	let him go
jöjjünk	we should come	menjünk	we should go
jöjjetek	come!	menjetek	go!
jöjjenek	let them come	menjenek	let them go

The verb *jön* often has these three forms, in place of those above (this is quite irregular, but these forms are very common): *gyere* 'come!', *gyerünk* 'let us go', *gyertek* 'come (plural)!'.

3

Note these imperative forms of *tesz* 'he puts'; also, 'he does':

tegyek	I should do	tegyem	I should do it
tégy (tegyél)	do! put!	tedd (tegyed)	do it! put it!
tegyen	he is to do	tegye	let him do it
tegyünk	we should do	tegyük	we should do it
tegyetek	do! put!	tegyétek	do it! put it!
tegyenek	they are to do	tegyék	let them do it

4

Now note these imperatives of *fürdik* 'he is bathing':

fürödjem (fürödjek)	I should bathe
fürödj (fürödjél)	bathe!
fürödjék (fürödjön)	he should bathe
fürödjünk	let's bathe
fürödjetek	bathe!
fürödjenek	they should bathe!

5

Here are the imperatives of *utazik* 'he travels', and *lát* 'he sees' (indefinite forms only):

utazzak	I should travel	lássak	I should see
utazz(ál)	travel!	láss	see!
utazzon	he should travel	lásson	let him see
utazzunk	let's travel	lássunk	let's see
utazzatok	travel!	lássatok	see!
utazzanak	let'em travel	lássanak	let them see

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. **What Would You Say?** (Individual Study)

Complete the following statements with one of the three solutions offered and then read the complete statement aloud:

1. Ha ma hétfő van,
   - *a*) holnap vasárnap lesz.
   - *b*) tegnap péntek volt.
   - *c*) holnapután szerda lesz.
2. Hatszor huszonegy az
   - *a*) százhuszonhat.
   - *b*) hatszázhusz.
   - *c*) hatszázhuszonegy.
3. A szinházba az ember
   - *a*) halászni megy.
   - *b*) szórakozni megy.
   - *c*) fürdeni megy.
4. Nem láttam a férjem már
   - *a*) három hete.
   - *b*) kilenc perc mulva.
   - *c*) minden hónap tizenötödikén.
5. Ha fáradt, jól esik
   - *a*) a sok munka.
   - *b*) a pihenés és a játék.
   - *c*) az eső.
6. Ha azt akarja, hogy kivasalják a nadrágját,
   - *a*) hivjon egy rendőrt.
   - *b*) siessen egy kalauzhoz.
   - *c*) menjen egy szabóhoz.
7. Ha nyitva van a rádió a másik szobában,
   - *a*) akkor lehet a zenét hallani.
   - *b*) akkor telefonálni kell az orvosnak.
   - *c*) akkor nem szabad megmosni az arcát.
8. Aki személyvonattal utazik,
   - *a*) csokoládét tesz a zsebébe.
   - *b*) borravalót ad a kijáratnál.
   - *c*) később érkezik meg, mint aki gyorsvonattal megy.
9. Ha három hónappal ezelőtt február volt,
   - *a*) most tél közepe van.
   - *b*) most május van.
   - *c*) a napok rövidebbek, mint három hónappal ezelőtt.
10. Feketét szoktak inni
    - *a*) citrom vagy narancslével.
    - *b*) barackpálinkával.
    - *c*) cukorral és tejjel.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again, if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Anecdote about the gentleman who liked his wife's kisses.*

Vacsora után négy-öt ur ült az asztal körül.

Már megittak egy-egy pohár pálinkát és azután —mint férfiak szokták—nőkről beszéltek.

Az egyik, egy fehér haju ur, azt mondja:

—"Én sok, sok lányt csókoltam meg:—
északit, nyugatit, keletit, és délit,
Amerikában, Olaszországban, Angliában, Németországban, és itt Magyarországon.

De higgyék el nekem, uraim:

nincs aki a feleségemnél jobban csókol!"

Azt mondja erre egy másik férfi:

—"Uraim, a barátunknak igaza van".

2. *Anecdote about the bright busboy.*

Egy ur épen kifizette a számláját a szállodában és a kijárathoz sietett.

A vonatja fél tizenkettőkor indult és már öt perccel mult negyed tizenkettő.

Épen a kocsiba akart lépni, de az ajtónál megált és azt mondta egy kis fiunak:

—"Fiam, elfelejtettem az egyik csomagomat.

Menj föl gyorsan a szobámba és azután gyere vissza gyorsan.
Azt hiszem, hogy a csomag az asztalon fekszik.
Siess nagyon, mert már csak öt percem van."
Négy perc mulva vissza jön a fiu.
Azt kérdezi az ur:
—"Ott volt a csomag az asztalon?"
Mondja erre a kis fiu:
—"Igen. Ott volt, nagyságos uram".

3. *Anecdote about cigarettes and matches.*

A személyvonaton ült egy ember.
Előtte ült egy másik.
Az egyik kivett a zsebéből egy doboz cigarettát,
és azután azt kérdezte a másiktól:
—Bocsánatot kérek, van egy gyufája?
A másik, aki nagyon szeretett volna dohányozni, gyorsan azt mondta:
—Igen, van gyufám, de sajnos nincs cigarettám.
—Akkor jó. Minek magának a gyufa?
Adja ide az egész dobozt.

4. *Stephen is describing to his sister how he spent the previous night.*

Nővér

Miért jöttél olyan későn haza?

István

A szinházban voltam.

Nővér

A szinházban? Reggel fél négyig? Kivel?

István

Egy amerikai lánnyal.
Szinház után elmentünk egy pár mulatóba.
Magyar zenét akart hallani.

Nővér

Ha magyar zenét akar hallani, miért megy mulatóba?
Mulatóban külföldi zene van—
cigányok kávéházban szoktak játszani.
Ki ez az amerikai lány? Én ismerem?

István

Nem hiszem. Egy repülőgépgyáros lánya;
az apjának nagyon sok pénze van.
Szórakozni jött Pestre.

Nővér

Persze ő fizette a számlát tegnap este!

István

Dehogy! Én fizettem.
Igen kellemes este volt; nagyon jól mulattam.
Érdekes lány.

Nővér

Neked minden lány érdekes aki irni és olvasni tud.

István

Ne beszélj igy a barátaimról!

Ez a lány nem csak angolul, németül és olaszul beszél jól,

de tud egy kissé magyarul is.

Nővér

Sokat ittál?

István

Én nem szoktam sokat inni:

csak egy kis bort, és pár pohár barackpálinkát ittam.

Kész van már az a kávé?

Tudod, hogy nagyon fáj a fejem ma reggel.

Nővér

Tudom! De nincs már "ma reggel"

—háromnegyed kettő van, és délután.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. Ask a lady to go out with you. She is not interested. You ask if she would like a movie, she says at a movie it is cold. You suggest a dance, with gypsy music, she says it is too warm. You suggest some sport, she says she does not like it. You suggest the opera or theater; she says she does not want to dress up. You say you think you'll stay at home with your pipe and your radio. She says that would be very nice, you should have thought of that before.

2. You discuss with a friend the prices of movies,

theaters and opera on various days of the week. Each of you tells the other an anecdote (pretend it was an incident in one of the pictures; for example, I saw a good movie the day before yesterday, etc. In one place, etc.).

3. Invite a girl to go to a night club with you. She says she has to change her dress and will see you in an hour. Call at her door and give her candy and/or flowers. Take her in your car. Order drinks, talk about the music and the dancing.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

adnak	they play (in theater)
ahogy	as
annál	by that (much)
átöltözik	he changes (clothing)
cigány (II.A.2b)	gypsy
darab (II.A.2a)	piece *or* play
elég baj az	that's too bad that's bad enough that's pretty bad
elfelejt	he forgets
férfi (stem irregular)	man (male)
gyorsan	quickly
hiv	he calls
igy	in this way thus
kalap (II.A.2a)	hat
mindakettő (-két)	both
minek	what for, to what
minél	by how much
mulató (I.A.) *or* mulatóhely (II.A.1a)	nightclub
mulva	after
na	well
nagyszerü	terrific
nemzet (II.A.1a)	nation
néhány	a couple

néz	he looks
opera (I.B.1)	opera
part (II.A.2a)	shore *or* bank (of river *or* lake *or* sea)
pont	exactly *or* dot *or* point
szinház (II.A.1a)	theater
telefonál	he telephones
uj	new
vacsorázik	he's dining
vár	he waits

UNIT 18

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN HUNGARIAN?

To the Group Leader: Like Units 6 and 12, this unit is a review of all the work done up to date. In general, the procedure will be the same as in those units.

In Section A of this unit are anecdotes followed by a series of statements. The statements which are based on the anecdotes are to be used like the T–F statements of earlier review units. The Guide is to read the anecdotes and the statements to the group. If you have no Guide, choose, or have the group choose, one of the students to do the reading. The anecdotes and statements will be found in the Guide's *Manual*. Each statement is to be read twice and the number of each statement is to be called out so that the members of the group can mark *T* or *F* the corresponding numbers in their books.

After the reading of the anecdote, explain that the first statement will be read as an example. The statement: "A bankár feleségének nem volt szobalánya," means: "The banker's wife had no chambermaid" and should be marked as *F*, since the story definitely indicates that the banker's wife had a chambermaid.

After the quiz is over, correct it with the group as in Units 6 and 12.

This Unit is another review of the work done up to this point. For the most part, it is like Units 6 and 12. The first section will be a true-false quiz. A number of anecdotes in Hungarian will be read to you by the Guide or by a member of the group. Listen carefully because after each anecdote there will be read a number of statements about the story you have heard. You will mark these statements as either *T* or *F*, according to what you have understood about the anecdote. After the first anecdote has been read, the first statement will be given you as a sample.

When all the anecdotes have been read and you have had a chance to mark all the statements, the Guide or Leader will go over the answers with you.

Section B—How Would You Say It?

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Hungarian for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

I

1. My dear, you must change before we go to visit them.
2. I get up exactly at a quarter of seven every morning.
3. Have you seen the new Thornton Wilder play yet?
4. The ticket office was closed.
5. I am awfully sorry I sat on your hat.
6. Phone for a policeman.
7. He knows a terrific nightclub.
8. The later you come the better.

II

1. It's impossible to skate so far south.
2. Let's listen to some gypsy music on the radio.
3. Could I get another glass of water with some ice, please?
4. I've a couple of weeks off.
5. How far is the station from here?
6. I'd rather play chess than cards.
7. She isn't interested in soccer.
8. If you've got a headache, go to bed.

III

1. Let's sit under the apple tree.
2. He stayed with us often.
3. I'm going by the noon local.
4. Is there a good picture at the movie?
5. Listen to me and don't speak so much.
6. He's my best friend: look him up when you get there.
7. I'm a lieutenant in the Hungarian army.
8. He's an acquaintance of mine.

IV

1. I laughed a lot at that picture.
2. This early spring weather is too cool.
3. The door was open.
4. Let's both go.
5. I've finished (reading) all the Sunday papers.
6. This coffee is terrible.
7. Have dinner with us.
8. What's in that package?

V

1. The express doesn't stop at every little station.
2. Porter, carry these bags to the north entrance.
3. Open the window in that smoker.
4. What's the number of the house?
5. I gave my ticket to the other conductor.
6. Have a nice trip.
7. I was standing in the court when it fell down from the third floor.
8. Why don't you go by the local?

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: "Hogy mondják magyarul . . .?"

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

I

Here is a list of ten verbs. Put each in an order giving (imperative) form and make up a complete sentence using each order.

a) áll

b) becsomagol

c) borotvál

d) csalódik

e) csókol

f) dolgozik

g) elfelejt

h) elfogad

i) emlékszik

j) enged

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....
7. ....
8. ....
9. ....
10. ....

II

Figure out this puzzle. If you get the right answer, explain how you got it, and why it is the only possible solution; if you fail, explain why you can't figure it out. Members of the group should discuss.

Volt egyszer két ur.

A két ur elment halászni a Balatonra.

Este, amikor elindultak haza, azt mondja az egyik ur a másiknak:

—Adj nekem egy halat.

Mondja a másik:

—Minek neked egy hal?

—Ha adsz nekem egy halat, nekem kétszer annyi halam lesz mint neked.

Mondja erre a másik:

—Akkor inkább te adj nekem egyet.

—Miért?

—Mert ha te adsz nekem egyet, nekem pont annyi halam lesz mint neked.

HÁNY HALA VOLT AZ EGYIKNEK?

HÁNY HALA VOLT A MÁSIKNAK?

III

Here are ten verbs, each followed by a number of preverbs that may be added to it. Make up a complete sentence using each verb with every preverb that may be added.

a) MEGY: be, el, fel, le, körül, össze, rá, vissza.
b) VISZ: be, el, fel, le, tul.
c) VESZ: be, el, fel, ki, le, meg, hozzá, vissza.
d) VER: be, el, fel, ki, meg, bele, össze, vissza.
e) VÁR: el, meg, vissza.
f) VÁG: be, el, fel, ki, le, meg, bele, körül, össze, rá.
g) ÜL: be, le, bele, hozzá, mellé, össze, rá.
h) TUD: meg.
i) TEST: be, el, fel, ki, le, meg, bele, hozzá, mellé, tele, tul.
j) SIET: be, el, fel, ki, le, hozzá, vissza.

IV

The following sentences contain English words in parentheses, which should be translated and fitted into their respective contexts.

1. Nagyon (I'd be happy) ha (you could come) szerdán.
2. Ha nem (I were) éhes, nem (I'd hurry).
3. Én nem (I'd put) azt bele a pohárba.
4. (I'd show) a templomokat is ha (there were) idejük.
5. Nem (I'd live) náluk semmiért.

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section D. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check your pronunciation and the correctness of your Hungarian; if not, other members of your group will criticize.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting from two to five minutes. Everyone should take part as often as possible. Remember to begin and end conversations with the proper greeting.

By this time you have more words to use and more subjects to talk about. The group will be given one hundred minutes and you should be able to talk longer on one topic. Don't be afraid to bring in other things that you can think of and talk about besides those suggested here. Let the talk be as natural as possible, try to answer what is asked you and to keep the conversation moving by asking questions in turn.

Suggested Topics

1. Going to dance.

(Include: buying roses, calling on date, meeting her family, going to dine at a place where there's gypsy music, then to a nightclub, going for a walk, then home.)

2. Going to a play.

(Include: phoning for a reservation, picking up the tickets, getting dressed, going to play, discussing the author, plot, characters, scenery, after the play.)

3. Enjoying your day off.

(Include: getting up late, having a big breakfast in bed, discussing with your family plans for the day, arguing about various preferences, finally deciding to stay in during the morning reading the papers, playing chess or cards, and going fishing in the afternoon, and to the opera in the evening.)

4. Tell a joke in Hungarian.

5. Paying a visit.

(Include: calling on a Hungarian family, friends of your father's, being announced by the maid, introducing yourself, questions about your family, how they are and what they are doing, meeting the daughter of the family, who works in a bank, and the boy, who is a student, being asked to dinner, and making a date with the family for next Sunday at Margaret's Island.)

6. Meeting a friend.

(Include: walking on the street, passing a man who is hurrying by, recognizing a friend you haven't seen in years, he thinking your face seems familiar, you telling where you've met and when, renewing friendship by going out for a drink together and sitting in a café to talk over old times.)

7. Tell the plot of a recent play or movie you've seen.

8. Discussing the weather and doing something about it.

(Include: complaints about the heat, having cold drinks, deciding that bathing will be best and choosing a bath, going there by street-car or car.)

9. Going to church.

(Include: Sunday morning, discussion what to do, wanting to go to church not far from home, but deciding to go to the Cathedral for the morning service.)

10. Travelling.

(Include: preparations for a trip, packing, rushing to station, buying tickets, arguing with porter, buying some fruit and magazines, asking the conductor various questions, meeting an acquaintance in the smoker, going together to the diner and ordering a meal.)

PART FOUR

UNIT 19

THE MAIL

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Mr. Miller is expecting his wife, and meanwhile he and Mr. Forester take care of the mail.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
Mr. Forester	*Erdős ur*
When's your wife coming?	Hánykor érkezik a felesége?
Mr. Miller	*Molnár ur*
exactly	pontosan
I don't know exactly.	Nem tudom pontosan.
some time	valamikor
toward	felé
I think some time around noon.	Azt hiszem, valamikor dél felé.
telegram	sürgöny
I expect a telegram from her (*lit.* her telegram) any minute.	Minden percben várom a sürgönyét.
war	háboru
peace	béke
Telegrams take longer in war time than they do in peace time.	A háboru alatt sürgönyök nem jönnek olyan gyorsan mint békeidőben.

	Erdős
Unfortunately, that's true.	Sajnos ez igaz.
he mails	felad
I have to mail a package at the post [office].	Fel kell adnom egy csomagot a postán.
Let's go down together.	Menjünk le együtt.
he can speak	beszélhet
on the way	ut közben
We can talk on the way.	Beszélhetünk ut közben.
	Molnár
I've got to get some cigarettes too.	Cigarettát is kell vennem.
	Erdős
general store	trafik*
Then we'll go to a general store.	Akkor bemegyünk egy trafikba.
	Molnár
he can stay	maradhat
a long time	soká
All right, but I can't stay away long.	Rendben van, de nem maradhatok el sokáig.
it may come	jöhet
meanwhile	közben
That telegram may come meanwhile.	A sürgöny közben megjöhet.
	Erdős
The post office isn't far.	A postahivatal nincs messze.
We'll be back in ten minutes.	Tiz perc mulva vissza leszünk.

**Trafik:* You'll find many stores by this name in Budapest and other towns, selling particularly government monopolies (stamps, post cards, tobacco, cigars, cigarettes and matches), and having public telephone facilities.

	Molnár
he recommends	ajánl
All the same, I suggest we take the street car.	Mégis azt ajánlom menjünk villamossal.
someone	valaki
Someone's at the door.	Valaki van az ajtónál.
Please see who it is.	Kérem nézze meg, hogy ki az.
	Erdős
mailman	póstás
It's only the mailman.	Csak a póstás.
registered	ajánlott
for you *or* him	számára
There's a registered letter for you.	Egy ajánlott levél van a számára.
	Molnár
he signs	aláír
Please sign [for] it.	Kérem irja alá.
	Erdős
Here you are.	Tessék.
It's from Italy.	Olaszországból küldték.
	Molnár
Thank you.	Köszönöm.
more	több
Aren't there any more letters?	Nincs több levél?

	Erdős
postcard	levelezőlap
Only a postcard for me.	Csak egy levelezőlap számomra.
From my son (who is) in Germany.	A fiamtól aki Németországban van.
	Molnár
he may go	mehet
I'm ready: we can go.	Kész vagyok: mehetünk.
What does your son do?	Mit csinál a fia?
	Erdős
[He's] only a student.	Még csak diák.
he locks	bezár
Don't forget to lock the door.	Ne felejtse el bezárni az ajtót.
oh	jaj
heavy	nehéz
Oh, but this package is heavy!	Jaj de nehéz ez a csomag!
he helps	segit
Please help me carry it.	Kérem, segitsen vinni.
	Molnár
light	könnyü
It's not light.	Nem könnyü.
What's inside?	Mi van benne?

Erdős	
I am sending my son's clothes.	A fiam ruháit küldöm.
His winter coat is inside.	A télikabátja van benne.
And three pairs of shoes.	És három pár cipő.
And the boy's mother is sending him a whole ham, and some chocolate for the holidays.	És a fiu anyja küld neki az ünnepre egy egész sonkát, meg egy kis csokoládét.
Molnár	
Here we are at the entrance.	Itt vagyunk a bejáratnál.
Go to the second window.	Menjen a második ablakhoz.
stamp	bélyeg
I want to buy some stamps.	Én bélyeget akarok venni.
(*To the clerk*:)	(*A hivatalnokhoz*:)
Please give me five (piece) twenty fillér stamps and thirteen ten fillér ones.	Kérem adjon nekem öt darab huszfilléres bélyeget és tizenhárom tizfilléreset.
How much is that altogether?	Mennyi az összesen?
Hivatalnok	
That's two thirty.	Az kettő harminc.
Közben Erdős	
I'd like to mail this package.	Szeretném ezt a csomagot feladni.
I'm sending it to Germany.	Németországba küldöm.
Hivatalnok	
In war time you can't send it registered.	Háboru alatt nem lehet ajánlva küldeni.

Erdős	
That doesn't matter.	Az nem baj.
How much is it?	Mibe kerül?
Hivatalnok	
kilogram*	kiló*
One kilo is thirty-four fillér.	Egy kiló harmincnégy fillérbe kerül.
This is sixty-six kilograms; that's twenty-two pengős forty-four.	Ez hatvanhat kiló; huszonkét péngő negyvennégy.
Erdős	
That's very expensive.	Az nagyon drága.
Here's the money.	Tessék a pénz.
Miller, I'm ready.	Kész vagyok, Molnár.
Don't go that way!	Ne arra menjen!
The side entrance is not open.	Az oldalbejárat nincs nyitva.
Molnár	
Then let's go out the main entrance.	Akkor menjünk a főbejáraton át.
And let's hurry home.	És siessünk haza.
The telegram may come any time.	A sürgöny akármikor jöhet.
Erdős	
What do they do if there's nobody at home?	Mit csinálnak ha nincs senki otthon?

*One kilogram = 2.2 pounds. To convert pounds to kilograms multiply by 5 and divide by 11.

	Molnár
They take it back to the office.	Visszaviszik a hivatalba.
In that case we'll have to go in for the telegram.	Akkor be kell menni a sürgönyért.
	Erdős
from where	honnan
will	fog
Where will your wife wire from?	Honnan fog a felesége sürgönyözni?
	Molnár
She didn't say.	Azt nem mondta.
Here we are at home.	Itthon vagyunk.
There's no telegram yet.	Még nincs sürgöny.
he speaks	szól
But the telephone's ringing in the other room.	De a másik szobában szól a telefon.
Perhaps [it's] my wife!	Talán a feleségem!
(*Into the phone*:)	(*A telefonba*:)
Who is it? (Who speaks there?)	Ki beszél ott?
Yes, it's me.	Igen, én vagyok.
Where are you, dear?	Hol vagy, szivem?
What station are you at?	Melyik pályaudvaron?
At the East [Station]?	A keletin?
O. K., I'll be down with the car.	Rendben van, mindjárt jövök a kocsival.
Good-bye, darling.	Viszontlátásra, drágám.

Section B—Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences

1. Word Study

A. THE SUFFIX *-ért* 'for'

a sürgönyért	for the telegram
miért	why? what for?

Here you have another noun suffix: *-ért* 'for'. It may be attached to any stem, whether or not it contains front or back vowels, and may also be attached to pronouns, and, in turn, the usual set of suffixes may be attached to it. In other words, it behaves just like the others you have had. More examples: ***pénzért mindent lehet kapni*** 'it is possible to get everything for money'; ***siessen tejért*** 'hurry for milk'; ***kilenc pengőért vettem*** 'I bought it for nine pengő'; ***mennyiért?*** 'for how much?'; ***ezért jöttem haza*** 'I came home for this'; ***értük küldtem a kocsit*** 'I sent the car for them'.

B. MORE ABOUT PRONOUNS

You have had all of the following forms, or component parts of them. Note now how they are put together:

ki? who?	***aki*** he who	***akárki*** anybody	***valaki*** somebody	***senki*** nobody	***mindenki*** everybody
mi? what?	***ami*** what	***akármi*** anything	***valami*** something	***semmi*** nothing	(***minden***) every
milyen? what sort?	***amilyen*** that sort	***akármilyen*** any sort	***valamilyen*** some sort	***semmilyen*** no sort	
melyik? which one?	***amelyik*** the one	***akármelyik*** any one	***valamelyik*** some one	***semelyik*** none	
mely? which?	***amely*** that which	***akármely*** whichever	***valamely*** some one		
mennyi? how much?	***ammenyi*** that much	***akármennyi*** any amount	***valamennyi*** some amount	***semennyi*** no amount, none	

hány? how many?	*ahány* that many	*akárhány* any amount	*valahány* some amount	*sehány* no amount, none	
hol? where?	*ahol* where	*akárhol* anywhere	*valahol* somewhere	*sehol* nowhere	*mindenhol* everywhere
honnan? from where?	*ahonnan* from where	*akárhonnan* from anywhere	*valahonnan* from somewhere	*sehonnan* from nowhere	*mindenhonnan* from everywhere
hova? where to?	*ahova* whither	*akárhova* anywhere to	*valahova* somewhere to	*sehova* nowhere to	*mindenhova* to everywhere
merre? in what direction?	*amerre* in that direction	*akármerre* in any direction	*valamerre* in some direction	*semerre* in no direction	
mikor? when?	*amikor* then	*akármikor* any time	*valamikor* sometime	*semikor* never	
hogy? *hogyan?* how?	*ahogy* *ahogyan* so	*akárhogy* *akárhogyan* any way	*valahogy* *valahogyan* some way	*sehogy* *sehogyan* no way	*mindenhogy* *mindenhogyan* every way

Note the following points: (*a*) for *akár-* one may substitute freely *bár-* without any change in meaning; (*b*) to many of the forms the usual suffixes can be attached: thus: *melyikről beszél?* 'of which one are you speaking?', *hányszor volt ott?* 'how many times was he there?', *jöjjön akármerről* 'come from any direction', *semelyikre sem néz* 'he does not look at any (of them)', *játszik amelyikkel akar* 'he plays with whichever he wants'.

C. SIMPLE VERB FORMS

Here is a table for your convenience. It is a representation at a glance of the various sounds which signify the past, the conditional, and the imperative in Hungarian. In the next Unit you will have opportunity to see once more how these suffixes are put together with the stem types. Study the tables carefully.

VERB SUFFIXES

	Present	*Past*
INDICATIVE		-t -ett -ött -ott
CONDITIONAL	-né ne -ná (na)	(Use a compound form: -t -ett -ött *plus* volna) -ott
IMPERATIVE	-j (see sound combinations pp. 289–90)	

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

Section C—Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

A. With the vocabulary that you have, you should be able to answer questions on a general subject without expecting to find the exact answer in the *Basic Sentences*. The Guide or the group as a whole should check to determine whether or not your answer makes sense. Prepare oral answers to the following:

1. Mi szokott gyorsabban megérkezni: egy repülőlevél vagy egy sürgöny?
2. Ki kap több pénzt, egy tiszt vagy egy katona?
3. Hova szokott egy katona levelet irni?
4. Mit tesznek narancslébe, hogy hidegebb legyen?
5. Hol szokott táncolni?
6. Van rádiója?
7. Mikor nagyobb egy hadsereg: háboruban, vagy békében?
8. Mi olcsóbb, egy villamosjegy, vagy egy operajegy?
9. Hol a maga családja?
10. Hanyadika van ma?

B. In the following sentences the suffixes of certain words are omitted. Put them in.

1. Három(-) négy az tizenkettő.
2. Reggel(-) est(-) dolgozik.
3. Kérem, ad(-) oda a nővérem(-).
4. Tele van a pósta hivatalnok(-).
5. Hoz(-) egy szék(-) a konyhá(-).
6. Ez a csomag sok(-) nehez(-), mint a másik.
7. Feküdj le az ágy(-).
8. Mindenki magá(-) vár, ne felejt(-) el!
9. A szinház(-) találkozt(-) elő(-).
10. Kérem, jelent(-) be a tiszt ur(-).

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Anecdote about the farmer who went to town.*

Egy földmüvelő egy szép napon elutazott a nagy városba,
hogy nappal megnézze a Gazdasági Muzeumot,
és este a mulatóhelyeket.
Az állomástól a szállodába ment,
és mielőtt lefeküdt az ágyba, megkérdezte a szobalányt,
hogy hánykor szoktak étkezni ebben a szállodában.
Azt mondja a szobalány:
—Reggeli héttől tizenegyig van;
ebéd déltől fél háromig;
és vacsora öttől fél tizig.
—Az elég baj (mondja a földmüvelő),
mert akkor nem lesz elég időm körülnézni ebben a városban!

2. *Why the soldier got up at breakfast.*

Az orvos vidékre küldött egy beteg katonát.
A katona egy kis szállodában lakott, ahol
jól esett neki a pihenés,
és minden nagyon kellemes volt.
De egy szép napon egy hadnagy érkezett a faluba,
és ő is abban a szállodában szállt meg.

A katona nem szerette ezt a tisztet,
és nem nagyon örült, hogy az is ott lakott.
Egy reggel a katona a szálloda vendéglőjében ült
és reggelizett.
A tiszt is bejött reggelire.
Ahogy jött be az ajtón, a katona fölállt.
A tiszt kedves akart lenni és igy szólt:
—Üljön le, üljön le!
—Miért? (Kérdezte a katona.)
Nem szabad nekem a másik asztalról a vajat elvennem?

3. *About the lady who couldn't sleep.*

Volt egyszer egy ember
aki egy kis faluból jött a nagy városba,
ahol sok-sok pénzt keresett.
Egy szép napon meghivta az anyját
(aki mindig falun lakott),
hogy jöjjön el a várost megnézni.
Az asszony el is jött,
és a fia a legjobb és legdrágább szállodában vett ki
egy nagyszerü szobát, fürdővel.
Egy pár nap mulva azt kérdezi a fia,
hogy tetszik neki a szobája a szállodában.
Mondja erre az anyja:
—A szoba nagyon szép,
és az ágy nagyon jó,
és a Dunát is lehet az ablakomból látni,
és minden nagyon kellemes.
De sajnos egy nagy baj van:
egész éjjelen át várnom kell.
—Miért? Mire kell várnod?
—Mert csak egy bejárat van a fürdőszobába,
az én szobámon át.
Nem tudom bezárni az ajtómat,
mert lehet, hogy éjjel valaki fürödni akar
és akkor a szobámon kell, hogy átmenjen.

4. *About the egg that was fresh.*

Volt egyszer egy katona, aki feleséget keresett.
Egy reggel bement a kávéházba reggelizni.
Kért a pincértől két friss tojást.
Amikor megkapta a tojást,
azt látta, hogy az egyikre rá van valami irva.
Ez állt a tojáson:
"Tizennyolc éves szép falusi lány vagyok.
Szeretnék férjhez menni.
Ha szeretne velem találkozni,
irjon mindjárt erre a cimre:
Rózsa utca huszonegy, első emelet négy".
A katona gyorsan irt egy levelet, mindjárt

lement a póstára és feladta.
Elmult egy pár nap
és azután ez a levelezőlap érkezett:

"Kedves uram, levele tul későn érkezett
Férjnél vagyok,
és már van négy fiam és három lányom".

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. *A* asks a stranger in the street to direct him to the postoffice. The other gives him the address and explains how to get there by street-car. *A* gets almost lost, and has to ask a policeman, who tells him it's by the big church. He finally finds it, goes in, and buys a number of postcards, stamps, airmail stamps, and also sends a telegram home, thanking his parents for a package he just received.

2. *A* and *B* (two soldiers) have just received a package in the mails. They open it, and see it's from home, with a lot of food-stuffs inside, including a whole chicken, a home-made pie, some oranges, and beneath a bit of cloth they find—some whisky.

3. A gentleman expects a phone call from his son, who is abroad, and discusses with a friend about what his son is doing in the foreign country (he plays football for his own country). Instead of the phone call finally a telegram comes, asking the father to meet him at the Northern Station tonight at quarter past seven by car, because he is bringing home a big package for his mother. The father decides to stop off on the way to the station to buy some theater tickets for his wife for tomorrow, which is a holiday.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

ajánl	he recommends
ajánlott (levél)	registered (letter)
aláír	he signs
beszélhet	he can speak
bezár	he locks
béke (I.B.2)	peace
erdős	forested
felad	he mails (*literally*, he puts up)
felé	towards
fog	he will, he holds, catches
háboru (I.A.)	war
honnan	from where
jaj!	oh! ouch!
jöhet	he may come
kiló (I.A.)	kilogram
könnyü	easy, light
közben	meanwhile
levelezőlap (II.A.2a)	postcard
maradhat	he can stay
mehet	he may go
molnár	miller
nehéz	heavy, difficult
oldalbejárat (II.A.2a)	side entrance
pontos(an)	exact(ly), punctual(ly)
póstás (II.A.2b)	mailman
segit	he helps
soká	a long time
sürgöny (II.A.1b)	telegram
számára	for him, for (polite) you
szól	he speaks, it (usually a bell) rings
több	more
trafik	general store
utközben	on the way

UNIT 20

AT THE BANK

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

A soldier talks to the owner of the hotel.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
	Katona
Give me my bill, please.	Kérem a számlámat.
Owner:	*Tulajdonos:*
What's your name, please?	Mi a neve, kérem?
	Katona
Thomas	Tamás
My name is Thomas Miller.	Molnár Tamás a nevem.
My room number is 39.	A szobám száma harminckilenc.
	Tulajdonos
Yes, I remember.	Igen, emlékszem.
You came two weeks ago.	Maga két héttel ezelőtt jött.
satisfied	megelégedve
service	kiszolgálás
I hope you were satisfied with the service.	Remélem meg volt elégedve a kiszolgálással.

	Katona
Yes, everything was all right.	Igen, minden rendben volt.
high	magas
Of course, your prices are high.	Igaz, az áraik magasak.
first class	elsőrangu
But your restaurant is first class.	De a vendéglőjük elsőrangu.
small change	aprópénz
Sorry, I've only got small change with me.	Sajnos csak aprópénz van nálam.
check	csekk
Will you take a check?	Elfogad egy csekket?
	Tulajdonos
I'm sorry, I can't accept it.	Sajnos, nem fogadhatom el.
	Katona
Then where's the nearest bank?	Akkor hol a legközelebbi bank?
	Tulajdonos
Just opposite the theater.	Pont szemben a szinházzal.
	Katona
I'll be back in a quarter of an hour.	Egy negyed óra mulva vissza jövök.
servant	szolga
Meanwhile have the servant bring down my baggage.	Addig a szolga hozza le a poggyászomat.
Good day.	Jó napot.

	Tulajdonos
Good-bye.	Isten vele.
	(*A bankban.*)
	Katona
he exchanges	vált
I'd like to cash a check.	Szeretnék egy csekket beváltani.
	Hivatalnok
deposit	betét
Have you got a deposit with us?	Van nálunk betétje?
	Katona
No, I haven't.	Nincs.
	Hivatalnok
he identifies	igazol
Can you identify yourself?	Tudja magát igazolni?
	Katona
naturally	természetesen
Naturally!	Természetesen!
addressed	cimezve
This letter is addressed to me.	Ez a levél nekem van cimezve.
red	vörös
cross	kereszt
It's from the American Red Cross.	Az amerikai Vörös-Kereszttől van.

	Hivatalnok
with photograph	fényképes
identification	igazolvány
We can only accept identification cards with photographs.	Csak fényképes igazolványt fogadhatunk el.
Have you got one with you?	Van magánál?
	Katona
I think so.	Azt hiszem van.
official	hivatalos
I've an official identification from the lieutenant.	Van egy hivatalos igazolványom a hadnagy urtól.
he answers	felel
Will that be all right (*lit.* be suitable)?	Megfelel?
	Hivatalnok
It will.	Meg.
But please hurry up.	De kérem siessen.
long	hosszu
line	sor
behind	mögött
There's a long line waiting behind you.	Maga mögött hosszu sor vár.
	Katona
I beg your pardon.	Bocsánatot kérek.
he finds	talál
I don't find it in my trouser's pocket.	Nem találom a nadrágzsebemben.
lady	hölgy
Perhaps I'll let this lady go first.	Talán előre engedem ezt a hölgyet.

	Hölgy
young	fiatal
Thank you, young man.	Köszönöm, fiatal ember.
Are you from the United States?	Maga az Egyesült Államokból jön?
	Katona
Yes, madam.	Igen, nagyságos asszony.
	Hölgy
Why is your face so red?	Miért olyan vörös az arca?
Is there something wrong?	Valami baj van?
old	öreg
You can tell an old woman.	Megmondhatja egy öreg aszszonynak.
	Katona
so	ugy
it seems	látszik
It seems I left my identification at home.	Ugy látszik, otthon felejtettem az igazolványomat.
Now I can't cash this check.	Most nem tudom ezt a csekket beváltani.
	Hölgy
word	szó
How much is involved?	Mennyiről van szó?
	Katona
Only three hundred pengő.	Csak háromszáz pengőről.

	Hölgy
Give it to me.	Adja ide.
I'll be glad to sign it.	Szivesen aláirom.
They know me here.	Engem itt ismernek.
Please, cash this.	Kérem, váltsa ezt be.
	Hivatalnok
But, dear lady . . .	De kedves nagyságos asszony . . .
	Hölgy
Don't talk so much.	Ne beszéljen annyit.
I have a boy in the army [myself].	Nekem is van egy fiam a hadseregben.
He forgets everything too.	Ő is elfelejt mindent.
Where are you staying, my boy?	Hol lakik, fiam?
	Katona
Until tonight, in the hotel.	Ma estig a szállodában.
But I must go back to Budapest on the express.	Vissza kell mennem Budapestre a gyorsvonattal.
	Hölgy
future	jövő
My daughter and I will be there next week.	A lányom és én ott leszünk jövő héten.
Look us up.	Keressen fel.
Here's my address.	Itt a cimem.
	Katona
Thanks very much.	Nagyon köszönöm.
That's nice of you. (*Lit.* I accept it gladly.)	Szivesen elfogadom.

Section B—Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. HOW TO SAY 'CAN' IN HUNGARIAN

beszélhetünk	we can speak
maradhatok	I can stay
mehetünk	we can go
jöhet	he can come
elfogadhatom	I can accept it
megmondhatja	you can tell it

To say 'can' in Hungarian, you use the suffix *-hat/-het* (in accordance with vowel harmony), and add it directly to the stem; to it, in turn, you add the other suffixes, if any. Note the following constructions:

fogad	he receives, he bets
elfogad	he accepts
elfogadhat	he can (*or* may) accept
elfogadhatom	I can (*or* may) accept it
elfogadhatnám	I could accept it
elfogadhattam volna	I could (*or* might) have accepted it

(*Note:* the meaning of this suffix overlaps the meaning of both 'can' and 'may', and hence you can often translate it either way.) Note further these forms: *jöhet* 'he can come', *mehet* 'he can go', and *lehet* 'it can be, it is possible'.

tudja magát igazolni?	can you identify yourself?

The verb *tud* means, literally, 'he knows'. Often it may be used in the place of the suffix *-hat/-het*; thus, you may say, *nem ehet* 'he can (may) not eat', and *nem tud enni* 'he can not eat' (that is to say, he is not able to).

B. HOW TO SAY 'ADDRESSED, SATISFIED, ETC.'

megelégedve	satisfied
cimezve	addressed

To the English suffix '-ed', as used above, corresponds the Hungarian suffix *-va/-ve*, used in accordance with vowel harmony. Note that the verb *van* 'is' can not receive this suffix. Some more examples: *adva egy szám* 'given a number', *ki van fáradva* 'he is tired out', *még nincs megcsinálva* 'it isn't done yet'.

C. VERB CHARTS

Now, here are some charts once more to sum up your knowledge about the Hungarian verb up to this point. As usual, it is not so much to be memorized as rather to serve you as a guide. Therefore you should study all the endings carefully to get the greatest amount of profit from the arrangement.

CHART OF HUNGARIAN VERB ENDINGS

Present			*Past*	
Indef.		*Def.*	*Indef.*	*Def.*
-ok -ek -ök	-om -em -öm	-om -em -öm	-tam -tem	-tam -tem
-sz	-ol -el -öl	-od -ed -öd	-tál -tél	-tad -ted
~	-ik	-ja -i	-t -ott -ett -ött	-ta -te
-unk -ünk		-juk -jük	-tunk -tünk	-tuk -tük
-tok -tek -tök		-játok -itek	-tatok -tetek	-tátok -tétek
-nak -nek		-ják -ik	-tak -tek	-ták -ték
	-lak -lek		-talak -telek	

*Imperative**		*Conditional*	
Indef.	*Def.*	*Indef.*	*Def.*
-jak -jam -jek -jem	-jam -jem	-nék	-nám -ném
-jál -jél -j	-jad -jed -d	-nál -nél	-nád -néd
-jon -jen -jön	-ja -je	-na -ne	-ná -né
-junk -jünk	-juk -jük	-nánk -nénk	-nánk -nénk
-jatok -jetek	-játok -jétek	-natok -netek	-nátok -nétek
-janak -jenek	-jak -jek	-nának -nének	-nák -nék
-jalak -jelek		-nálak -nélek	

Conditional past = Indicative past + *volna*

Infinitive

-ni

-ani

-eni

*For consonant changes see Unit 17, pages 289–90.

Infinitive With Personal Endings

Singular			*Plural*		
1	2	3	1	2	3
-nom	-nod	-nia	-nunk	-notok	-niok
-nöm	-nöd	-nie	-nünk	-nötök	-niök
-nem	-ned			-netek	
-anom					
-enem					

-va/-ve *

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

Section C—Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

---

*See Unit 20, page 327.

2. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

The answers to all of the following questions will be easily found in the *Basic Sentences*. Ask yourself the questions and say the answers aloud until you can give them all without looking at the *Basic Sentences*.

1. Kivel beszél a katona a szállodában?
2. Mi a katona neve?
3. Mi a szobájának a száma?
4. Mikor jött először a szállodába?
5. Mindennel meg volt elégedve ott?
6. Mi van pont szemben a szinházzal?
7. Van a katonának betétje a bankban?
8. Mit kell csinálnia ha be akar váltani egy csekket?
9. Kitől volt levele?
10. Kivel találkozott a katona a bankban?
11. Hol lesz a hölgy a lányával?
12. Mikor?

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat each conversation, if necessary; then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Young lady at the bank.*

Egy fiatal hölgy egy szép napon bement a bankba és azt mondta a bankhivatalnoknak:

—Szeretnék egy csekket beváltani.

—Szivesen (mondja a hivatalnok); kérem irja alá a másik oldalon.

—De a férjem küldte vidékről!

—Tessék csak aláirni, hogy a férje tudja, hogy kifizettük magának.

A fiatal hölgy az asztalhoz ment és pár perc mulva visszajött a csekkel,

ezzel az aláirással: "Köszönöm,' kedvesem—feleséged, Éva."

2. *Éva beszél Istvánnal.*

István: Jöjjön be, Éva.
Foglaljon helyet.
Vegye le a kalapját.

Éva: Köszönöm.
A Vörös Keresztnél voltam.
Levelet és csomagot küldtem Amerikába.

István: Később le kell mennem a bankba.
Csekket kell beváltanom.
Ki kell fizetnem a számlámat.

Éva: Csak nem akar elutazni?

István: Dehogy!
Még sokáig maradok Budapesten.

Éva: Jó lesz valami igazolványt vinni a bankba.

István: Itt van.
Hogy tetszik a fényképem?

Éva: Borzasztó!
Eddig azt hittem hogy maga szép fiu.

István: Látja, igy lehet csalódni!

Éva: Nem baj. Nekem azért tetszik.

István: A fő az, hogy maga szép és fiatal.

Éva: Örülök, hogy meg van elégedve.

István: A kiszolgálással nem vagyok megelégedve.
Ma még nem csókolt meg.

Éva: Csacsi. Mire vár?

István: Hogy hivatalosan megengedje.

Éva: Mikor először megcsókolt a szálloda bejárata mögött nem várt arra hogy megengedjem.

3. *A kabát.*

Egy fiatalember, miután megebédelt, hazafelé indult a vendéglőből.

Épen fel akarta venni a kabátját, amikor egy öreg ur megszólitotta:

—Mondja kérem, Molnár János a maga neve?

—Nem kérem, (felelte a fiatal ember).
Mért kérdezi?

—Mert ez Molnár János kabátja.
És én vagyok Molnár János.

4. *The large tip.*

Egy fiatal ember és egy hölgy késő éjjel kijönnek a mulatóhelyről.

—Mért adtál öt pengő borravalót annak a lánynak aki a kalapot a kezedbe adta? (kérdezi a hölgy). Husz fillér is elég lett volna!

—Öt pengő nem sok ezért a kalapért amit kaptam!

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. *A* wants to cash a check in a strange town. He addresses *B*, asking for information, and gets full directions: the bank is to the left, about four streets away, opposite a big department store; it is right next to a pharmacy. *A* goes there, but cannot have his check cashed, unless a depositor signs, or unless he can identify himself. Fortunately, he has an official identification card with photograph.

2. *A* and his wife discuss the hotel which they are about to leave. *A* says that he was not satisfied with the service, and Mrs. *A* feels that the bill is large enough for them to have received better food in the restaurant. They decide to leave without giving tips to the servants.

3. An old man tells a young man what the city they are in looked like in his time; there were no movies, fewer baths, but better theatres. He counters, the theatres may not be so good, but there are more and prettier girls.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

aprópénz (II.A.1b)	small change
betét (II.A.1a)	deposit
csekk (II.A.1a)	check
elsőrangu	first class
felel	he answers
fénykép(es)	(with) photo
fiatal	young
hivatalos	official
hosszu	long
hölgy (II.A.1a)	lady
igazol	he identifies
igazolvány (II.A.1b)	identification
jövő (I.A.)	future, next
kereszt (II.A.1a)	cross
kiszolgálás (II.A.1b)	service

látszik	it seems
magas	high
megelégedve	satisfied
mögött	behind
öreg	old
sor (II.A.1b)	line
szolga (I.B.1)	servant
szó (I.A.)	word
talál	he finds
természetesen	naturally
tulajdonos (II.A.1b)	owner
ugy	so
vált	he exchanges
vörös	red

UNIT 21

IN AN OFFICE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

A soldier comes to an office where his girl works, to take her out.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
Joe:	*Jóska:*
sweet	édes
Hello, honey.	Szervusz édesem.
Are you through?	Kész vagy?
	Ilonka
well	hát
already	már
What, you here already?	Hát már itt vagy?
he's sorry	sajnál
Sorry, but you came too early.	Sajnálom, de tul korán jöttél.
I still have a lot to do.	Még sok a dolgom.
Just sit down and read the newspaper.	Csak ülj le és olvass ujságot.
	Jóska
O. K., but hurry up please.	Jó, de siess, kérlek.

	Ilonka
paper	papir
Joe, hand me that package of stationery.	Jóska, hozd ide azt a csomag levélpapirt.
	Jóska
Here you are.	Tessék.
ink	tinta
Where's the ink?	Hol a tinta?
he fills fountain pen	tölt töltőtoll
I want to fill my fountain pen.	Meg akarom tölteni a töltőtollamat.
	Ilonka
blue	kék
Do you want blue ink or black?	Kék vagy fekete tintát akarsz?
	Jóska
It's all the same.	Mindegy
	(*He spills the ink*)
Oh, I beg your pardon.	Jaj, bocsánatot kérek.
	Ilonka
Clumsy!	Ügyetlen!
	Jóska
Didn't I apologize?	Bocsánatot kértem, nem?

soap	szappan
towel	türülköző
I'd like some soap and a towel.	Kérek szappant és türülközőt.
washbowl	mosdó
Where's the washbowl?	Hol a mosdó?
	Ilonka
Next to the door.	Az ajtó mellett.
	Jóska
When will you be ready?	Mikor leszel készen?
We have tickets to the opera.	Van jegyünk az operába.
	Ilonka
few *or* little	kevés
quickly *or* soon	hamar
The less you talk the sooner I'll be ready.	Minél kevesebbet beszélsz, annál hamarabb leszek kész.
Boss:	*Főnök:*
he types	gépel
Miss, have you typed the letters?	Kisasszony, legépelte a leveleket?
	Ilonka
author *or* writer	iró
Yes, there they are, under the typewriter.	Igen, ott fekszenek az irógép alatt.
Please sign them.	Tessék aláirni.

	Főnök
red	piros
pencil	ceruza
Give me a red pencil.	Adjon egy piros ceruzát.
envelope	boriték
Have you addressed the envelopes?	Megcimezte a boritékokat?
	Ilonka
Not yet.	Még nem.
Today's Saturday.	Ma szombat van.
I'll send them out Monday morning.	Kiküldöm hétfőn reggel.
	Főnök
I wish you'd type out a couple more letters.	Szeretném ha még legépelne egy pár levelet.
office	iroda
I'll stay in the office tonight.	Ma este az irodában maradok.
	Ilonka
he works overtime	tulórázik
I'm sorry, but I can't work overtime tonight.	Sajnálom, de ma este nem tudok tulórázni.
date	randevu
I've a date with an American soldier.	Randevum van egy amerikai katonával.
	Főnök
Really?	Igazán?
My wife's an American too.	A feleségem is amerikai.
Where are you going?	Hova mennek?

	Ilonka
First to the opera, and then to a night-club.	Először az operába, s azután egy mulatóba.
he listens	hallgat
We'd like to listen to some gypsy music.	Egy kis cigányzenét szeretnénk hallgatni.
	Főnök
All right.	Jól van.
it can wait	ráér
The letters can wait till next week.	A levelek ráérnek jövő hétig.
Don't forget them on Monday.	Ne felejtse el őket hétfőn.
moreover	azonkivül
long distance (call)	interurbán
Moreover, I'm expecting a long-distance call at exactly 9:15.	Azonkivül egy interurbán telefont várok pont negyed tizkor.
Please be here exactly at eight.	Kérem legyen itt pont nyolckor.
	Ilonka
he's late	késik
I'm not in the habit of being late, sir.	Nem szoktam elkésni főnök ur.
	Főnök
All right.	Na jó.
Have a good time at the opera.	Jó mulatást az operában.
	Ilonka
Thanks.	Köszönöm.
night	éjszaka
Good night.	Jó éjszakát.

	Jóska
he's afraid	fél
he dismisses	elbocsát
job	állás
Aren't you afraid he'll fire you from your job?	Nem félsz, hogy elbocsát az állásodból?
	Ilonka
Not me!	Nem én!
he handles	bánik
I can handle men.	Tudok én a férfiakkal bánni.
	Jóska
You don't say!	Ne mond!
What do you know about men?	Mit tudsz te a férfiakról?
If you knew something about 'em you would have kissed me already!	Ha értenél a férfiakhoz már megcsókoltál volna!
	Ilonka
You want to be late to the opera?	El akarsz késni az operából?
almost	majdnem
It's almost half past six!	Majdnem fél hét van!
Come on, let's hurry up.	Gyere, siessünk.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Up to this Unit you have been introduced to a fair number of Hungarian stems and suffixes. The suffixes which were discussed thus far served to relate the stem to which they were attached to the other words in the sentence. In Hungarian there are also other kinds of suffixes, but before you are introduced to these, you should make sure that you understand clearly and fully what you have learned up to this point. You can do this by using part of your time allotted to this section for a review of the Word Study sections of the preceding units. When you have finished your review, turn to the following discussion.

A. JUDGMENT WORDS

igen	yes	nem	no, not
ne	don't	dehogy	by no means
persze	of course	talán	perhaps

These words are judgment words and have only one form, that is to say, they don't take any sort of suffix. The meaning of most of them is similar to the English. Thus, *igen* 'yes' corresponds largely to English usage. *Nem* may be used to negate a judgment in answer to *igen* (*igen, elment* 'yes, he went away', *nem, nem ment* 'no, he didn't go'), and it may be used to negate a verb when put before it, as in *nem olvas* 'he isn't reading', or again, *nem* may negate a whole series of words or a phrase which follows it: *nem Tamás* 'not Thomas'.

The other negative, *ne* 'don't', occurs only before the conditional and the imperative forms of verbs: *ne lépj le* 'don't step down', *ne fürödjön meleg vizben* 'don't bathe in hot water' (but *nem kell fürödni* 'it isn't necessary to bathe'), *bár ne menne!* '(I) wish he only didn't go!'.

You may add here to the list a form you have not yet had: *sem* and *se.* Note these examples: *én nem voltam ott, és ő sem volt* 'I wasn't there, and he wasn't either'; you cannot forbid with *sem*, but otherwise there isn't any difference between them: *se én, se te* 'neither I nor you'. They can also be used to strengthen a negation: *senki sem* 'no one at all', *sehol sem* 'nowhere at all', *nincs egy fillérem sem* 'I haven't even got a penny'.

Dehogy is simply a strong negation, translated by 'by no means, certainly not, oh no!'.

B. CONNECTIVE WORDS

és	and	meg	and, but
is	also	vagy	either, or
akár	either, or	ellenben	but
de	but	azaz	that is

The words are connective words and have only one form. They connect like sentences, and their meaning is very similar to the English translation. A variant form of *és* which you may meet is *s*. It is a somewhat poetical variant of *és*. It is written separately from the words it joins, without hyphen or apostrophe. *Meg* can frequently be substituted for *és*, and means also *plus* (*egy meg egy* 'one plus one'). *Ellenben* is used in comparison and opposition: *Éva szép, ellenben rossz* 'Eve is beautiful, but (on the other hand) she is bad'.

C. COORDINATE PHRASES

Note these phrases:

Én és te	I and you
A városban és vidéken	In the town and in the country
Itt és ide	Here and hither
Ott és Budapesten	There and in Budapest

All these phrases are *coordinate*, that is to say, they consist of groups of words joined by certain *connectives*. (Sometimes the connectives may be omitted; this is symbolized by a comma in the writing.) In a coordinate phrase the various parts are equivalent; they fall into two groups. In the first group, the parts are equivalent, and do not involve any differentiation; in the second group a choice of some sort is involved. For example:

Group 1. (Word is replaced by "– –")

	Illustrations:
– –, – –, (– –, – –)	hétfő, kedd, (szerda, csütörtök)
– – és – – (– – s – –)	Mária és (s) Éva
– –, – –, – – és – –	Én, Jóska, Sándor és János
– – és – – és – –	Én és te és ő
– –, – – meg – –	Ők, mi meg ti

Many *és* and *meg* slow down the rhythm of the phrase; omission of connectives speeds it up.

Group 2. (Word is replaced by "– –")

	Illustrations:
– – vagy – –	Margit vagy Ilonka
– –, – – vagy – –	Csütörtökön, pénteken vagy szombaton
– – vagy – – vagy – –	Doktor vagy orvos vagy molnár
vagy – –, vagy – –	Vagy én, vagy ő
akár – –, akár – –	akár az egyik, akár a másik
– –, vagy akár – – (is)	a szobalány, vagy akár a pincér is

Many *vagy* slow down the rhythm of the phrase; omission of connectives speeds it up.

D. USE OF 'is'

The connective *is* 'also', as in *itt is* 'here too', *János is* 'also John', is unstressed; that is to say, it is heard and pronounced as the last syllable of the preceding word. This connective often serves for emphasis, or exaggeration. Note the following examples: *ezerszer is* 'even a thousand times', *azért is* 'in spite of that'; note also this question: *hogy is van az?* 'how's that now?', and this negation: *nem is tudtam* 'I didn't really know'.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences*, covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

I

In the following Hungarian sentences one or more words occur in English (in parentheses); read aloud each of these sentences and put in the correct Hungarian equivalent(s).

1. Levelezőlap olcsóbb (than) a levél, (but on the other hand) kevesebbet lehet rá irni.
2. (While) szüleim a moziban voltak, sürgöny jött.
3. (Before) elmész a mulatóba, tégy pénzt a zsebedbe.
4. (Either) az egyik, (or) a másik.
5. Hetvenhárom és kilencvenhat (and) negyvenkettő számok.
6. Az anyám lánya, (that is) a nővérem, férjhez ment.

II

Answer the following questions with complete statements in Hungarian:

1. Hol találkozott Jóska Ilonkával?
2. Milyen napon?
3. Mit csinált Jóska mialatt várt Ilonkára?
4. Mit kért mielőtt megmosdott?
5. Hova akartak este menni?
6. Mit akart a főnök Ilonkától?
7. Mit mondott neki Ilonka?
8. Mit akart Jóska Ilonkától?

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again, if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *A Jó Példa.*

Szombat délután a főnök az irodájában ült és dolgozott.

Sok hivatalnoka közt volt egy fiatal fiu.

Ez a fiu kalappal a fején bejött a főnök szobájába és igy szólt:

—A moziba akarok menni. Valami nagyszerü filmet adnak!

A főnök jó ember volt és szivesen elengedte volna a fiut a moziba.

De nem tetszett neki a fiu beszéde és ezt meg is mondta neki.

—Nézd fiam, megmutatom neked, hogyan kell valakit szivességre megkérni.

Különösen a főnöködet.

Ülj ide a helyemre, az iróasztal mellé.

Most te leszel a főnök és én leszek a fiatal hivatalnok.

Erre kiment a szobából.

A fiu leült az iróasztal mellé.

Egy idő mulva a főnök, kalappal kezében, visszajött és odaállt a fiu elé.

—Bocsánatot kérek, főnök ur (mondta).

Azt hallottam, hogy egy nagyon érdekes filmet játszanak a moziban.

Nagyon szeretném látni.

Nincs sok munkám, és ma szombat van, hát gondoltam,

hogy talán elmehetnék kissé korábban.
A fiu gyorsan gondolt egyet és ezt felelte:
—Persze, hogy elmehetsz, fiam.
És tessék ötven fillér a mozira.

2a. *Erdős állást keres.*

Erdős: Valami jobb állás után nézek.
Nem tudnál valamit ajánlani?

Kovács: Talán tudok segiteni.
Holnap az irodából interurbán felhivom egy barátomat.
A repülőgépgyár főnöke.

Erdős: Köszönöm. Igazán hálás lennék.

Kovács: Gyere el hozzám holnap ebédre.
Majd akkor megadom a választ.

2b. *A repülőgépgyárban.*

Főnök: Kisasszony, irjon hamar egy levelet.
Egy barátom uj hivatalnokot ajánlott.
Válaszolnunk kell.

Kisasszony: Az irodában fog dolgozni?

Főnök: Igen. Maga mellett.
Ugy is sokat kellett tulóráznia.
Azonkivül sok uj munkánk lesz.
Az uj ember segiteni fog magának.

2c. *Az irodában.*

Kisasszony: Maga az uj hivatalnok?

Erdős: Igen. Remélem hogy jó barátok leszünk.

Kisasszony: Először is mindent megmutatok magának.
Itt az irógép; irhat a töltőtollammal is.

Erdős: Köszönöm, nekem is van.

Kisasszony: Ott a mosdó, mellette van szappan és türülköző.
Ez az iróasztal a magáé.
Itt van boriték, papir, kék és vörös tinta.
Azt hiszem majdnem mindent megmondtam.

Erdős: Csak egyet nem: mikor ad nekem randevut?

3. *Nős.*

—Kovács ur, (mondta egy örey asszony aki a templom előtt rózsákat adott el),

kérem vegyen egy pár rózsát annak a lánynak akit szeret!

—Azt nem tehetem (mondta Kovács); nős ember vagyok.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Cover the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

You go to a stationery store and greet the girl who works there; you ask for paper and envelopes and ink. You also ask for stamps, but she says there aren't any. You tell her that you can't work with blue ink, will she please give you black. Then you say you want to buy a present for your wife, and she recommends that you buy a fountain pen. She shows you all kinds and in all colors.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of that section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

azonkivül	moreover	elbocsát	he sends away *or* fires
állás (II.A.2b)	job	édes	sweet
bánik	he handles	éjszaka (I.B.1)	night
boríték	envelope	fél	he's afraid
ceruza (I.B.1)	pencil	hallgat	he listens

hamar	quickly *or* soon
hát	well
interurbán	long distance (telephone call)
iroda (I.B.1)	office
iró	author *or* writer
kevés	few *or* little
kék	blue
késik	he's late
majdnem	almost
már	already
mosdó (I.A.)	wash bowl
papir (II.A.2b)	paper
piros	red
randevu (I.A.)	date
ráér	it can wait
s	and
sajnál	he's sorry
se(m)	neither
szappan (II.A.2b)	soap
tinta (I.B.1)	ink
tölt	he fills
töltőtoll (II.A.1a)	fountain pen
tulórázik	he works overtime
türülköző (I.A.)	towel
ügyetlen	clumsy

UNIT 22

AT THE HOSPITAL

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Two soldiers in adjoining hospital beds are talking.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
	Első Katona
Good morning.	Jó reggelt.
he sleeps	alszik
Did you sleep well?	Jól aludt?
	Második Katona
I sure didn't!	Dehogy aludtam!
wounded	sebesült
Toward four in the morning they brought in a wounded man.	Reggel négy felé behoztak egy sebesültet.
noise	zaj
poor	szegény
The poor fellow made an awful racket.	Borzasztó zajt csinált szegény.
he's surprised	csodál
he wakes up	felkelt
I'm surprised it didn't wake you up.	Csodálom, hogy nem keltette fel.

	Első Katona
he feels	érez
I felt pretty rotten all yesterday afternoon.	Tegnap egész délután borzasztó rosszul éreztem magam.
sedative	fájdalomcsillapitó
nurse	ápolónő *vagy* nővér
The nurse gave me some kind of sedative.	Az ápolónő valami fájdalomcsillapitót adott.
the doctor	a doktor ur
injection	injekció
Later, the doctor gave me an injection.	Később a doktor ur injekciót adott.
I slept through the night.	Átaludtam az éjszakát.
Who's the new patient?	Ki az uj beteg?
	Második Katona
concept	fogalom
I haven't the faintest idea.	Fogalmam sincs.
But here's the nurse now.	De épen itt jön az ápolónő.
he questions	kérdez
Let's ask her.	Kérdezzük meg.
Nurse! Please come here for a minute!	Nővér, kérem jöjjön ide egy percre!
	Ápolónő
he shouts	kiabál
Please don't shout.	Kérem, ne kiabáljon.
Others are still asleep.	Más még alszik.
What do you want?	Mi tetszik?

Második Katona

What was that noise early in the morning?	Mi volt az a zaj korán reggel?

Ápolónő

accident	baleset
it happens	történik
There was an accident not far from here.	Nem messze innen baleset történt.
ambulance	mentők
hospital	kórház
The ambulance brought a wounded man to the hospital.	A mentők behoztak egy sebesültet a kórházba.
ugly	csunya
wound	seb
There was an ugly wound on his head.	Csunya seb volt a fején.
surgeon	sebész
he operates	operál
One of the surgeons operated immediately.	Az egyik sebész mindjárt megoperálta.
first aid	első segély
ambulance (car)	mentőkocsi
Of course he got first aid in the ambulance.	A mentőkocsiban persze már első segélyt kapott.
But, unfortunately, too late.	De sajnos tul későn.

Első Katona

he dies	meghal
Did he die?	Meghalt?

	Ápolónő
Yes.	Igen.
At a quarter of seven this morning.	Reggel háromnegyed hétkor.
But I talk too much.	De tul sokat beszélek.
soon	nemsokára
The doctor'll be here soon.	Nemsokára itt lesz a doktor ur.
	Második Katona
something to read	olvasni való
I'd like something to read.	Szeretnék valami olvasni valót.
	Ápolónő
Do you want magazines?	Képeslapokat akar?
	Második Katona
I've seen 'em all.	Már láttam az összeset.
novel	regény
I'd like a good novel.	Szeretnék egy jó regényt.
	Első Katona
detective	detektiv
I've a detective story.	Van egy detektiv regényem.
I'll be glad to give it to you.	Szivesen odaadom.
But, nurse, I've a request too.	Nővér, én is szeretném valamire kérni.
I'm awfully hot.	Borzasztó melegem van.

fever	láz
I think I have fever.	Lehet, hogy lázam van.
Could you give me a glass of iced orange juice?	Adna egy pohár jeges narancslét?
	Ápolónő
I'm very sorry, I can't do it.	Nagyon sajnálom, nem tehetem.
he orders	rendel
Only if the doctor orders it.	Csak ha az orvos rendeli.
He'll be here in a few minutes.	Itt lesz egy pár perc mulva.
neighbor	szomszéd
He's already in the next room.	Már a szomszéd szobában van.
	Orvos
Good morning.	Jó reggelt.
It's nice spring weather outside.	Szép tavaszi idő van kint.
Nurse, please open the windows.	Nővér, kérem nyissa ki az ablakokat.
How do you feel?	Hogy érzi magát?
	Els[illegible]ona
I think I've got fever.	Azt hiszem lázam van.
I've a headache too.	A fejem is fáj.
thirsty	szomjas
I'm thirsty and would like an iced drink.	Szomjas vagyok és szeretnék valami jegeset inni.

Orvos

The nurse may bring some cold tea with lemon.	Az ápolónő hozhat egy kis hideg teát citrommal.
You'll be much better in a couple of days.	Pár nap mulva sokkal jobban lesz.
he leaves *or* lets Maybe you can leave the hospital by Wednesday.	hagy Talán szerdán elhagyhatja a kórházat.
Good luck.	Sok szerencsét.
aspirin Nurse, give him two aspirins for his headache.	aszpirin Nővér, adjon neki két aszpirint fejfájása ellen.
You look much better too.	Maga is sokkal jobban néz ki.
I'll listen to your heart.	Meghallgatom a szivét.
Take off that shirt.	Vegye le azt az inget.

Második Katona

Here you are, doctor.	Tessék, doktor ur.

Orvos

There's nothing wrong.	Nincs semmi baj.
Both of you should rest.	Pihenjenek mindaketten.
I'll be back in the afternoon.	Délután visszajövök.

EMERGENCY EXPRESSIONS

Help!	Segitség!
medical corps man Call a medic!	ápoló Hivjon ápolót!

Quick!	Gyorsan!
bleeding	vérzés
Stop the bleeding.	Állitsa el a vérzést.
he ties	köt
Tie it here.	Itt kösse meg.
I'm sick.	Beteg vagyok.
I'm wounded.	Megsebesültem.
it hurts	fáj
My head hurts.	Fáj a fejem.
(In the above sentence replace *fejem* 'my head' by:)	
my tooth	fogam
my back	hátam
my stomach	gyomrom
he gets	szerez
Get ice.	Szerezzen jeget.
(In the above sentence replace *jég* 'ice' by:)	
bandage	kötszer
cotton	vatta
a disinfectant	fertőtlenitő
a knife	kés
a litter	hordágy
something to bandage with	valami amivel beköthetem
he reaches	nyul
Don't touch me!	Ne nyuljon hozzám!

Don't give him that!	Ne adja azt neki!
he has been poisoned	mérgezése van
He has been poisoned by meat.	Husmérgezése van.*

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

A. MAKING NOUNS OF VERBS

Here are a number of suffixes that serve to make nouns out of verbs:

állás	job (position)

The suffix *-ás/-és* makes a noun of the verb *áll* 'he stands'; *fizet* 'he pays', *fizetés* 'salary'; *ir* 'he writes', *irás* 'writing'; *lát* 'he sees', *látás* 'seeing'; *foglalkozik* 'he's occupied', *foglalkozás* 'occupation'; *ül* 'he sits', *ülés* 'meeting'; *lakik* 'he lives', *lakás* 'apartment'; *mos* 'he washes', *mosás* 'laundry', and so on.

állomás	station

The suffix *-omás* makes another noun of the verb *áll* 'he stands'; *lát* 'he sees', *látomás* 'vision'.

kelet	east
nyugat	west

The suffix *-at/-et* makes nouns of the verbs *kel* 'he rises' and *nyug(szik)* 'he rests, retires'; *ad* 'he gives', *adat* 'data'; *ajánl* 'he recommends', *ajánlat* 'recommendation'; *felel* 'he answers', *felelet* 'reply'; *mond* 'he says', *mondat* 'sentence'; *öltözik* 'he dresses', *öltözet* 'clothing'; *dolgozik* 'he works', *dolgozat* 'homework', and so on.

üzlet	shop

The suffix *-lat/-let* makes a noun of the verb *üz* 'he is engaged in, he pursues'; *keres* 'he seeks', *kereslet* 'demand'.

szálloda	hotel.

The suffix *-oda/-ede* makes a noun of the verb *száll* 'he puts up, stays' (also *szállás* 'lodging, quarters'); *ir* 'he writes', *iroda* 'office'.

---

*See Hungarian Phrase Book, TM 30-616, pp. 31-36 for further expressions relating to medical attention.

B. THE SUFFIX INDICATING LACK

ismeretlen	strange(r)

The suffix *-atlan/-etlen* (which has also a form *-talan/-telen*), means 'un-', '-less', and, in general, deprivation or lack of something. Thus, *ismeretlen* actually means one who is not *ismerős* 'acquaintance' (from *ismer* 'he knows'). Other examples: *embertelen* 'inhuman', *fátlan* 'treeless', *váratlan* 'unexpected', *tehetetlen* 'helpless', *hazátlan* 'homeless, without a country', *ügyetlen* 'clumsy' (from *ügy* 'affair').

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

I

Answer these questions:

1. Kit hoztak be a kórházba?
2. Mi történt vele?
3. Miért nem lehetett éjjel aludni?
4. Miért tudott az egyik katona aludni?
5. Szabad egy kórházban kiabálni? Miért?
6. Ha egy balesetet lát az utcán, kinek telefonál?
7. Mit akart az egyik katona olvasni?
8. Mit szokott inni ha szomjas?
9. Mi ellen szoktak aszpirint bevenni?
10. Hol lehet aszpirint vásárolni?

II

Figure out what you would say under each of the following circumstances:

1. You see a street accident and you
    a) ask for the nearest telephone.
    b) call an ambulance.
    c) say you are sorry.
2. You have a headache and you
    a) go to a pharmacy and ask for aspirin.
    b) want a glass of water.
    c) complain about it.
3. You are in a hospital and you
    a) ask the doctor to give you a sedative.
    b) ask the nurse for some iced orange juice.
    c) wonder about the noise next door.
4. You just visited a friend in the hospital and know
    a) that he will die.
    b) that he will be out on Friday.
    c) that he wants a detective story and a typewriter.
5. The doctor asks you if
    a) you had fever last night.
    b) you are married and have children.
    c) you would take your trousers off.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *A beteg és az ápolónő.*

Egy sebesült katona hetekig feküdt a kórházban, ahol nagyon jól bántak vele —

különösen egy szép, fiatal ápolónő.

Egy pár nappal mielőtt elbocsátották volna a kórházból igy szól a fiatal ember az ápolónőhöz:

—Szeretem magát, édesem.

Nem akarok jobban lenni; inkább itt maradok a kórházban.

Azt feleli erre az ápolónő:

—Na, az nem lesz nehéz.

A doktor ur is szeret engem és meglátta amikor tegnap este maga megcsókolt.

2. *Mit mondott az orvos?*

—Elmentem az orvoshoz akihez maga elküldött mult héten.

—Megmondta neki, hogy én küldtem?

—Meg.

—Na és ő mit szólt?

—Megkért, hogy fizessem ki a számlámat előre.

3. *Minek?*

Egy ember megkérdezi az orvosát:

—Mondja, doktor ur, gondolja hogy leszek én még száz éves?

—Hát most hány éves?

—Negyven.

—Dohányzik?

—Nem, nem dohányzom én kérem.

—Kártyázik?

—Nem én.

—Szokott éjszaka mulatóba menni?

—Dehogy szoktam; én éjjel alszom, kérem.

—Szokott lányokkal táncolni menni?

—Nem.

—Hát akkor minek akar még hatvan évig élni?

4. *Még nem tul késő.*

Nagyon beteg az öreg Molnár, de nem igen akar meghalni.

Az orvosa tudja, hogy már nincs hátra sok napja és igy szól hozzá:

—Kedves Molnár uram, nagyon sajnálom, de nem tehetek magáért már semmit.

Mielőtt tul késő—kit szeretne még látni? Hivjak valakit?

—Igen, (feleli az öreg), egy másik orvost.

5. *Igaz volt.*

Fekete ur sulyos beteg. Barátja, Fehér, meglátogatja.

—Hogy vagy, kedves barátom, hogy vagy?

—Jaj, ne is kérdezd! Nagyon beteg vagyok én!

Az orvos azt mondja ha felülök meghalok.

—Hát azt már nem hiszem!

—Nem hiszed!? Nézz ide!

Erre Fekete felült az ágyában és meghalt.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. *A* and *B* are in two beds next to each other in the hospital. They strike up a conversation and each finds out where the other comes from, what work he used to do back home (one worked in an office, the other was a bank clerk), where he was wounded, and the type of wound he received.

2. A soldier in a hospital bed is trying to date the Red Cross nurse for the time when he will be up. The nurse leads him on a bit, but she accepts the invitation in the end and they make a date.

3. Tell any funny stories you know about doctors.

4. Tell about an operation you've had or that of a member of your family.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

alszik	he sleeps
aszpirin (II.A.2b)	aspirin
ápoló (I.A.)	medic(al corps man)
ápolónő (I.A.)	nurse
baleset (II.A.1a)	accident
csodál	he is surprised *or* he admires
csunya	ugly
detektiv (II.A.1a)	detective
doktor (II.A.2a)	doctor
első segély	first aid
érez	he feels
fáj	it hurts
fájdalomcsillapitó	sedative
felkelt	he wakes up (someone else)
fertőtlenitő (I.A.)	disinfectant
fog (II.A.1a)	tooth
fogalom (II.C.a)	concept
gyomor (II.C.b)	stomach
hagy	he leaves *or* lets
hordágy (II.A.1a)	litter
injekció (I.A.)	injection
kérdez	he questions

kés (II.A.1a)	knife
kiabál	he shouts
kórház (II.A.1a)	hospital
köt	he binds
kötszer (II.A.1b)	bandage
láz (II.A.1a)	fever
meghal	he dies
mentők	ambulance
mentőkocsi (I.A.)	ambulance (car)
mérgezés (II.A.1b)	poisoning
nemsokára	soon
nyul	he reaches
olvasni való	something to read
operál	he operates
regény (II.A.1b)	novel
rendel	he orders
seb (II.A.1a)	wound
sebesült (II.A.1a)	wounded
sebész (II.A.1a)	surgeon
segitség (II.A.1a)	help
szegény	poor
szerez	he gets
szomjas	thirsty
szomszéd (II.A.2a)	neighbor
történik	it happens
vatta (I.B.1)	cotton
vérzés (II.A.1b)	bleeding
zaj (II.A.2b)	noise

UNIT 23

PREPARATIONS FOR AN OUTING

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Joe and his brother Steve make preparations for an outing.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	HUNGARIAN
Józsi	
in a word	szóval
he decides	elhatároz
meeting	gyülés
this year	idén
In short, you've decided at the meeting yesterday where we're going this year.	Szóval elhatároztátok a tegnapi gyülésen, hogy idén hova megyünk.
Pista	
Yes. We were sorry you couldn't come.	Igen. Sajnáltuk, hogy nem jöhettél.
excursion	kirándulás
detail	részlet
The two of us must work out the details of the outing.	A kirándulás részleteit kettőnknek kell kidolgozni.
ship	hajó
I only know that we go by ship to Visegrád.	Csak annyit tudok, hogy Visegrádig hajón megyünk.

	Józsi
idea	ötlet
I've an idea.	Van egy ötletem.
Let's not go by train from Visegrád.	Visegrádtól ne menjünk vonattal.
	Pista
[How] then? (*lit.* but . . .)	Hanem?
	Józsi
bicycle	bicikli
By bicycle (then).	Hanem biciklivel.
	Pista
Not [a] bad [idea].	Nem rossz.
it depends	függ
whether it falls	esik-e
Of course it depends on whether it's raining.	Persze az attól függ, esik-e az eső.
he uses	használ
If the roads are in good condition . . .	Ha az utak használhatók . . .
	Józsi
Well, we can decide that at the last minute.	Hát azt még elhatározhatjuk az utolsó percben.
We'll see.	Majd meglátjuk.
Get a pencil and paper.	Szerezz egy ceruzát és papirt.
need	szükség
tent	sátor
First of all, we need a tent.	Először is szükségünk van egy sátorra.

	Pista
You're forgetting that there are twelve of us.	Elfelejted, hogy tizenketten vagyunk.
	Józsi
Put down two tents.	Ird le: két sátor.
hammer	kalapács
nail	szög *vagy* szeg
shovel	ásó
string	spárga
We'll need a hammer, nails, a shovel, [and] string.	Szükségünk lesz kalapácsra, szögekre, ásóra, spárgára.
	Pista
rope	kötél
You mean (*lit.* rather) rope.	Inkább kötélre.
What else do we need?	Mi kell még?
	Józsi
blanket	takaró
Blankets and towels.	Takarók és türülközők.
Oh, yes, and a flashlight.	Ja, igen, és egy zseblámpa.
	Pista
We must take a small stove, too.	Egy kis kályhát is kell vinnünk.
	Józsi
What for?	Minek?

	Pista
he cooks	főz
What're we going to cook on?	Hát min fogunk főzni?
	Józsi
The less we carry with us the better.	Minél kevesebbet viszünk magunkkal annál jobb.
You don't need a stove for cooking.	Nem kell kályha a főzéshez.
	Pista
boy scout	cserkész
All right, boy scout.	Na jó, te cserkész.
fork	villa
spoon	kanál
But at least let's take a knife, fork, and spoon.	De legalább vigyünk kést, villát meg kanalat.
Or should we eat with our hands?	Vagy kézzel együnk?
	Józsi
joke	vicc
Stop kidding.	Ne viccelj már.
rifle	puska
without	nélkül
We can't go without a rifle.	Nem mehetünk puska nélkül.
	Pista
he hunts	vadászik
Are we going to hunt?	Vadászni fogunk?

	Józsi
I hope so.	Remélem.
And fish.	És halászni.
	Pista
boat	csónak
It might be nice to take a small boat too.	Jó lenne egy kis csónakot is vinni.
	Józsi
No, that's too heavy.	Nem, az tul nehéz.
he rents	bérel
We'd better rent one when we get there.	Inkább majd kibérelünk egyet amikor odaérünk.
	Pista
mosquito netting	szunyogháló
A couple of mosquito nets'll come in handy.	Egy-két szunyogháló jól fog jönni.
	Józsi
brush	kefe
razor	borotva
blade	penge
similar	hasonló
And let's not forget toothbrushes, razor blades, and similar things.	És ne felejtsünk el fogkefét, borotvapengét, és hasonlókat.
	Pista
own	saját
Everybody should bring their own.	Mindenki hozza a sajátját.
Do you know that all this will cost a lot?	Tudod-e, hogy mindez sokba fog kerülni?

Józsi

So what?	Na és?
The main thing is that we have a good time.	Fő, hogy jól mulassunk.

ADDITIONAL TERMS

trench	árok	instrument	műszer
lumber	deszka	scissors	olló
wire	drót	coal	szén
canteen	kulacs	camp	tábor
ladder	létra	light bulb	villanykörte

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

ASKING QUESTIONS

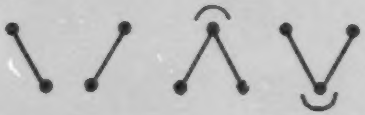
A question differs from a statement in Hungarian because it contains an *interrogative element*, which may be a) an interrogative word; b) an interrogative ending; c) an interrogative sentence melody.

a) Interrogative words:

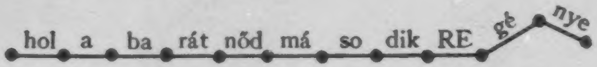
hol voltál?	where were you?
milyen ember?	what sort of man?

Turn to pages 313–4, Unit 19; the first column from the left of the table (that is, every word in the table that has a question mark written after it) is an interrogative word. Any sentence having one of these (or a few other) words is a question. Questions with interrogative words may have the following types of melody:

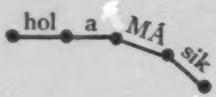
hol? (usually single syllable; rising, falling, or both combined—especially expressing surprise—in either direction)



hol a barátnőd második regénye? (even at first, rising in the last but one syllable, then falling, usually not as low as the original)



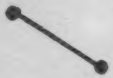
hol a másik? (even at first, falling in the last few syllables)



b) Interrogative ending:

esik-e az eső	whether it's raining
tudod-e	do you know?

The interrogative ending is generally added to the verb in the sentence, or to the first element of the sentence if the verb (*van, vannak*) is lacking: *jó-e a csokoládé?* 'is the chocolate good?'. Questions with interrogative endings following the verb or any other element have a melody where the voice simply falls (if expressing surprise or some other emotion, the voice may also rise):



c) Interrogative sentence melody:

elutazol holnap?	are you leaving tomorrow?
a fiu nagy?	is the boy big?

A sentence which contains neither an interrogative word nor the ending *-e* is spoken with a distinctive speech melody which is one of the above or a variation thereof.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading out loud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say?

I. Make all changes you think necessary so that the following statements become questions; say each question aloud.

1. A hajó nagyobb mint a csónak.
2. Szükségem lesz mindenféle müszerre.
3. Nem érdekelnek hasonló részletek.
4. Ez vicc.
5. Kés, villa, olló, nem kis fiu kezébe való.
6. Nem lehet vadászni puska nélkül.
7. Hideg a kályha mert nincs se szén se fa.
8. Az egész attól függ.
9. Itt lesz a gyülés mához egy évre.

II. Make verbs of the following nouns. Make a complete sentence with each verb.

a) vérzés
b) verés
c) vadászat
d) tudomás
e) tojás
f) szórakozás
g) szeretet
h) rendelet
i) pihenés
j) mosoda

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by your Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Fogorvosnál:*

I.

Fogorvos: Nyissa ki, kérem, nyissa ki.
Szegény ember: Jaj, jaj, jaj, jaj, jaj!
Fogorvos (betesz öt-hat hosszu müszert és egy türülközőt): Na, hogy van a kedves családja?

II.

Fogorvos (egy beteghez aki tul sokat beszél): —Nyissa ki és fogja be.

III.

Pista: Nagyon fáj a fogam.
Tamás: A te helyedben kivetetném.
Pista: Én is. A te helyedben.

2. *Proverbs:*

Szegény ember vizzel főz.
Kéz kezet mos.
Lassu viz partot mos.
Aki gyorsan ad, kétszer ad.

3. *Ilonka az uj gépirókisasszony; Tamás, hivatalnok az irodában, meghivja a jövő vasárnapi kirándulásra.*

Tamás: Bocsánatot kérek, Ilonka. Beszélhetek magával egy percig?
Ilonka: Ha siet. Nagyon sok gépelni valóm van.
Tamás: Jövő vasárnapról van szó, kérem.
Ilonka: Jövő vasárnap junius hetedike van. Na és?
Tamás: Gondoltam, talán Ilonka kisasszony eljönne a kirándulásra.
Ilonka: Milyen kirándulásra?
Tamás: Az egész iroda megy.
Ilonka: Hova megy az egész iroda?
Tamás: Kérem, kisasszony, minden vasárnap az egész iroda elmegy vagy a Szigetre, vagy Visegrádra, vagy a hegyekbe.
Viszünk mindenféle ennivalót.
Én szoktam kidolgozni a részleteket.
Gondoltam, hogy meghivom a kisasszonyt.
Ilonka: Most már értem. Nagyon szivesen elfogadom.
Mit kell csinálnom?

Tamás: Talán segithet a többi lánynak a főzéssel.
Ezen a héten a Dunára megyünk.
Béreltünk egy pár csónakot.
Ha van szunyoghálója, hozza magával.

Ilonka: Hol találkozunk?

Tamás: Hol lakik?

Ilonka: Hajó utca 12.

Tamás: Akkor nem is lakik messze tőlem.
Eljövök magáért, mondjuk kilenc felé, a kocsival.

Ilonka: Nagyon szépen köszönöm. Van elég hely háromnak?

Tamás: Mért háromnak?

Ilonka: Én nem megyek a férjem nélkül kérem.
Csak nem gondolja, hogy otthon hagyom?

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. You're a sergeant in the Quartermaster Corps and the major in charge is telling you to procure supplies for a bivouac. He gives you a list and you go over it, discussing item after item.

2. You discuss with a friend the advantages of hunting as against fishing, and make plans to spend your vacation either hunting or fishing. Then you talk about the supplies you'll need on the trip.

3. You rent an unfurnished room and talk with a friend about fixing it up. You need a bed first of all, and then blankets. Your friend points out that your table is broken, so you need a hammer and nails to fix it. You need a rope to haul up your books and luggage in general. You must furnish your kitchenette for cooking with a stove, etc.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

árok (II.C.b.)	trench	kanál (II.B.1)	spoon
ásó (I.A.)	shovel	kefe (I.B.2)	brush
bérel	he rents	kirándulás (II.A.2b)	excursion
bicikli (I.A.)	bicycle	kötél (II.B.2)	rope
borotva (I.B.1)	razor	kulacs (II.A.2a)	canteen
cserkész (II.A.1b)	boy scout	létra (I.B.1)	ladder
csónak (II.A.2a)	boat	müszer (II.A.1b)	instrument
deszka (I.B.1)	lumber	nélkül	without
drót (II.A.2a)	wire	olló (I.A.)	scissors
elhatároz	he decides	ötlet (II.A.1a)	idea
főz	he cooks	penge (I.B.2)	blade
függ	it depends	puska (I.B.1)	rifle
gyülés (II.A.1b)	meeting	részlet (II.A.1a)	detail
hajó (I.A.)	ship	saját	own
hasonló	similar	sátor (II.C.a)	tent
használ	he uses	spárga (I.B.1)	string
idén	this year	szeg	nail
kalapács (II.A.2a)	hammer	szén (II.B.2)	coal

szóval	in a word *or* in brief
szög (II.A.1a)	angle *or* nail
szunyogháló (I.A.)	mosquito netting
szükség (II.A.1a)	need
takaró (I.A.)	blanket
tábor (II.A.2b)	camp
vadászik	he hunts
vicc (II.A.1a)	joke
villa (I.B.1)	fork
villanykörte (I.A.)	light bulb

UNIT 24

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN HUNGARIAN?

The procedure in this Unit will be the same as in Unit 18.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Hungarian for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

I

1. I haven't got the time to tell you all the details.
2. We decided not to go to the movie.
3. You're full of good ideas.
4. The troops were living in tents.
5. How long a piece of string do you need?
6. Give me another blanket and a clean towel.
7. The boy scout meeting is at the town hall.
8. There's no bridge and we can't get across without a boat.

II

1. I'm wounded on the head.
2. Go to the pharmacy and get me a couple of aspirins.
3. The surgeon operated on his stomach.
4. Don't touch it until he puts on the disinfectant.
5. Get a clean knife, a bandage and some cotton.
6. I hope you slept well.
7. I hadn't the faintest idea.
8. Paul died in 1937.

III

1. Please put a piece of soap in the bathroom.
2. Give me long-distance, please.
3. Your watch is ten minutes late.
4. No, I think yours is five minutes fast (it hurries).
5. Would you like a pencil or a fountain pen?
6. This tea isn't sweet enough.
7. Type these as soon as you can.
8. It was red, white and blue.

IV

1. I'm not at all satisfied with the service here.
2. You forgot to sign this check.
3. I should like to exchange these dollars for pengős.
4. The American Red Cross was there—naturally.
5. He was an old man.
6. It seems she's gone home already.
7. Stand in line.
8. Let me see your official identification.

V

1. I want to send a telegram.
2. Here's a registered letter for you.
3. *War and Peace* is one of Tolstoy's best novels.
4. One kilogram is somewhat less than two and a half pounds.
5. He's the miller of our village.
6. His son is a student.
7. May I have 12 postcards please?
8. That's all: there isn't any more.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: "Hogy mondják magyarul . . .?"

Section D—How Would You Say It? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

I

Add the suffix indicating lack or deprivation to the following words:

a) akar
b) aláir
c) apa, anya
d) arc
e) hall
f) béke
g) borotvál
h) cimez
i) család
j) egy

II

Make a series of complete sentences, each including one of the words you made up in the previous exercise.

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....
7. ....
8. ....
9. ....
10. ....

III

If you are studying in a group, you may enjoy a game. Each member of the class is to take a long, narrow strip of paper. Now, everyone should write down a descriptive adjective, like *nagy*, *öreg*, etc., and having done so, fold the paper so that the word is covered up, and pass the strip to his neighbor on his left. When all strips are passed on, everybody should write a fellow's name, fold the paper to cover up, and pass on. Next, all should write *és*, followed by another adjective. like *szép*, *éhes*, etc., fold up and pass on. Then follows a girl's name. The items thereafter are, a place (where they met), the time when, what they did there, what he thinks of her, what she thinks of him. When the last item is down, the papers should be unfolded, and each member of the group should read aloud the result on the slip before him. It should be something like this:

öreg
István
és fiatal
Ilonka
találkoztak egy mulatóban
késő éjjel
táncoltak
Ilonka nagyon szép
István borzasztóan táncol

IV

The guessing game known as 'Animal, Vegetable, Mineral' is very good language practice. One member of the group leaves the room, while the others agree on a person or an object to be guessed. When the odd man returns, he must ask a question of each member of the group, which are to be answered *igen* or *nem*. He is allowed twenty questions. If he guesses the correct solution, the last person to answer goes out; if he doesn't, he leaves the room again.

V

In the column to the left you will find a series of pronouns, and in the column to the right a series of suffixes. Combine each pronoun with at least one suffix, and each suffix with at least one pronoun. Use each combination so gained in a complete sentence.

a) bárki
b) hány?
c) amerre
d) minden
e) semmi

a) -ról/-ről
b) -tól/-től
c) -nak/-nek
d) -t
e) -hoz/-hez/-höz

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section D. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check on pronunciation and the correctness of your Hungarian; if not, other members of your group will criticise.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting from two to five minutes. Everyone should take part as often as possible. Remember to begin and end conversations with the proper greeting. By this time you have more words to use and more subjects to talk about. The group will be given one hundred minutes and you should be able to talk longer on one topic. Don't be afraid to bring in other things that you can think of and talk about besides those suggested here. Let the talk be as natural as possible, try to answer what is asked you and to keep the conversation moving by asking questions in turn.

Suggested Topics:

1. Tell some jokes in Hungarian.
2. Give the plot of a movie or a play you saw recently.
3. Have you ever been in a hospital? Tell your experiences—why you were there, how you were treated, were you cured when discharged?
4. Do you know any puzzles? Tell the other members of the group and let them work out the solution.
5. You are a postal clerk. Various people come to the window and want different things.
6. You are a bank clerk. Various people come to the window and want different things.
7. Go shopping in preparation for a camping trip.
8. Your girl works in an office. She tells you about the daily routine, her boss, whom you don't like, and her fellow workers.
9. What sort of books do you like to read? Do you care for detective stories, for instance?
10. Do you like hunting or fishing? Talk about your experiences in this connection.

PART FIVE

UNIT 25

GOVERNMENT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

László and his American friend Jack make plans to visit the Castle. It's summer, 1939.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
	László
When are you leaving?	Mikor utazol?
	Jack
Next Tuesday.	Jövő kedden.
	László
(Then) good.	Akkor jó.
he promises	igér
castle	vár
Dennis promised to take us to the Castle on Sunday.	Dénes megigérte, hogy vasárnap felvisz a Várba.
	Jack
Swell!	Nagyszerü!
king	király
Perhaps we'll see the king.	Talán látni fogjuk a királyt.

	László
kingdom	királyság
Hungary is a kingdom.	Magyarország királyság.
at present	jelenleg
however	azonban
At present, however, there's no king.	Jelenleg azonban nincs király.
regent	kormányzó
he chooses	választ
The nation chose a regent in 1920.	Az ország ezerkilencszázhuszban kormányzót választott.
	Jack
republic	köztársaság
president	elnök
We have a president [of the republic] in America.	Nekünk Amerikában köztársasági elnökünk van.
We have a new election every four years.	Minden négy évben ujra választunk.
But tell me.	De mond.
building	épület
palace	palota
What are those big buildings around the Royal Palace?	Mik azok a nagy épületek a királyi palota körül?
	László
ministry	minisztérium
Most of the Ministries are in buildings around the Royal Palace.	A királyi palota körül van a legtöbb minisztérium épülete.
	Jack
What Ministries do you have in Hungary?	Milyen minisztériumok vannak Magyarországon?

László

important	fontos
The most important ones are:	A legfontosabbak:
The Office of the Prime Minister	A miniszterelnökség
The Treasury	A pénzügyminisztérium
The Ministry of Education	A kultuszminisztérium
The Ministry of the Interior	A belügyminisztérium
The Ministry of Foreign Affairs	A külügyminisztérium
The Ministry of National Defense	A honvédelmi minisztérium
The Ministry of Agriculture	A földmüvelésügyi minisztérium
The Ministry of Industry and Commerce.	Az ipar- és kereskedelemügyi minisztérium.

Jack

The other day I had some business on the shore of the Danube.	A multkor volt valami dolgom a Dunaparton.
cab	taxi
driver	sofőr
The cab driver showed me a building and said that it was the Parliament.	A taxisofőr mutatott egy épületet és azt mondta, hogy az az Országház.

László

That's it.	Igen.
district	kerület
It's in the fifth district.	Az ötödik kerületben van.

Jack

How many districts are there altogether?	Hány kerület van összesen?

	László
Budapest has fourteen districts at present.	Budapestnek jelenleg tizennégy kerülete van.
representative	képviselő
Do you know that the Parliament consists of a House of Representatives and an Upper House?	Azt tudod-e, hogy az Országház képviselőházból és felsőházból áll.
	Jack
Just like the United States.	Mint az Egyesült Államokban.
he votes	szavaz
law	törvény
Do the representatives enact the laws?	A képviselők szavazzák meg a törvényeket?
	László
They do.	Ők.
town hall	városháza
Have you seen the town hall?	Láttad a városházát?
mayor	polgármester
There you find the mayor.	Ott van a polgármester.
	Jack
it's worth while	érdemes
I saw it, but it wasn't worth seeing.	Láttam, de nem volt érdemes.
What time is it?	Hány óra van?
	László
about	körülbelül
It's about three.	Körülbelül három.

401

	Jack
Then I must hurry.	Akkor sietnem kell.
legation	követség
I've got to be at the legation at half past three.	Fél négyre a követségen kell lennem.
passport	utlevél
I have to get my passport in order.	Az utlevelemet rendbe kell hoznom.
Good-bye till Sunday morning.	Viszontlátásra vasárnap reggelig.
	(Vasárnap reggel)
	Dénes
Well, here we are in the Castle.	Na, itt vagyunk a Várban.
Let's get off.	Tessék kiszállni.
	Jack
It seems everybody's going to church today.	Ugy látszik ma mindenki templomba megy.
	László
saint	szent
It's Saint Stephen's day today.	Szent István napja van ma.
procession	körmenet
There's a procession.	Körmenet van.
	Dénes
Here come the people (already).	Már jönnek is az emberek.
Let's hurry up so we won't be late.	Siessünk, nehogy elkéssünk.

	Jack
he explains	magyaráz
Dennis, explain everything to us.	Dénes, magyarázz el nekünk mindent.
	Dénes
Certainly.	Hogyne.
priest	pap
The priests will come first.	Először jönnek a papok.
archbishop	hercegprímás
The archbishop will be here too.	A hercegprímás is itt lesz.
	Jack
Who comes after the clergy?	Kik jönnek a papok után?
	László
aristocrat	arisztokrata
The aristocrats.	Az arisztokraták.
	Dénes
Look, there's the prime minister.	Nézd, ott a miniszterelnök.
high sheriff	főispán
The high sheriff is behind him.	Mögötte megy a főispán.
	Jack
Who's he?	Az ki?

	Dénes
county	vármegye
The county is under the high sheriff.	A főispán keze alatt van a vármegye.
Hungary is divided into counties.	Magyarország vármegyékből áll.
	Jack
What sort of job do you have?	Neked milyen állásod van?
	Dénes
state	állam
I'm a civil servant.	Állami hivatalnok vagyok.
I work for the railroads.	A vasutnál dolgozom.
	Jack
I didn't know the railroads belonged to the government.	Nem tudtam, hogy a vasut az államé.
	László
he notices	észre vesz
he paints	fest
Didn't you notice that MÁV is painted on every car: Hungarian Government Railroads?	Nem vetted észre, hogy minden kocsira rá van festve MÁV: Magyar Államvasutak?
Here comes the regent and his wife.	Itt jön a kormányzó és a felesége.
Take off your hat.	Vedd le a kalapod.
	Jack
I can't stand around any more.	Én már nem tudok itt állni.
I've gotten very tired.	Nagyon fáradt lettem.
Let's go home.	Menjünk haza.

Dénes

Don't you want to see the regent?	Hát nem akarod a kormányzót látni?

Jack

Sure.	Dehogy nem.
newsreel	hiradó
But I can see him just as well in the newsreel.	De láthatom a hiradóban is.

2. Check Your Pronunciation

How to pronounce the word spelled 'taxi': The letter *x* is found in a few foreign words borrowed by Hungarian, and is pronounced just as in English 'taxi', that is, in Hungarian spelling, *ksz*. Follow your Guide and

PRACTICE 1

taxi	cab

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

A. THE SUFFIX -*é*

házé	that of the house	**házéi**	those of the house
házamé	that of my house	**házaié**	that of his houses
kié?	whose?	**övé**	his

a nagy házé	that of the big house

The suffix -*é* (plural -*éi*) means 'belonging to', indicating possession on the part of whatever the stem means. Note that in *a nagy házé* the suffix refers not only to the noun to which it is added (*ház*), but to the entire phrase.

B. THE SUFFIX -*né*

királyné	queen (wife of the king)	királynő	queen (the ruler)

The first word in the above illustration consists of *király* 'king', and the suffix *-né*, meaning 'wife of' or, sometimes, as in *mosóné* 'laundress' (from *mosó* 'washing'), 'female occupation'. Compare this with the second word, which is a compound of *király* 'king' and *nő* 'woman'. Thus, *Kovácsné* 'wife of Kovács, Mrs. Kovács', *császárné* 'emperor's wife', *császárnő* 'empress'.

C. THE SUFFIX -*ság*/-*ség*

minőség	quality	királyság	kingdom

Note the suffix *-ság/-ség* in these examples. It may be added to stems of all sorts and is rather frequent in Hungarian. The general meaning is 'collective'—as in *katonaság* 'the military' (from *katona* 'soldier')—or 'abstract'—as in *jóság* 'goodness' (from *jó* 'good'). Study the following examples carefully: *kétség* 'doubt' (*két-* 'two'), *éhség* 'hunger' (*éh-es* 'hungry'), *házasság* 'marriage' (*ház-as* 'married, lit. one with a house'), *csacsiság* 'silly business' (*csacsi* 'little donkey'), *rendőrség* 'police' (*rendőr* 'policeman'), *lehetetlenség* 'impossibility' (*lehet-etlen* 'impossible'), and so forth.

D. THE SUFFIX -*t*

felkel	he gets up	felkelt	he gets someone else up

Compare the word to the left with that to the right. *Felkel* means that 'he gets up', but *felkelt* means that 'he gets someone else up', and hence the suffix *-t* (not to be confused with the past suffix *-t*, *felkelt* 'he got up himself', but *felkelt-ett* 'he got up someone else'), means 'to have someone else do'. Thus, *gyárt* 'he manufactures' (*gyár* 'factory').

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

Section C—Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

I. Say each sentence aloud. When you are sure that you understand it, mark it true (T) or false (F), assuming that the information contained in this and the previous units is correct.

1. A magyar császár lemondott ezerkilencszázhuszban.
2. A magyar király felesége királynő.
3. Jelenleg Magyarországnak nincs királya, csak kormányzója.
4. Minden négy évben uj kormányzót választanak, mint az Egyesült Államokban.
5. A honvédelmi minisztérium egyike a legfontosabbaknak.

6. A Belügyminiszternek különösen a követségekkel van dolga.
7. Budapest, Magyarország fővárosa, kerületekből áll.
8. A kerület a főispán keze alatt van.
9. A magyar Országház, mint az angol, két házból áll.
10. A képviselők szavazzák meg a törvényeket.
11. A felsőházban arisztokraták vannak.
12. Magyarországon a vasut az államé.
13. A vármegyék feje a polgármester.
14. A rendőrség a kultuszminisztérium alatt van.
15. A királyi palota a Duna jobb partján van, a hatodik kerületben, az Országház mellett.

II. Put these sentences in Hungarian, using the suffixes you have learned in this Unit.

1. The owner, an old woman, died a few weeks ago.
2. The hat belongs to that girl.
3. There's no justice here.
4. The miller's wife isn't worth visiting.
5. Poverty is disagreeable.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again, if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Állami hivatalnok.*

Kovács: . . . és mit csinál a fivéred aki állami hivatalnok akart lenni?

Molnár: Semmit.

Kovács: Nem kapta meg az állást?

Molnár: De igen.

2. *Közmondások.*

Igéret szép szó, ha megtartják* ugy jó.

Borban az igazság.

3. *Hungarian Government before the war.*

Az első háboru végéig, az osztrák** császár és a magyar király egy személy volt.

Magyarország királyság maradt, de a nemzet a háboru után kormányzót választott.

A kormányzó választja a miniszterelnököt.

A minisztereket az elnök választja.

A rendőrség a belügyminisztérium alatt van.

A katonaság a honvédelmi minisztérium alatt van.

A külföldi követeket a külügyminiszter fogadja.

A polgármester a város feje.

Minden vármegye egy főispán keze alatt van.

Képviselők hozzák a törvényeket.

Az arisztokraták és a hercegprimás a felsőházban vannak.

Budapest tizennégy kerületből áll.

Magyarországon nem mindenki szavazhat.

4. *Polgármestertől a szállodáig.*

Éva: Maga már ismerős a városban.
Ma maga mondja, hogy hova megyünk.

István: Menjünk a negyedik kerületbe.

Éva: Pont a negyedikbe?

István: Ott a polgármesteri hivatal.

Éva: És aztán?

István: Onnan elmégyünk a legközelebbi paphoz.

Éva: És onnan?

István: A Külügyminisztériumba.

Éva: És aztán?

István: Aztán veszünk egy taxit.

Éva: Nem értem magát, István.
Mit akar a polgármestertől?

István: Azt majd én elmagyarázom—neki!

Éva: És minek a pap?

István: Azt majd ő elmagyarázza—nekünk.

Tart 'he keeps'. ***Osztrák* 'Austrian'.

Éva: És a külügyminiszter?

István: Beszélnem kell vele égy fiatal hölgy utlevele miatt. Érti?

Éva: Eddig még csak értem.
De minek a taxi a végén?

István: Mire kész leszünk a pogármesterrel, a pappal és a miniszterrel addigra maga a feleségem lesz.
Csak nem fogom a feleségemet villamoson hazahozni a szállodába?

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. Ask a Hungarian friend to explain the organization of his government. You, in turn, tell him about the American form of government. Point out the similarities and discuss the differences.
2. You are a member of a group of experts on Military Government. Make plans for the administration of a village or small town with your colleagues.
3. What do you think will be the political situation in Hungary after the war?
4. Ask for directions to the American Legation. A policeman explains. You get into a cab, and on the way the driver points out interesting buildings, telling you what they do in each. When you get to the legation, make arrangements about your passport.

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

(References to Appendix II will hereafter be abandoned.)

arisztokrata	aristocrat	kereskedelem	commerce
azonban	however	kerület	district
állam	state	képviselő	representative
Belügyminisztérium	Ministry of the Interior	király	king
elnök	president	kormányzó	regent
épület	building	körmenet	procession
érdemes	it's worth while	körülbelül	about
észre vesz	he notices	követ	legate *or* ambassador
fest	he paints	köztársaság	republic
főispán	high sheriff	Kultuszminisztérium	Ministry of Education
hercegprimás	primate	Külügyminisztérium	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
hiradó	newsreel	magyaráz	he explains
honvédelem	national defense	miniszter	minister
igér	he promises	minisztérium	ministry
ipar	industry	palota	palace
jelenleg	at present	pap	priest

411

Pénzügyminisztérium	Treasury
polgármester	mayor
sofőr	driver (of motor vehicle)
szavaz	he votes
szent	saint
tart	he keeps
taxi	cab
törvény	law
utlevél	passport
választ	he chooses *or* elects
vár	castle
vármegye	county
városháza	town hall

UNIT 26

THE MILITARY*

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
What's your *rank*?	Mi a *rangja*?
I'm a *private*.	*Közlegény* vagyok.
My *buddy*'s a private, too.	A *bajtársam* is közlegény.
My friend's a soldier.	Barátom katona.
We're all *noncommissioned officers*.	Mind *altiszt*ek vagyunk.
My buddy's a *corporal*.	A bajtársam *tizedes*.
(Replace 'corporal' by the following ranks:)	
sergeant	*őrmester*
officer	tiszt
My brother *is serving* in the *infantry*.	A fivérem a *gyalogság*nál *szolgál*.
He's a second lieutenant in the *artillery*.	Hadnagy a *tüzérség*nél.
(Replace 'second lieutenant' by:)	
first lieutenant	főhadnagy

---

*This Unit should be used with the *Hungarian Phrase Book* TM 30–616 of the War Department. Many of the expressions given in this Unit are in the form of fill-in sentences. For example, you may find a sentence *Hol van a borbély?* 'Where is the barber?'. You should practice this sentence replacing *borbély* by *fürdő, mozi, szabó*, and so forth. New words are italicized in the text.

captain	*százados*
major	*őrnagy*
lieutenant *colonel*	al*ezredes*
The outfit is *under the command* of the captain.	A csapat a százados *parancsnoksága alatt* van.
The *regiment* is under the command of the colonel.	Az *ezred* az ezredes parancsnoksága alatt van.
How many regiments are there in a *division*?	Hány ezred van egy *hadosztály*ban?
The division is under the command of the *general*.	A hadosztály a *tábornok* parancsnoksága alatt van.
My father used to serve in the *cavalry*.	Az apám a *lovasság*nál szolgált.
My son is serving in the *Air Forces*.	A fiam a *lég*(*i*)*erő*ben szolgál.
(Replace 'Air Forces' by:)	
armored command	*páncélos erő*
army	hadsereg
infantry	gyalogság
artillery	tüzérség
cavalry	lovasság
engineers	*müszaki csapat*
medical corps	*egészségügyi csapat*
quartermaster corps	*hadbiztossági szolgálat*
signal corps	*hiradó osztály*
There are some *military policemen* at the entrance.	*Tábori rendőrök* vannak a bejáratnál.
They *arrested* someone.	*Letartóztat*tak valakit.

They arrested the *pilot*.	Letartóztatták a *pilótá*t.
(Replace 'pilot' by:)	
parachutist	*ejtőernyős*
machine gunner	géppuskás
sniper	*éleslövő*
radio *operator*	rádió *kezelő*
Repair that rifle.	*Javit*sa meg azt a puskát.
Where's the *mechanic*?	Hol a *szerelő*?
Have the mechanic repair the *cannon*.	A szerelő javitsa meg az *ágyu*t.
(Replace 'cannon' by:)	
machine gun	gépfegyver
airplane	repülőgép
tank	*tank*
telephone *line*s	telefón *vonal*ak
motorcycle	motorbicikli
equipment	*felszerelés*
instrument	müszer
Bring your *ammunition*.	Hozza a *lőszer*ét.
(Replace 'ammunition' by:)	
bayonet	*zsurony*
grenade	*gránát*
pistol	*pisztoly*
pocket flashlight	zseblámpa
tent	sátor

We are American soldiers.	Amerikai katonák vagyunk.
(Replace 'American' by:)	
Bulgarian	*bolgár*
Czech	*cseh**
German	német
Hungarian	magyar
Italian	olasz
Rumanian	*román*
Serbian	*szerb*
Are there soldiers near here?	Vannak a közelben katonák?
Are they our *enemies*?	*Ellenség*es katonák?
The *prisoner* [of war] spoke Rumanian.	A hadi*fogoly* beszélt románul.
He answered in *Polish.*	*Lengyel*ül felelt.
(Replace 'Polish' by:)	
Bulgarian	bolgárul
English	angolul
French	*franciá*ul
Russian	*orosz*ul
Slovak	*szlovák*ul
Speak slowly.	Beszéljen lassan.
Come with me.	Jöjjön velem.
The major wants to see you.	Az őrnagy akarja látni.

*Pronounced as if it were written *cse*.

Write down the number.	Irja le a számot.
Show your identification.	Mutassa az igazolványát.
How many men are in your company?	Hány ember van a századában?
Help!	Segitség!
Danger!	*Veszély!*
Quickly!	Gyorsan!
Don't *shoot*!	Ne *lő*jjön!
Advance!	Lépjen elő!
Surrender!	Adja meg magát!
I'm wounded!	Megsebesültem!
Call a doctor!	Hivjon orvost!
(Replace 'doctor' by:)	
nurse	ápolónő
medic	ápoló
help	segitség
The Germans shot many people in this village.	A németek sok embert lőttek le ebben a faluban.
Hide!	*Bujjon el!*
Hide in the *cellar!*	Bujjon el a *pincé*ben!
(Replace 'cellar' by:)	
stable	*istálló*
barracks	*kaszárnya*
woods	erdő

The enemy *is fleeing*.	Az ellenség *menekül*.
The *fort* is in the hands of the Russians.	Az *erőd* az oroszok kezében van.
Is there a *river* near here?	Van a közelben *folyó*?
(Replace 'river' by:)	
well	*kut*
telephone *exchange*	telefón *központ*
radio station	rádió állomás
village	falu
lake	tó
bridge	hid
Is the road *passable*?	*Járható* az ut?
(Replace 'passable' by:)	
bad	rossz
impassable	járhatatlan

Section B—Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

WORD ANALYSIS

In this section many of the new words and expressions introduced in this unit will be taken up in alphabetic order, to see how they are put together. Read each paragraph carefully and collect examples of each new suffix introduced.

Altiszt 'noncommissioned officer': the element *al-* means 'below', hence *altiszt* 'below officer'. Thus also *alelnök* 'vice president', *alispán* 'sheriff (of county)', *alezredes* 'lieutenant colonel'.

Bajtárs 'comrade': *baj* 'trouble, harm, bother'; *társ* 'fellow, associate'; hence *bajtárs* 'comrade-in-arms, fellow sufferer'.

Egészségügyi (*csapat*) 'medical (corps)': *egész* 'whole', *-ség*, *egészség* 'health', *ügy* 'affair, matter' (recall *ügyetlen* 'clumsy', *bel-ügy-minisztérium* 'ministry of internal affairs', etc.), *-i* 'pertaining to'.

Ejtőernyős 'parachutist': *ejt* 'he drops', *-ó/-ő*, a suffix meaning roughly 'one who does' (*ir-ó* 'one who writes, author', *ev-ő* 'one who eats, eater', *es-ő* 'one that falls, rain', *lak-ó* 'one who lives, inhabitant', etc.); *ernyő* 'umbrella' (also *esernyő* or *esőernyő* 'rain umbrella'), *-s*, a suffix meaning roughly 'one who is' (*lak-ós* 'one who is living at, inhabitant', *ad-ós* 'one who is giving, one in debt', *erő-s* 'one who is strong', etc.).

Ellenség 'enemy': *ellen* 'against', *-ség*.

Ezred 'regiment', *ezredes* 'colonel': *ezer* 'thousand', suffix *-ad/-ed*, also in *száz-ad* 'company', *tiz-ed-es* 'corporal'; *-s* 'one who is' ('in command of a thousand, a hundred, ten', etc.).

Éleslövő 'sniper': *éles* 'sharp', *lő* 'he shoots'; hence literally, 'sharpshooter'.

Felszerelés 'equipment': *fel* 'up' (preverb), *szer* 'material, implement' (recall *müszer* 'instrument, work implement', *kötszer* 'bandage, binding material'), *-l*, a suffix making verbs of nouns (*kalapál* from *kalapács* 'he hammers, hammer', *vasal* from *vas* 'he irons, iron', *szolgál* from *szolga* 'he serves, servant', *parancsol* from *parancs* 'he orders, order', and many others); *-ás/-és*.

Fogoly 'prisoner': compare *fog* 'he holds', *megfog* or *elfog* 'he captures'.

Gyalogság 'infantry': *gyalog* 'on foot'.

Hadbiztossági szolgálat 'quartermaster corps': *had* 'army, troops', *biztos* 'sure, certain' (also *biztos ur* a way of addressing policemen; *bizik* 'he trusts'); *-ság*, *-i*.

Hadosztály 'division': recall *osztály* 'class', from *oszt* 'he divides'.

Hiradó (*osztály*) 'signal (corps)': *hir* 'news', *ad* 'he gives', *-ó*; *hiradó* also 'newsreel'.

Járható 'passable': *jár* 'he walks'.

Kezelő 'operator': *kéz* 'hand', *-l*, *-ő*, hence 'one who handles'.

Közlegény 'private': *köz* 'common' (recall *köz-társ-as-ág* 'republic'), *legény* 'lad'.

Központ 'exchange': *köz* and *pont* 'point', hence 'common, central point'.

Lég(*i*)*erő* 'air force': *lég* 'air', *erő* 'force, strength'.

Lovasság 'cavalry': *ló* 'horse' (this word has a consonant stem *lov-*, just as *lé* 'juice' has a stem *lev-*, as in *lev-es* 'soup', and *hó* 'month', *hav-*, as in *hav-az-ik* 'it snows'); *-s*, *-ság*.

Lőszer 'ammunition': *lő* 'he shoots' (stem *löv-* as in *lövés* 'shot'), and *szer* (see *felszerelés* above).

Müszaki csapat 'engineers': *mü* 'work' (recall *müszer*), *szak* 'section, branch, profession', *-i* 'pertaining to'.

Őrmester 'sergeant', *őrnagy* 'major': *őr* 'guard', *mester* 'master', hence *őrmester* 'master of the guards'; *nagy* 'big'.

Parancsnokság 'command': *parancs* 'order', suffix *-nok* (as in *el-nök* 'president, one to the front', *ir-nok* 'scribe, one who writes', etc.), *-ság*.

Páncélos erő 'armored command': *páncél* 'armor', *-s*.

Pince 'cellar': compare *pincér* 'waiter' (one who brings the wine from the cellar).

Százados 'captain': see *ezredes* above.

Szurony 'bayonet': *szur* 'he pricks, stabs'; *-ny* (as in *magány* 'loneliness'—*maga* 'self', *vágány* 'rails'—*vág* 'he cuts', etc.).

Tábori rendőr 'military policeman': *tábor* 'camp', *-i*.

Tábornok 'general': *tábor* 'camp', *-nok* (see *parancsnokság* above; add, *ügynök* 'salesman').

Tizedes 'corporal': see *ezredes* above.

Tüzérség 'artillery': *tüz* 'fire', suffix *-ér*, making nouns (as in *hordár* 'porter'—*hord* 'he carries').

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say?

Below you will find sets of two words or phrases (*a* to *t*). Fit each pair into a sentence and say each finished sentence aloud. Sample: x) beteg/kórház: *a mentőkocsi bevitte a beteget a kórházba* 'the ambulance took the sick man into the hospital'.

a) ló/kocsi
b) katona/őrmester
c) ipar/üzlet
d) földmüvelésügyi minisztérium/gazdaság
e) sátor/tábor
f) bor/pince
g) Isten/pap
h) elfelejt/esernyő
i) kés/ellenség
j) éjszaka/zseblámpa
k) veszély/nemzet
l) takaró/hüvös
m) ötlet/rossz
n) kulacs/szomjas
o) ágy/szunyogháló
p) rendőrség/törvény
q) hiradó/film
r) éleslövő/szerencse
s) müszaki csapat/hid
t) vonal/központ

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Nősülés.*

A katona szabadságot kért, hogy megházasodjon.

Azt kérdezi tőle a századosa:

—Hát mióta ismered ezt a lányt?

—Egy hete (feleli a közlegény).

—Fiam, nem adok én neked szabadságot.

Nem elég ideje ismered azt a lányt.

Várjál két-három hónapig, és ha akkor még mindig meg akarsz nősülni, megkapod a szabadságot.

Két hónap mulva visszajön a legény és kéri a szabadságát.

—Még mindig meg akarsz nősülni?

Hát megkapod a szabadságod, mint ahogy megigértem.

De nem hittem volna, hogy egy fiatal embert egy lány ilyen sokáig érdekeljen.

—Hát az igaz, százados uram. De ez egy másik lány.

2. *Közmondások.*

Ajándék lónak nem nézik a fogát.

Többet ésszel mint erővel.

Járt utat a járatlanért el ne hagyd.

3. *Ki?*

A tizedes táncol egy szép lánnyal, és igy szól hozzá:

—Kisasszony, látja azt a tábornokot ott?

Az a hadosztályom parancsnoka.

Nála rosszabb embert még nem ismertem.

Borzasztó parancsnok és . . .

Közbevág a kisasszony:

—Tudja maga, hogy én ki vagyok?

—Nem tudom, kisasszony.

—Én a tábornok lánya vagyok.

Mondja erre a tizedes:

—Tudja maga, hogy én ki vagyok?

—Nem tudom, tizedes.

—Hála Istennek.

4. *Háboru és béke.*

Tamás és István beszélnek. Mondja Tamás:

—Mért mentél a hadseregbe, István?

Feleli István:

—Nőtlen voltam, és szerettem a háborut. És te?

—Én meg nős voltam, és szerettem a békét.

5. *Anyai szeretet.*

Mondja az anya a fiának mielőtt elmegy a hadseregbe:

—És ne felejts el minden reggel pontosan felkelni, nehogy az őrmesternek várni keljen a reggelivel.

6. *A kaszárnyában.*

Tizedes: Mióta vagy a hiradóknál?

Őrmester: Már két éve. Azelőtt repülő voltam.

Tizedes: Pilóta voltál?

Őrmester: Nem; rádiókezelő.

Tizedes: Én a gyalogságnál szolgáltam.

Onnan átmentem a páncélos parancsnoksághoz.

Károly öcsém a hadbiztosságnál van.

Pedig éleslövő volt mig meg nem sebesült az arcán.

Őrmester: Hogy sebesült meg?

Tizedes: Gránáttól.

Őrmester: Melyik ezredben volt?

Tizedes: Ejtőernyős volt. Leszállt az ellenséges hadosztály közepén.

Egy istálló mögé bujt de meglátták őt és foglyul ejtették.

Később elfogtuk az egész hadosztályt és Károly sebesülten előkerült.

Nagy veszélyben volt, de hála Istennek egészen rendbe jött.

Hadnaggyá lépett elő és áthelyezték a hadbiztossághoz.

Most felszerelést és lőszert kezel.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. **Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences** (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. A civilian wants you to explain the organization of your division. He knows nothing whatever about the Army, and you must tell him the most elementary details. For example, speaking of rank, you explain the difference between noncommissioned officers and commissioned officers, and so forth.

2. Three privates are having a discussion. Joe is in the Artillery, Bill in the Armored Command, Jack in the Infantry. They are sitting at a bar, and each is praising the merits of the other two fellows' branches of service, but griping about his own. After a while the discussion becomes quite heated and the men raise their voices. An Air Forces corporal, sitting near by, points out the superiority of life in the air to that of any ground branch of the Army. Now each man sticks up for his own branch, and it's three against one in favor of the Army Ground Forces. After a while, the corporal stands drinks for each of the AGF boys, and they turn to a different, but common topic of conversation: girls.

3. A parachutist has just dropped in on a farm and two Hungarians are telling him that the enemy is close by. The parachutist assures them that more soldiers are dropping from airplanes and the situation is well in hand. The Hungarians explain the position of the enemy.

4. Discuss the invasion of France or any other major military operation you know about first hand; or describe maneuvres you have taken part in.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of previous lessons if necessary.

FINDER LIST

altiszt	noncommissioned officer
bajtárs	comrade
bolgár	Bulgarian
bujik	he hides
cseh	Czech
egészségügyi csapat	medical corps
ejtőernyős	parachutist
ellenség	enemy
erőd	fort
ezred	regiment
ezredes	colonel
éleslövő	sniper
felszerelés	equipment
fogoly	prisoner
folyó	river
francia	French
gránát	grenade
gyalogság	infantry
hadbiztossági szolgálat	quartermaster corps
hadosztály	division
hiradó osztály	signal corps
istálló	stable
jár	he walks *or* goes *or* comes
kaszárnya	barracks
kezelő	operator
közlegény	private
központ	exchange
kut	well
lengyel	Polish
letartóztat	he arrests
légi erő	air force
lovasság	cavalry
lő	he shoots
lőszer	ammunition
müszaki csapat	engineers
orosz	Russian
őrmester	sergeant
őrnagy	major
parancsnokság	command
páncélos erő	armored command
pilóta	pilot
pince	cellar

pisztoly	pistol
rang	rank
román	Rumanian
százados	captain
szerb	Serbian
szlovák	Slovak
szolgál	he serves
szurony	bayonet
tank	tank
tábori rendőr	military policeman
tábornok	general
tizedes	corporal
tüzérség	artillery
veszély	danger
vonal	line

UNIT 27

INDUSTRY

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Dénes and Sándor pay a visit to Károly, who is about to build a house; they discuss Hungarian industries.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
Károly	
plot (of ground)	telek
I'm glad, fellows, that you came to have a look at my lot.	Örülök fiuk, hogy eljöttetek megnézni a telkemet.
he builds	épit
They are starting to build the house tomorrow morning.	Holnap reggel kezdik épiteni a házat.
Dénes	
ground *or* earth	föld
What do you want all this ground for?	Minek neked ez a sok föld?
You could almost build barracks here.	Akár egy kaszárnyát épithetnél ide.
he has built (by someone else)	épittet
Are you going to have something else built here too?	Épittetsz még mást is ide?
Károly	
textile mill	szövőgyár
My associate and I are going to build a textile mill.	A társam és én szövőgyárat fogunk épiteni.

He gives the money.	A pénzt ő adja.
textile	textil
engineer	mérnök
And I'm the best textile engineer in the country.	És én vagyok a legjobb textil mérnök az országban.
	Sándor
world	világ
In the whole world.	Az egész világon.
seriously	komolyan
But seriously, why do you want to build a factory right here?	De komolyan, mért pont itt akarsz gyárat épiteni?
	Károly
The lot lies near the river.	A telek közel fekszik a folyóhoz.
he transports	szállit
wool	gyapju
We transport the wool to the factory by boat.	Hajóval szállitjuk a gyapjut a gyárig.
	Dénes
silk	selyem
Are you going to manufacture silk too?	Selymet is fogtok gyártani?
	Károly
Yes.	Azt is.
furrier	szücs
workshop	mühely
Have you still got that fur shop in Ujpest, Alexander?	Sándor, meg van még az a szücsmühelyed Ujpesten?

	Sándor
Yes.	Meg van.
raw	nyers
skin	bőr
he processes	feldolgoz
We process raw skins.	Nyersbőröket dolgozunk fel.
Then we sell it to shoe factories.	Azután eladjuk cipőgyáraknak.
Especially in Czechoslovakia.	Különösen Csehországba.
	Károly
furniture	butor
And how's the furniture business?	És hogy megy a butor üzlet?
	Dénes
my uncle	nagybátyám
My uncle has a furniture factory in Detroit.	A nagybátyámnak butorgyára van Detroitban.
He wrote a letter wanting me to come out to him.	Irt egy levelet, hogy jöjjek ki hozzá.
	Károly
There isn't much of an industry here in Hungary.	Itt Magyarországon nincs nagy ipar.
This is an agricultural country.	Ez földmüvelő ország.
	Sándor
cottage industry	házi ipar
it develops	kifejlődik
heavy industry	nagyipar
Cottage industry rather than heavy industry developed.	A házi ipar inkább fejlődött ki mint a nagyipar.

Dénes	
old	régi
famous	hires
But there are old and famous factories here too.	De azért itt is vannak régi, hires gyárak.
For example:	Például:
china	porcellán
in Pécs	Pécsett
in Győr	Győrött
The Zsolnai pottery kiln at Pécs, the cannon factory in Győr, and the Ganz factory in Budapest.	A Zsolnai porcellán gyár Pécsett, az ágyugyár Győrött, és a Ganz gyár Budapesten.
Sándor	
mill	malom
he rows	evez
I saw many mills along the Danube when I was rowing last Sunday.	Sok malmot láttam a Duna partján, mikor mult vasárnap evezni voltam.
Károly	
steam	gőz
produce	termés
market	piac
They bring the produce to the steam mills by boat, and they sell it here on the market.	Hajón hozzák a gőzmalmokba a termést, és itt adják el a piacon.
Dénes	
tin can	konzerv doboz
When my uncle was in Pest, he always said that he didn't see enough canned goods in the stores.	Amikor a nagybátyám Pesten volt mindig azt mondta, hogy nem lát elég konzerv dobozt az üzletekben.

Károly

Naturally.	Persze.
vegetable	főzelék
In Hungary every housewife preserves fruit and vegetables for the winter herself.	Magyarországon minden háziasszony maga teszi el télire a gyümölcsöt és főzeléket.

Sándor

Is your father an engineer too, Charles?	Károly, a te apád is mérnök?

Károly

instrument	szerszám
he prepares	készit
No, the old man makes instruments.	Nem, szerszámokat készit az öreg.
grandfather	nagyapa
jewel	ékszer
My grandfather is a partner in a jewelry store.	A nagyapám társ egy ékszerüzletben.

Dénes

I heard that they pay factory workers well in America.	Hallottam, hogy Amerikában jól fizetik a gyárimunkásokat.

Károly

he esteems *or* appreciates	megbecsül
In America they appreciate a good workman.	Amerikában megbecsülik a jó munkást.
foreman	előmunkás
Foremen earn a lot of money.	An előmunkások sok pénzt keresnek.
trade union	szakszervezet
The workers have trade unions.	A munkásoknak szakszervezeteik vannak.

Sándor	
insurance company	biztositó intézet
We have a workers' insurance company too.	Nálunk is van munkásbiztositó intézet.
free	ingyen
If someone gets sick, they take care of him free in the hospital.	Ha valaki beteg lesz, ingyen ápolják a kórházban.
Dénes	
What other factories do you have in Hungary?	Milyen gyárak vannak még Magyarországon?
Károly	
Well, in Hatvan there's a sugar refinery, in Kőbánya a brewery, in Óbuda a shipyard.	Hát Hatvanban van cukorgyár, Kőbányán sörgyár, Óbudán hajógyár.
Sándor	
mine	bánya
Are there any coal mines?	Vannak-e szénbányák.
Károly	
A few.	Kevés.
brown	barna
There are a couple of brown-coal mines near Tata.	Van egy-két barnaszén bánya Tata mellett.
There's an iron mine near Diósgyőr.	Diósgyőr mellett van egy vasbánya.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

A. THE SUFFIX *-(t)at/-(t)et*

épit	**he builds**	**épittet**	**he has built**

Note the difference between these two words. The suffix *-tet* in *épittet* means that 'he has built by someone else', while *épit* means that 'he builds himself'. Thus *csináltatott egy uj ruhát* 'she had a new dress made' (but *csinált* 'she made'); *nevettet* 'he makes laugh' (but *nevet* 'he laughs').

töltet	**he has filled**	**járat**	**he has (someone, something) come**

Some stems take the same suffix without the initial *-t-*. Thus *fürdeti a fiukat* 'he gives a bath to the boys'; *a vasárnapi ujságot járatom* 'I subscribe to (have them make come) the Sunday paper'.

The meaning of this suffix, then, is roughly 'the action is carried out by someone else, who was asked by the subject to do so'.

B. THE SUFFIXES *-ul/-ül, -it*

készit	**he prepares**	**készül**	**he prepares himself**
épit	**he builds**	**épül**	**it is being built**
tanit	**he teaches**	**tanul**	**he learns**

The suffix *-it*, which appears in the list to the left, is a common verb suffix which means roughly 'to produce' ('to prepare something', 'to make a house or building', 'to instruct' in the above examples); the suffix *-ul/-ül*, on the other hand, means that 'the action reflects on the doer' ('to prepare oneself', 'to be built', 'to be instructed' in the above examples). Thus, *kerit* 'he rounds up', *kerül* 'is found'.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

Section C—Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say?

This exercise is like the one in the previous unit.

a) munkás/szakszervezet
b) selyem/ruha
c) külföldi/piac
d) Oroszország/kivitel
e) Egyesült Államok/behozatal
f) szerszám/megjavit
g) főzelék/főz
h) Duna/evez
i) ásó/bánya
j) butor/barna
k) sebesült/bőr
l) utazik/világ
m) föld/nagyapa
n) nyers/termés
o) gőz/hajó
p) hires/tábornok
q) ingyen/jegy
r) ékszer/ajándék
s) tanuló/tanit
t) komolyan/lő
u) mérnök/vasgyár
v) régi/épület

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by your Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Az más.*

Ur: Munkát keres?

Állástalan: Azt nem. Csak állást.

2. *Közmondások.*

Jó pap holtig* tanul.

Ki a kicsit nem becsüli, a nagyot nem érdemli.

3. *Hajvágás.*

A munkás egy órát késett ebéd után.

Az előmunkás megállitja a bejáratnál és megkérdezi tőle, hogy hol volt.

—A borbélynál (feleli a munkás).

—Borbélynál!? Minek?

—A hajamat vágattam.

—Nem vágathatja a haját munkaidő alatt!

—Miért nem? Munkaidő alatt lett hosszu!

4. *Szegény.*

Előmunkás:

Nézze Kovács, az az uj munkás ott maga mellett kétszer annyit dolgozik mint maga!

Kovács:

Tudom. Mondtam is szegénynek, de még mindig többet dolgozik.

---

*Holtig 'unto death' (from *meghal* 'he dies').

5. *Minek tanulni?*

Minél többet tanul az ember, annál többet tud.

Minél többet tud az ember, annál többet felejt el.

Minél többet felejt el az ember, annál kevesebbet tud.

Minél kevesebbet tud az ember, annál kevesebbet felejt el.

Minél kevesebbet felejt el az ember, annál többet tud.

Hát akkor minek tanuljon az ember?

6. *Tulórázás.*

Józsi találkozik barátjával Pistával.

Igy szól hozzá:

—Szervusz öregem. Nem láttalak már hetek óta.

De mi bajod van? Olyan rosszul nézel ki!

Beteg voltál?

—Jaj, dehogy voltam beteg.

Tul sokat kell dolgoznom.

Munka reggeltől estig—

kezdem reggel hétkor és nem érek haza este kilencig.

Csak egy óra ebédidőm van.

Borzasztó ez a tulórázás!

—Mióta csinálod ezt?

—Még nem kezdtem el. Holnap reggel kezdem csak.

7. *Olcsóbb.*

Munkás (a tulajdonoshoz):

Tiz éve dolgozom ebben a gyárban és három ember munkáját végzem egy ember fizetéséért.

Most szeretnék fizetésemelést kapni.

Tulajdonos:

Fizetésemelést azt nem adok, de ha megmondja nekem a másik két ember nevét, azonnal elbocsátom őket.

8. *A szövőgyárban.*

Károly: Ebben a helységben vannak a szövőgépek.

István: Mi van a gyár tulsó oldalán?

Károly: A munkáskórház.
A biztositó intézet tartja fenn.

István: Futbalpályátok is van?

Károly: A szakszervezet ingyen adta a felszerelést.
Vasár- és ünnepnap idejönnek a munkások szórakozni.

István: Vendéglő is van?

Károly: Igen.
Most megmutatom a háziipar mühelyünket.
Itt lányok dolgoznak.
Selyemből és gyapjuból készitenek mindenféle árut.
Romániába szállitjuk.

István: És a többi textilt?

Károly: Az egész világon van piacunk.
Iparunkat mindenhol ismerik.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. A and B are discussing the products of American and Hungarian industries. A mentions what is manufactured in the United States and B answers that such a product is either manufactured in Hungary or has to be imported.

2. Captain Horváth of the U.S. Army used to import products of cottage industry from Hungary and sell it in New York. He runs across one of the merchants from whom he used to import. They talk about the present situation between the two countries, especially with regard to export and import of goods.

3. Two noncoms are asking a waiter about the various industries in the city where they are stationed. The latter tells them they used to have an ordnance plant, but it was destroyed by artillery fire.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

barna	brown	biztositóintézet	insurance company
bánya	mine	bőr	skin

butor	furniture
előmunkás	foreman
evez	he rows
ékszer	jewel
épit	he builds
feldolgoz	he processes
föld	ground *or* earth
főzelék	vegetable
gőz	steam
gyapju	wool
háziipar	cottage industry
hires	famous
ingyen	free
készit	he prepares
kifejlődik	he develops
komolyan	seriously
konzervdoboz	tin can
malom	mill
megbecsül	he esteems *or* appreciates
mérnök	engineer
mühely	workshop
nagyapa	grandfather
nagybátyám	my uncle
nagyipar	heavy industry
nyers	raw
piac	market
porcellán	china
régi	old
selyem	silk
szakszervezet	trade union
szállit	he transports
szerszám	instrument
szövőgyár	textile mill
szücs	furrier
telek	plot (of ground)
termés	produce
textil	textile
világ	world

UNIT 28

AGRICULTURE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Paul tells Louis about Hungarian agriculture.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
	Pál
peasant	paraszt
Hungary is an agricultural state and its inhabitants are chiefly peasants.	Magyarország földmüvelő állam és lakóssága főleg parasztokból áll
Travel around the country with me and have a look.	Utazz körül velem a vidéken és nézd meg.
	Lajos
Gladly.	Nagyon szivesen.
I think I'll have time this Saturday.	Azt hiszem, szombaton ráérek.
grain	gabona
How is the grain?	Hogy áll a gabona?
	Pál
wheat	buza
This year's wheat crop is very good.	Az idei buzatermés nagyon jó.

rye barley corn	rozs árpa kukorica
In the Dunántul there's a lot of rye, barley, and corn, too.	A Dunántulon is sok a rozs, árpa és kukorica
Lajos	
Where do the potatoes come from?	Honnan jön a burgonya?
Pál	
From the Uplands.	A Felvidékről.
The soil is poor there.	Ott szegény a föld.
Lajos	
animal	állat
I see a lot of animals here.	Sok állatot látok itt.
highway cart	országut szekér
There are more carts on the highway than cars.	Az országuton több a szekér mint az autó.
Pál	
You'll see how many animals there are in my grandmother's farm yard.	Majd meglátod a nagyanyám udvarában mennyi állat van.
pig poultry roost *or* sty	disznó baromfi ól
The pig is kept in the sty, the poultry in the hen house,	A disznót ólban tartják, a baromfit az udvaron,

cow	tehén
horses and cows in the barn.	a lovakat és teheneket istállóban.

Lajos

What's your grandmother's house like?	Milyen a nagyanyád háza?

Pál

Four rooms and a kitchen.	Négy szoba és konyha.
green	zöld
bush	bokor
There are high green bushes around the house.	A ház körül magas zöld bokrok vannak.
vegetable garden	veteményes kert
(Green and other) vegetables grow in the vegetable garden.	A zöldség és főzelék a veteményes kertben terem.

Lajos

salad	saláta
cucumber	uborka
onion	hagyma
We eat a lot of raw salads, cucumbers, and onions.	Sok nyers salátát, uborkát és hagymát eszünk.

Pál

he consumes	fogyaszt
We consume more fruit.	Mi több gyümölcsöt fogyasztunk.
pear	körte
plum	szilva
grape	szőlő
We always have pears, plums, grapes and apricots at home.	Mindig van otthon körte, szilva, szőlő és barack.

Lajos	
strawberry	eper
cherry	cseresznye
I prefer (spring) fruits [like], strawberries, [and] cherries.	Én a tavaszi gyümölcsöt jobban szeretem: epret, cseresznyét.
harvesting *or* reaping	aratás
When does harvesting begin?	Mikor kezdődik az aratás?
Pál	
About June 28th.	Körülbelül junius 28-án.
he reaps	kaszál
That's when they start to harvest.	Akkor kezdenek kaszálni.
Lajos	
vintaging	szüret
What's (the) vintaging like?	Milyen a szüret?
Pál	
light *or* brightness	fény
Oh, that's a lot of fun.	Oh, az fényes mulatság.
basket	kosár
he picks *or* gathers	szed
They gather the grapes in baskets.	A szőlőt kosarakba szedik.
press	prés
must	must
Half the produce goes to the press, and by afternoon the must is ready.	A termés fele a présházba megy, és délutánra már van must.

he sings	énekel
The boys and girls sing and dance.	A lányok, fiuk enekelnek és táncolnak.
I hope you'll be in Hungary for vintaging.	Remélem, szüretkor itt leszel Magyarországon.
	Lajos
I hope so.	Remélem.
I met a very pretty Hungarian girl.	Találkoztam egy nagyon szép magyar lánnyal.
I'd like to go dancing with her.	Szeretnék vele táncolni menni.
	Pál
Do I know her too?	Ismerem én is?
	Lajos
I don't think so.	Nem hiszem.
gardener	kertész
Mary is her name and her father is a gardener.	Máriának hivják és kertész az apja.
farmstead	tanya
They live out on a farm.	Kint laknak egy tanyán.
	Pál
Where did you meet her?	Hol találkoztál vele?
	Lajos
field	mező
exhibit	kiállitás
At the Agricultural Exhibit here in Budapest.	Itt Budapesten a Mezőgazdasági Kiállitáson.

wonderful	gyönyörü
tomato	paradicsom
radish	retek
market	vásár
She brought to the market some wonderful tomatoes and radishes.	Gyönyörü paradicsomot és retket hozott fel a vásárra.

Pál

If you like, we can visit them.	Ha akarod meglátogathatjuk őket.
There isn't much work in the country just now.	Most nincs sok munka vidéken.
ploughing	szántás
sowing	vetés
The ploughing and sowing haven't started yet.	A szántás és vetés még nem kezdődött el.
plough	eke
he shoes (a horse)	patkol
They're just sharpening the ploughs and shoeing the horses.	Most csak élesitik az ekéket és patkolják a lovakat.

Lajos

he is curious	kiváncsi
I'm more interested in the garden.	Én inkabb a kertre vagyok kiváncsi.
model	minta
it flows	folyik
They say there's model farming there.	Azt mondjak mintagazdálkodás folyik ott.

Pál

small farmer	kisgazda
I'm glad you're interested in the life of small farmers.	Örülök, hogy érdekel a kisgazdák élete.

hired laborer	béres
swineherd	kanász
shepherd	juhász
You'll meet hired laborers, teamsters, swineherds, shepherds.	Fogsz ott találkozni béresekkel, kocsisokkal, kanászokkal, juhászokkal.
typical	jellegzetes
They're just as typical in the villages as the many ladies and gentlemen are in the cafés around town.	Éppen olyan jellegzetesek ok a falukban, mint a sok ur és hölgy a városi kávéházakban.

Lajos

dozen	tucat
I want to take a dozen pictures in the country.	Akarok egy tucat fényképet késziteni lent vidéken.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

COMPOUND WORDS

A compound word consists of two or more stems, but with a single accent (on the first syllable of the first stem). The rules of vowel harmony do not apply to compound words. In this discussion compounds will be classified according to what part of speech the resultant compound belongs to, and within that class, according to the elements of which it is composed.

1. Nouns:

étel-ital	food and drink

This is a compound of noun plus noun. Some compounds of this sort occur only with suffixes:

éjjel-nappal	by day and night
télen-nyáron	by summer and by winter
vége-hossza	end

Note especially the expression: *nincs se vége se hossza* 'there isn't any end to it'.

The above compounds are all coordinate. Most noun compounds are subordinate, however, that is, the first part in some way modifies the second (by giving the manner, age, form, and so forth).

almafa	apple tree
kávéház	café
vaskéz	iron hand

These are all compounds of noun plus noun.

fejfájás	headache
helyesirás	correct spelling

The second part may have suffixes of the *-ás/-és* sort.

kisasszony	miss
Oroszország	Russia

These are compounds of adjective plus noun.

negyedrész	a fourth part

This is a compound of number (*négy* 'four', *-ed*(*ik*)) plus noun.

éjfél	midnight

In a few cases, the noun precedes the qualification.

ellenfél	opponent

This compound consists of adverb plus noun.

fogház	jail

This compound consists of verb plus noun.

2. Adjectives:

piros-fehér-zöld	red, white, and green

This is a coordinate compound of adjective plus adjective plus adjective. Incidentally, this expression is used in reference to the Hungarian flag which bears those colors.

jéghideg	ice cold

This compound consists of noun plus adjective. The first part defines the second more closely.

barnás-vörös	reddish brown

This compound consists of adjective (with suffix) plus adjective. Note the expression *szebbnél-szebb* 'more and more beautiful'.

kétheti	bi-weekly
másodéves	second year

These compounds consist of number plus adjective.

tul sok	too much

This compound consists of adverb plus adjective.

nem rossz	not bad

This compound consists of a negative judgment word plus adjective. Note the expression *bor-nem-issza* 'teetotaller'.

3. Numbers:

All numbers above 'ten', except *száz* and *ezer* are compounds. Note the expression *négy-öt* 'four or five'.

4. Adverbs:

már-már	already
el-el	away (often)

These compounds are coordinate, consisting of adverb plus adverb. The two parts may be the same, or different:

ki-be	in and out
elől-hátul	in the front and in the back
körülbelül	approximately
maholnap	sooner or later

Note *idehaza* 'here at home' and *hátrafelé* 'towards the back'.

ezidén	this year

This compound consists of pronoun plus adverb.

5. Pronouns:

kiki	each one

This compound consists of pronoun plus pronoun.

sajátmagam	I myself
máshol	elsewhere

These compounds consist of adjective plus pronoun.

azonkivül	besides
ahelyett	instead of that one

These compounds consist of a pronoun plus an adverb (which cannot, however, stand by itself; thus, you can't say *azon-* by itself).

6. Verbs:

jön-megy	he comes and goes

This compound is a coordinate, consisting of verb plus verb. Both parts may take suffixes: *jött-ment* 'he came and went'.

látott volna	he could have seen

The so-called past conditional of verbs is really a compound form, consisting of the verb stem with past suffix, plus *volna*, and meeting fully the definition of compounds (note the lack of accent on *volna*).

képvisel	he represents
végbemegy	it comes to pass

These compounds consist of a noun (with or without a case suffix) plus verb.

jótáll	he guarantees
egyetért	he agrees
jóvátesz	he approves

These compounds consist of adjective or number (with or without suffix) plus verb.

felállt	he stands up
kimegy	he goes out

These compounds consist of adverb plus verb. This type occurs with great frequency.

7. Judgment word:

hogyne	of course

This compound consists of a pronoun plus judgment word.

8. Connective word:

mintha	as if
mégis	all the same

These compounds consist of connective word plus connective word.

hanem	but
csakhogy	that only

These compound words consist of a connective word plus judgment word.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, an making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud each of the following and then pick out the expression you think most suitable:

Here is a list of compound words. Make up a complete sentence including one; then make up sentences including each of the elements separately. For example: *városháza* 'townhall'; *a városháza régi épület*; *a város két kilóméterre van*; *a ház az ellenség kezében volt.* Say each finished sentence aloud. The Guide or other members of the class will criticize.

a)	lövészárok	'trench'
b)	állatkert	'zoo'
c)	levélhordó	'mailman'
d)	muzeumőr	'museum guard'
e)	hónap	'month'
f)	zseblámpa	'flashlight'
g)	lovasrendőrség	'mounted police'
h)	villanykörte	'light bulb'
i)	konyhaasztal	'kitchen table'
j)	levelezőlap	'postcard'
k)	kormányfő	'government head'
l)	pénzügyminiszterium	'Treasury'
m)	falétra	'wooden ladder'
n)	vasvilla	'pitchfork'
o)	Franciaország	'France'
p)	fényképfelvétel	'photo'
q)	tesz-vesz	'he bustles around'
r)	sajátmaga	'himself'
s)	tehénbőr	'cowhide'
t)	személypoggyász	'personal luggage'

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again, if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Nem érdemes.*

Egy amerikai tiszt körülment a faluban és megállitott egy magyar parasztot.

Beszélgettek egy ideig, amikor a paraszt azt mondta, hogy nagyon rosszul megy neki, hogy ő nagyon szegény és nincs mit ennie.

Azt kérdezte erre a tiszt:

—Hát nem lehet itt pénzt keresni?

Például, nem lehet buzát, árpát, vagy rozst a Felvidékre vinni?

—De lehet.

—Hát nincs magának földje?

—Dehogy nincs.

—Hát akkor mért nem csinálja?

—Nem érdemes. A feleségem nem akar se vetni se aratni.

2. *Közmondás.*

Ki mint vet, ugy arat.

3. *A csirkék.*

Volt egyszer egy ur aki elhatározta, hogy csirkéket vesz.

Vett is pár tucatot.

Pár nappal később ezt a levelet irta a Földmivelésügyi Minisztériumnak:

"Valami baj van a csirkéimmel.

Amikor reggel kimegyek az udvarra, ott találok kettőt-hármat a földön fekve, egész hidegen.

Volnának-e olyan szivesek megirni nekem, mi a bajuk?"

Pár nap mulva jött a válasz:

"Uram: az ön csirkéinek az a baja, hogy meghaltak."

4. *Láz.*

—Mond csak Józsi (a szomszéd kérdezte a bérest), azt hallottam, a gazdának láza van. Mennyi ma?

—Fogalmam sincs. Meghalt az öreg éjfélkor.

5. *Hol az apád?*

Egy jószivü paraszt ment az országuton és azt látta, hogy egy fiatal ember nagy bajban volt.

A szekere ott feküdt az országut közepén és a kukorica mind a földön volt.

Mondja a fiunak, felejtse el a baját és jöjjön vele a tanyára vacsorázni.

Majd vacsora után ő meg a családja segiteni fognak a kukoricát visszatenni a szekérre.

A fiu erre azt mondja, menne ő szivesen, de "gondolom, nem fog az apámnak tetszeni."

A paraszt rábeszélésére azonban a fiu mégis elment vele.

Vacsora után megkérdezi a paraszt a fiutól, hogy érzi magát.

A fiu mondja, sokkal jobban és hogy nagyon hálás.

De, mondja, "ez nem fog az apámnak tetszeni."

—Nem fogja az öreg bánni, mondja a paraszt.

Hol az apád most?

—A kukorica alatt (feleli a fiu).

6. *Falun.*

Éva: Nézd István, milyen gyönyörü a vetés!

István: Amerikában több kukoricát termelnek, itt Magyarországon több a buza.
Nálunk nincsenek ilyen kis tanyák.

Éva: Nézd mennyi csirke van az udvarban.
És nézd azt a barna tehenet az istálló előtt.

István: Akarsz itt a kis tanyán megszállni?

Éva: Igen. Holnap szüretelnek.
Szeretném ha látnád a szüretet.
Leszedik a szőlőt, présbe teszik, nemsokára kész a must.
Azután a lányok és fiuk énekelnek és táncolnak, és hálát adnak Istennek a jó szüretért.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

1. You're discussing with a friend what each of you would do if he could change his occupation. Your friend says that his ambition has always been to run a factory. He tells you in detail what he would like to produce, how he would manage personnel, what he would import and export, and so forth. Then you tell him what you've always wanted was a farm; describe to him in detail what you would have in the way of produce and stock if you owned a farm, and how you would live.

2. Do you prefer to live in the country or in town? What are your reasons?

3. You are driving along in a jeep on a Hungarian highway. You stop and ask an elderly farmer for directions to the nearest town. You discuss the condition of bridges and roads ahead, the position of the enemy and the availability of food and supplies. You are invited to his farmstead and meet his family. You talk about farming, and tell him about American methods, while he tells you about Hungarian methods.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of previous lessons if necessary.

FINDER LIST

aratás	harvesting *or* reaping
állat	animal
árpa	barley
baromfi	poultry
béres	hired laborer
bokor	bush
buza	wheat
cseresznye	cherry
disznó	pig
eke	plough
eper	strawberry
énekel	he sings
fény	light *or* brightness
fogyaszt	he consumes
folyik	it flows
gabona	grain
gyönyörü	beautiful
hagyma	onion

jellegzetes	typical
juhász	shepherd
kanász	swineherd
kaszál	he reaps
kertész	gardener
kiállitás	exhibit
kisgazda	small farmer
kiváncsi	he is curious
kosár	basket
körte	pear
kukorica	corn
mező	field
minta	model
must	must
országut	highway
ól	roost *or* sty
paradicsom	tomato
paraszt	peasant
patkol	he shoes (a horse)
prés	press
retek	radish
rozs	rye
saláta	salad
szántás	ploughing
szed	he picks *or* gathers
szekér	cart
szilva	plum
szőlő	grape
szüret	vintaging
tanya	farmstead
tehén	cow
tucat	dozen
uborka	cucumber *or* pickles
vásár	market
veteményes kert	vegetable garden
vetés	sowing
zöld	green

UNIT 29

CULTURE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Steve's father and mother discuss his future career at the time of his graduation.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*HUNGARIAN*
	Apa
school	iskola
Steve went to school for the last time today.	Pista ma ment utoljára iskolába.
university	egyetem
student	hallgató
He'll be a university student sooner or later.	Maholnap egyetemi hallgató lesz.
	Anya
That's not so sure.	Nem olyan biztos.
He said the other day he wants to be a composer.	Azt mondta a multkor, hogy zeneszerző akar lenni.
	Apa
I want him to choose one of the four Hungarian universities.	Én azt akarom, hogy a négy magyar egyetem közül válasszon egyet.
	Anya
lawyer	ügyvéd
Everybody can't be a lawyer.	Nem lehet mindenki ügyvéd.

One is enough in the family.	Egy is elég a családban.
artist	müvész
Steve is an artist.	Pista müvész.
Music Academy	Zeneakadémia
Let him go to the Academy of Music, and let him study with Dohnányi, Bartók and Kodály.	Hadd járjon a Zeneakadémiára és tanuljon Dohnányinál, Bartóknál meg Kodálynál.

Apa

helper	segéd
book	könyv
store	kereskedés
younger cousin	unokaöccs
And then let him work as helper in a bookstore, like his younger cousin?	És azután dolgozzon mint segéd egy könyvkereskedésben, ugy mint az unokaöccse?
He's an artist, too.	Az is müvész.

Anya

That's different.	Az más.
painter	festő
He's a painter.	Az festő.

Apa

That's different, because it's your sister's son, not yours.	Az más, mert a nővéred fia és nem a tiéd.
I want my son to have some decent occupation: doctor, clergyman, engineer, or lawyer.	Én azt akarom, hogy a fiamnak valami rendes foglalkozása legyen: orvos, pap, mérnök, vagy ügyvéd.

child	gyerek
I want him to be able to support his children when he gets married.	Azt akarom, hogy amikor megnősül el tudja tartani a gyerekeit.
I won't support him any longer.	Én nem fogom többé eltartani.

Anya

daughter-in-law	meny
If the worst comes to the worst, your daughter-in-law will support him.	Legrosszabb esetben a menyed fogja eltartani.
But here is Steve now!	De épen itt jön Pista.
And look who is with him!	És nézd csak ki jön vele!

Apa

My father.	Az apám.

Nagyapa

Hello.	Szervusztok.
Well, what's new?	Na, mi ujság?

Apa

We're just discussing Steve's future.	Épen Pista jövőjéről beszélünk.

Nagyapa

Steve has a great future.	Pistának nagy jövője van.
He'll be as famous as Erkel or Liszt.	Olyan hires lesz mint Erkel vagy Liszt.

	Pista
Thank you.	Köszönöm.
	Anya
You see?	Látod?
scientist	tudós
Grandfather's a scientist and yet he recommends that Steve become an artist.	Nagyapa tudós és mégis azt ajánlja, hogy Pista müvész legyen.
	Apa
I see.	Látom.
But what's he going to live on?	De miből fog élni?
	Nagyapa
Don't worry!	Semmi baj!
rich professor	gazdag tanár
His father is a rich lawyer, unlike your father, who's a poor university professor.	Az ő apja gazdag ügyvéd, nem ugy mint a te apád, aki szegény egyetemi tanár.
	Pista
Did my father always want to be a lawyer?	Apám mindig ügyvéd akart lenni?
	Apa
Naturally.	Természetesen.
When I married your mother, I already had an office.	Amikor elvettem az anyádat, már volt irodám.

	Nagyapa
grandchild	unoka
I want to ask my grandson a question.	Szeretnék valamit kérdezni az unokámtól.
poem	vers
Do you read poems?	Szoktál verset olvasni?
	Pista
Of course.	Persze.
I like the poems of Ady especially, but I know Petőfy, Arany, and Vörösmarty.	Különösen szeretem Ady verseit, de ismerem Petőfit, Aranyt, és Vörösmartyt.
	Nagyapa
poet	költő
Have you heard of a poet who signs his poems "Pen"?	Hallottál-e egy költőről aki ugy irja alá a verseit, hogy "Toll"?
	Apa
love	szerelem
Father, for Heaven's sake!	Apám, az Isten szerelméért!
	Pista
I never heard of the "Pen".	Soha nem hallottam a "Toll"-ról.
	Anya
Neither have I.	Én sem.
Is he a famous author?	Hires iró?

Nagyapa

I'm not surprised that you haven't heard of him, because only two of his poems were published.	Nem csodálom, hogy nem hallottatok róla, mert csak két verse jelent meg.
And he's not so much a famous author as rather a famous lawyer.	És nem annyira hires iró, mint inkább hires ügyvéd.
Your father knows him quite well.	Az apád nagyon jól ismeri.

Anya

You aren't the "Pen" by any chance?	Csak nem te vagy a "Toll"?

Apa

This happened twenty years ago, and I didn't know my father knew about it.	Ez husz évvel ezelőtt történt, és nem tudtam, hogy az apám tudott róla.
Stop laughing.	Ne nevessetek.

Anya

life	élet
This is the best joke I've heard in my life.	Ez a legjobb vicc amit életemben hallottam.
If you don't let Steve go to the Academy of Music, from now on your family will call you the "Pen".	Ha nem engeded Pistát a Zeneakadémiára járni, ezentul a családod "Toll"-nak fog hivni.

Nagyapa

library	könyvtár
Well, "Fountain pen," I must go to the Library.	Na, "Töltőtoll," nekem a könyvtárba kell mennem.

Apa

I'll agree to anything, if you forget this "Pen" business.	Mindenbe beleegyezem, ha elfelejtitek ezt a "Toll" ügyet.
actor sculptor	színész szobrász
I don't care, let my son be an actor or even a sculptor.	Nem bánom, legyen a fiam akár színész vagy szobrász is.

Nagyapa

He could do much worse.	Lehetne annál rosszabb is.

Apa

Yes, a shop assistant.	Igen, kereskedő segéd.

Nagyapa

And a Member of Parliament, university professor, or lawyer.	Igen, képviselő, egyetemi tanár, vagy ügyvéd.
It would have been better if you had become a poet.	Jobb lett volna, ha te is költő lettél volna.
Good-bye.	Viszontlátásra.
And Steve!	És Pista!
Best of luck!	Sok szerencsét!

SECTION B--WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of Units 25, 26, 27, 28.

KINSHIP TERMS

feleség	**wife**	**nagyapa**	**grandfather**
hug	**younger sister**	**unoka**	**grandchild**

Terms, like the above, that designate a relative of yours, are known as kinship terms. In dealing with a Hungarian you must learn to recognize the kinship terms he or she uses, and you will find it useful to know the precise meaning of these terms. Languages differ considerably in their kinship terminology and you will find that Hungarian has terms of relations for which English has none, and that a given term may have more than one English equivalent.

The Hungarian kinship terms appear in the following table. Some of them you've had before. Others are new and will be listed in the Finder List. This is how the table must be used. There are four columns. Column **1** is a series of fixed numbers, corresponding to the English equivalents in column **4**; the numbers in column **2**, on the other hand, refer to the number of the corresponding Hungarian term, as it appears for the first time. Now, when the Hungarian term occurs again, instead of repeating it, you will find simply the original number assigned. You can thus see at a glance what terms correspond to what English equivalents. The terms in column **3** are given with the first person singular possessive suffix *-m* 'my', assuming that any Hungarian male or female is speaking, except for the terms for spouse (term number 9 can be spoken only by a female, and 10 only by a male).

1 *Fixed Number*	2 Term Number	3 Hungarian Term	4 *English Equivalent*
1	1	apám	*my father*
2	2	anyám	*my mother*
3	3	fivérem	*my brother*
4	4	bátyám	*my older brother*
5	5	öcsém	*my younger brother*
6	6	nővérem	*my sister*
7	7	néném	*my older sister*

8	8	hugom	*my younger sister*	
9	9	férjem	*my husband*	
10	10	feleségem	*my wife*	
11	11	fiam	*my son*	
12	12	lányom	*my daughter*	
13	13	nagyapám	*my father's father (my grandfather)*	
14	14	nagyanyám	*my father's mother (my grandmother)*	
15		13	*my mother's father (my grandfather)*	
16		14	*my mother's mother (my grandmother)*	
17	15	dédapám	*my father's father's father*	*(my great-grandfather)*
18		15	*my father's mother's father*	
19		15	*my mother's father's father*	
20		15	*my mother's mother's father*	
21	16	dédanyám	*mother of 13–14; or wife of 15 (my great-grandmother)*	
22	17	ükapám	*father of 15–16 (my great-great-grandfather)*	
23	18	ükanyám	*mother of 15–16; or wife of 17 (my great-great-grandmother)*	
24	19	nagybátyám	*my father's brother (my uncle)*	
25	20	nagynéném	*my father's sister (my aunt)*	
26		19	*my mother's brother (my uncle)*	
27		20	*my mother's sister (my aunt)*	
28		20	*my father's brother's wife (my aunt)*	
29		19	*my father's sister's husband (my uncle)*	
30		20	*my mother's brother's wife (my aunt)*	
31		19	*my mother's sister's husband (my uncle)*	
32	21	sógorom	*husband of 6–8 (my brother-in-law)*	

33	22	sógornőm	*wife of 3–5 (my sister-in-law)*	
34	23	apósom	*my wife's father or husband's father (my father-in-law)*	
35	24	anyósom	*my wife's mother or husband's mother (my mother-in-law)*	
36		21	*my wife's brother or husband's brother (my brother-in-law)*	
37		22	*my wife's sister or husband's sister (my sister-in-law)*	
38	25	menyem	*my son's wife (my daughter-in-law)*	
39	26	vőm	*my daughter's husband (my son-in-law)*	
40	27	unokám	*son of 11–12*	*(my grandchild)*
41		27	*daughter of 11–12*	
42	28	dédunokám	*son of 27*	*(my great-grandchild)*
43		28	*daughter of 27*	
44	29	ükunokám	*son of 28*	*(my great-great-grandchild)*
45		29	*daughter of 28*	
46		*40 & 3, 4, 5*	*male child of 19–20*	
47		*40 & 6, 7, 8*	*female child of 19–20*	

Notes. Everybody, from *1* to *47* is *rokonom* 'my relative'. If you are unmarried, you generally belong to the *család* headed by 1, and including 2, and those of 3–8 who are unmarried; if you yourself are married, you head your own *család*, provided you are a male, and include therein 10, and those of 11–12 who are unmarried. 1–2 together are known as *szüleim.*

Here are some notes on specific terms:

3—sometimes used instead of 4.

4—without the suffix this term appears as *bácsi*; this is a common, polite term of address by a young person to an older male: *bácsi kérem, hány óra?* 'tell me, uncle, what time is it?'. In the country, you will hear frequently the expression *urambátyám* 'sir uncle'.

6—frequently used instead of 7.

7—without the suffix this term appears as *néni*; this is a common, polite term of address by a young person to an older female: *tanitó néni* 'teacher'.

3–8—to refer to all your brothers and sisters, the term *testvéreim* can be used; *testvérem* may be any child of your parents' other than yourself, regardless of age or sex (although more commonly used for males).

11—without the suffix this term appears as *fiu* and refers to any young male, 'boy'.

12—any young female, 'girl'.

13—note that, like 14, 19, and 20, this term is a compound of *nagy* 'great, big', and of another kinship term (namely, 1, 2, 4, 7).

15—note that, like 16 and 28, this term is a compound of *déd-* (which doesn't occur in any other combination), and of another kinship term (namely, 1, 2, 27).

17—note that, like 18 and 29, this term is a compound of *ük-* (which doesn't occur in any other combination), and of another kinship term (namely, 1, 2, 27).

21–22—these terms are used in the country in some parts of Hungary with the meaning 'relative'.

46–47—these terms are all compounds (such as *unokahugom* 'younger girl cousin', and so on); to say 'any cousin, irrespective of age and sex' use *unokatestvérem.* To say 'nephew' use 40 & 5 (*unokaöcsém*), and 'niece' 40 & 8 (*unokahugom*).

az unokám felesége	my grandson's wife
az öcsém fia	my younger brother's son

Note how to describe a relative not on the above list, or to specify a more general term, such as 'nephew'. The expression is preceded by the article *a, az*; the first term is followed by a possessive suffix, depending on whose relative you're talking about; this in turn is followed by the second term which ends in the third person possessive suffix. Sometimes, the first term may be followed by the suffix *-nak/-nek* and the article: *a hugomnak a férje* (or, *a hugom férje*)—to specify which of your *sógorom* you're talking about.

2. Covering English and Hungarian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hungarian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hungarian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

I. Inquire among your Hungarian friends and find out who the following are and what their importance is in Hungarian culture:

Jókai Mór, Csók István, Szentgyörgyi Albert, Hubay Jenő, Munkácsi Mihály, Molnár Ferenc, Csortos Gyula, Kolozsvári Márton és György, Mátyás király, Rákóczi Ferenc, Kölcsey Ferenc, Katona József, Madách Imre, Széchenyi István, Kossuth Lajos, Bólyai János, Kőrösi Csoma Sándor, Semmelweis Ignác, Vámbéry Ármin, Lukács Pál, Szinnyei-Merse Pál, gróf Apponyi Albert, Deák Ferenc, gróf Andrássy Gyula.

II. Make a list of your relatives and state in Hungarian what the relation of each is to yourself. Then pick out any one, and describe him or her as fully as you can.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hungarian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hungarian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide. Repeat the Hungarian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Foglalkozás.*

A kiadó átnézte a verseket és igy szólt a költőhöz:

—Uram, önnek olyan rossz kézirása van, hogy nem tudom elolvasni a verseit.

Mért nem gépelte le őket?

—Mért nem gépeltem le?

Uram, ha én tudnék irógépelni, gondolja, hogy a verseimből élnék?

2. *Hir.*

Iró:—Tiz évig tartott amig rájöttem, hogy egész tehetségtelen vagyok és nem tudok egy rendes regényt irni.

Barát:—Na és abbahagytad az irást?

Iró:—Dehogy! Akkor már tul hires voltam.

3. *Könnyű.*

Vevő:—Egy könyvet szeretnék venni, kérem.

Segéd:—Valami könnyüt?

Vevő:—Mindegy. Autóval jöttem.

4. *Petőfi.*

Kiadó:—Maga irta ezeket a verseket?

Költő:—Igen kérem.

Kiadó:—Nahát! Nagyon örülök a szerencsének, Petőfi ur; azt hittem, hogy maga már száz éve meghalt.

5. *A gyerek.*

Költő:—Sehol sem találom a verseimet!

Csak nem tette a gyerek a tüzre?

A felesége:—Persze hogy nem. Még nem tud olvasni!

6. *Kérdés.*

Volt egyszer egy család. Azt mondja a legöregebb:

—Ebben a családban két apa van.

Azt feleli a legfiatalabb:

—Igen, de ebben a családban két fiu is van.

Kérdés: hányan voltak összesen a családban?*

7. *Tehenek.*

Egy szép tavaszi este harmincöt tehén állt egy istállóban.

---

*Hárman: nagyapa, apa, és fiu.

Az istálló elég kicsi volt, hát a tehenek egymás mögött álltak.

Mondhatja-e a tehén, amelyik a harmadik tehén mögött állt:

—Én vagyok a negyedik tehén elől.

—Azt hiszem, hogy mondhatja.

—Nem mondhatja, mert tehenek nem tudnak beszélni!

8. *Éva megmutatja Istvánnak a budapesti szobrokat.*

Éva: Megmutatom neked a budapesti szobrokat.

István: Vegyünk egy taxit és gyerünk.

Éva: Végig a Deák Ferenc utcán, ki az Andrássy utra!
Itt van Jókai szobra. Sok jó regényt irt.
Ez a Vörösmarty utca. Ő is költő volt.
A Szinnyey Merse utcát a hires magyar festőről nevezték el.

István: Mi ez a sok szobor az Andrássy ut végén?

Éva: A magyar királyok szobrai, Szent Istvántól kezdve.

István: Ez mind nagyon szép. De már fáradt vagyok.
Szobrok engem ugy sem érdekelnek.
Ott hátul, tul a tón, látok egy kis erdőt. Mi van ott?

Éva: Mátyás király vára.

István: Menjünk oda.

Éva: Mért?

István: Ott nincsenek emberek és nincsenek szobrok.
Holnap indulunk haza Amerikába.
Ott megmutatom neked a világ legszebb szobrát:
A Szabadság Szobrát!

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hungarian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hungarian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hungarian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hungarian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. Discuss the works of a great American author (Poe, Mark Twain, Eugene O'Neill, Hemingway); discuss the works of a great American painter (Whistler, Sargent, Thomas Benton, Rockwell Kent); discuss the works of a great American sculptor (Augustus St. Gaudens, Paul Manship); discuss the compositions of a great American musician (George Gershwin, Chanler, Stephen Foster, Jerome Kern, Duke Ellington).
2. What is your favorite art form? Why? What have Hungarians contributed to that particular form of art?
3. You are engaged to get married. Your girl wants to know all about your relatives. You list them one by one, making brief descriptive comments in reply to her questions (for example: uncle Herbert lives with us—he doesn't make a living; sister studies languages at the University; brother Jack is in the Army Air Forces; cousin Fred is a sportsman; aunt Matilda is an actress; and so forth).
4. How did you come to select the profession you're in? If you are in one of the Services, do you expect to return to your former occupation? Why?

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of previous lessons if necessary.

FINDER LIST

Kinship terms are listed with their numbers as given on pages 443–6 of this Unit.

anyósom	24
apósom	23
dédanyám	16
dédapám	15
dédunokám	28
egyetem	university
élet	life
festő	painter

gazdag	rich	szerelem	love
gyerek	child	szinész	actor
hallgató	student	szobrász	sculptor
iskola	school	tanár	professor
kereskedés	store	testvérem	3–8
költő	poet	tudós	scientist
könyv	book	unokám	27
könyvtár	library	ügyvéd	lawyer
menyem	25	ükanyám	18
müvész	artist	ükapám	17
nagynéném	20	ükunokám	29
néném	7	vőm	26
segéd	helper	vers	poem
sógorom	22	Zeneakadémia	Music Academy

UNIT 30

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN HUNGARIAN?

The procedure in the Unit will be the same as in Unit 18.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Prepare to give orally the Hungarian for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

I

1. He is a writer of detective stories.
2. Bartók is a famous Hungarian composer.
3. My brother is a medical student at the University.
4. My younger cousin and I were comrades in the last war.
5. This café is full of painters during the afternoons.
6. All schools come under the Ministry of Education.
7. Dohnányi teaches at the Music Academy.
8. Her husband is an assistant in a bookstore.

II

1. May I take some photos in the zoo?
2. You will represent me at the meeting.
3. The general approved our decision.
4. There isn't any end to this movie.
5. He comes and goes, day and night.
6. We have the following fresh fruits: grapes, plums, and pears; but we have no apricots, strawberries or cherries.
7. I'm very curious to see the crop of this year: how's your wheat, rye and barley?
8. Vintaging will come sooner or later.

III

1. Our infantry surrounded the enemy artillery.
2. I should like to take out some fire insurance.
3. There's an old iron mine thirty kilometers to the west.
4. Open that tin can and let's eat.
5. The Military Police rowed across to the steamship.
6. It's unhealthy to eat raw vegetables.
7. We have some beautiful silk shirts: white or blue.
8. He is one of the best mechanical engineers in the world.

IV

1. My uncle serves in the quartermaster corps.
2. I can't understand a word of Bulgarian.
3. He was a captain in the Polish air force.
4. Danger! Enemy snipers! Hide in the sty, quickly!
5. The peasants are fleeing before the tanks of the armored command.
6. Advance, and come with me to the barracks.
7. Have the engineers repair the highway: it's impassable.
8. His wife sat on the back seat of the motorcycle.

V

1. I lost the chess game, though I had both my queen and king left.
2. You need a new photo in that passport.
3. Washington was the first president of the republic.
4. The State Department is close by the White House.
5. Porter, tell my cab driver to take me to the American legation.
6. Explain it to her in Russian.
7. There are many priests, but only one primate in Hungary.
8. I didn't promise you anything I won't keep.

Section C—How Did You Say It?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: "Hogy mondják magyarul . . .?"

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

I

For each of the following relations in the column to the left there is a single kinship term in Hungarian. What is it?

Relation:	Kinship Term:
1. Fiam felesége	....
2. Férjem apja	....
3. Lányom fia	....
4. Anyám nővére	....
5. Hugom férje	....
6. Nagybátyám fia	....
7. Lányom férje	....
8. Apám fivére	....
9. Apám nagyapja	....
10. Feleségem nővére	....

II

In the column to the right in I above, underline each kinship term that stands for a real, living relative of yours. Describe each relative in not less than five complete sentences, stating physical characteristics, occupation, whereabouts, and so forth, making sure that each sentence is correct and that the total description is clear and consistent.

III

You are questioning a prisoner of war in Hungarian. You put to him each of the questions (Q) below in Hungarian, and he gives you an appropriate answer (A) in Hungarian. Members of the class should take turns at the questioning and answering. Use your imagination in developing more questions of the same sort, and avoid giving the same reply twice.

1Q: What's your name?
2A:

3Q: What's your rank?
4A:

5Q: Are you serving in the infantry?
6A:

7Q: Where did you get wounded?
8A:

9Q: Are you hungry or thirsty?
10A:

11Q: Have you got some identification?
12A:

13Q: Why did you surrender?
14A:

15Q: Is there a river near here?
16A:

17Q: Are the bridges passable?
18A:

19Q: Who holds the highways?
20A:

21Q: Are there any boats?
22A:

23Q: Have the Serbs shot any men in this village?
24A:

25Q: Is there a telephone exchange or radio station at the barracks?
26A:

27Q: Are there any Rumanian soldiers near the lake?
28A:

29Q: Are there any snipers or machine gunners in the woods?
30A:

IV

Here are ten series of words and expressions. In each series there is one word or expression that is definitely out of place and doesn't belong with the others. Underline this expression. Sample: hétfő, kedd, szolga, vasárnap.

a) árpa, gabona, rozs, buza.

b) szekér, ló, hal, tehén.

c) megy, jár, alszik, gyalogol.

d) földmüves, főispán, kisgazda, paraszt.

e) retek, kosár, hagyma, uborka.

f) hiradó osztály, müszaki csapat, francia osztály, lovasság.

g) tizedes, százados, alezredes, ezredes.

h) cipő, nadrág, kalapács, harisnya.

i) elnök, tábornok, császár, király.

j) ápoló, hercegprimás, szent, pap.

V

Take each word that you have underlined in IV above. Use it in a sentence.

Section E—How Did You Say It? (*Cont.*)

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section D. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check on pronunciation and the correctness of your Hungarian; if not, other members of the group will criticise.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting from two to five minutes.

Suggested Topics:

1. Tell the story of an opera you've been to.
2. Speak about one form of art, comparing the artists of different nations who have contributed.
3. Question a prisoner of war.
4. Give orders to requisition a certain set of military supplies (for example, medical).
5. Describe your Army career.
6. Interview a family on behalf of the Red Cross or the United Nations Relief and Rehabilitation Administration.
7. Do you think that a free college education should be made available to everyone?
8. What sort of industrial relations will there be, in your opinion, between Hungary and the U.S., in the near future?
9. What do you think will be the political position of Hungary in the near future?
10. You've probably studied foreign languages other than Hungarian. What do you think of the method by which you've learned Hungarian, and how does it compare with other methods?

VOCABULARY

HUNGARIAN-ENGLISH

A

a(z), the
ablak, window
ad, he gives
adnak, they play
ahogy, as
ajándék, gift
ajánl, he recommends
ajánlott, registered
ajtó, door
akar, he wants
aki, he who
aláír, he signs
alatt, below *or* within
alma, apple
almáspite, apple pie
alsó, lower
alsónadrág, shorts
alszik, he sleeps
altiszt, noncommissioned officer
anyám, my mother
anyósom, my mother-in-law
apám, my father
apósom, my father-in-law
aprópénz, small change
aratás, harvesting *or* reaping
arc, face
arisztokrata, aristocrat
aszpirin, aspirin
asztal, table
azaz, that is
azonban, however
azonkivül, moreover
azonnal, promptly

Á

ágy, bed
áll, he stands *or* it consists of
állam, state
állat, animal
állás, job
állomás, station
ápoló, medical corps man
ápolónő, nurse
ár, price
árok, trench
árpa, barley
áruház, department store
ásó, shovel
át, through *or* across

B

bajtárs, comrade
bal, left
baleset, accident
bank, bank
bankár, banker
barack, apricot
barát, friend
barna, brown
baromfi, poultry
bazilika, cathedral
bánik, he handles
bánya, mine
bátyám, my older brother
be, into
becsomagol, he packs
bejárat, entrance
belügyminisztérium, Ministry of the Interior
bemutat, he introduces
beszáll, he enters *or* steps in
beszéd, conversation *or* speech
beszél, he speaks
beteg, sick
betét, deposit
bezár, he locks
béke, peace
bérel, he rents
béres, hired laborer
bicikli, bicycle
biztositó intézet, insurance company
bocsánat, pardon
bokor, bush

bolgár, Bulgarian
bor, wine
borbély, barber
boriték, envelope
borotva, razor
borotvál, he shaves
borravaló, tip
borzasztó, terrible
bőr, skin
bujik, he hides
burgonya, potatoes
butor, furniture
buza, wheat

C

ceruza, pencil
cigány, gipsy
cim, address
cimez, he addresses
cipész, shoemaker
cipő, shoe
citrom, lemon
cukor, sugar

Cs

csacsi, silly *or* little donkey
csak, only
család, family
csalódik, he is mistaken
csapat, outfit
császár, emperor
cseh, Czech
csekk, check
cseresznye, cherry
cserkész, boy scout
csésze, cup
csinál, he makes *or* does
csirke, chicken
csodál, he is surprised *or* he admires
csokoládé, chocolate
csomag, package
csókol, he kisses
csónak, boat
csunya, ugly

D

darab, piece *or* play
de, but
dehogy, certainly not
deszka, lumber
detektiv, detective
dédanyám, my great-grandmother
dédapám, my great-grandfather
dédunokám, my great-grandchild
dél, noon *or* south
délelőtt, forenoon
délután, afternoon
diák, student
disznó, pig
doboz, box
dohány, tobacco
dohányzó, smoker
doktor, doctor
dolga van, he is busy
dolgozik, he works
drága, expensive
drót, wire

E

ebéd, lunch
ebédlő, dining room
egész, quite *or* whole *or* complete
egy, one
egyészségügyi csapat, medical corps
egyenes, straight
egyetem, university
egyik, one (of them)
egyszerü, simple
együtt, together
ejtőernyős, parachutist
eke, plough
el, away
elbocsát, he dismisses
elfelejt, he forgets
elfogad, he accepts
elhatároz, he decides
eljön, he comes away
ellen, against
ellenség, enemy
elnök, president
előmunkás, foreman
előre, ahead
először is, first of all
előtt, before
első, first
elsőrangu, first class
első segély, first aid
ember, man
emelet, floor

emlékszik, he remembers
enged, he allows *or* lets
eper, strawberry
erdő, forest
erőd, fort
esik, it falls *or* rains
eső, rain
eszik, he eats
evez, he rows
ez, this
ezer, thousand
ezred, regiment
ezredes, colonel

É

édes, sweet
éhes, hungry
éjjel, night
éjszaka, night
ékszer, jewel
éleslövő, sniper
élet, life
én, I
énekel, he sings
épen, just
épit, he builds
épület, building
érdekel, it interests me
érdekes, interesting
érdemes, worth while
érez, he feels
érkezik, he arrives
ért, he understands
és, and
észak, north
észre vesz, he notices
étkezés, meal
étkező(kocsi), diner, dining (car)
étlap, menu
év, year

F

fa, tree
fagy, it freezes
fagylalt, ice cream
falu, village
fáj, it hurts
fájdalomcsillapitó, sedative
fáradt, (he is) tired
fázik, he is cold
fegyver, arms *or* munitions
fehér, white
fej, head
fejfájás, headache
fekete, black (coffee)
fekszik, he lies
fel, up
felad, he mails
feldolgozik, he processes
felel, he answers
feleségem, my wife
felé, toward
felkel, he gets up
felkelt, he gets up someone
felszerelés, equipment
fertőtlenitő, disinfectant
fest, he paints
festő, painter
fél, he is afraid
fél, half
fény, light *or* brightness
fénykép, photo
férfi, man (male)
férjem, my husband
fiam, my son
fiatal, young
fillér, penny
film, picture, film
fiu, boy
fivérem, my brother
fizet, he pays
fog, he will
fog, tooth
fogalom, concept
foglal, he occupies
foglalkozás, occupation
fogoly, prisoner
fogyaszt, he consumes
folyamán, during
folyik, it flows
folyó, river
föld, ground *or* earth
földmüvelő, farmer
fő, chief *or* head *or* main
főispán, high sheriff
főpincér, headwaiter
főur, headwaiter
főváros, capital
főz, he cooks

főzelék, vegetable
francia, French
friss, fresh
futbal, soccer
függ, it depends
fürdő, bath

G

gabona, grain
gazdag, rich
gazdaság, economy *or* agriculture *or* housewifery
gép, machine
gépel, he types
gondol, he thinks
gőz, steam
gránát, grenade

Gy

gyalogság, infantry
gyapju, wool
gyár, factory
gyerek, child
gyomor, stomach
gyors, fast
gyógyszer, medicine
gyógyszerész, pharmacist
gyógyszertár, pharmacy
gyönyörü, wonderful
gyufa, match
gyülés, meeting
gyümölcs, fruit

H

ha, if
hadbiztossági szolgálat, quartermaster corps
hadnagy, lieutenant
hadosztály, division
hadsereg, army
hagy, he leaves *or* lets
hagyma, onion
haj, hair
hajó, ship
hal, fish
halászik, he is fishing
hall, he hears
hallgat, he listens
hallgató, (university) student
hamar, quickly
harisnya, stocking
hasonló, similar
használ, he uses
hat, six
haza, home
háboru, war
hála, gratitude
háló, bedroom
hány, how many
három, three
hát, well (*adverb*)
hát, back (*noun*)
ház, house
házi ipar, cottage industry
hegy, mountain
hely, place
hercegprimás, primate
hét, seven *or* week
hid, bridge
hideg, cold
hiradó, newsreel
hiradó osztály, signal corps
hires, famous
hisz, he believes
hiv, he calls
hivatalnok, clerk
hivatalos, official
hogy, that *or* how
hol, where
holnap, tomorrow
honnan, from where
honvédelem, national defense
hordár, porter
hordágy, litter
hosszu, long
hova, where to
hoz, he brings
hó, snow
hónap, month
hölgy, lady
hugom, my younger sister
hus, meat
hüvös, cool

I

ide, hither
idegen, stranger
idén, this year
idő, time *or* weather
igaz, true

igazol, he identifies
igazolvány, identification
igen, yes
igér, he promises
igy, in this way
illető, person in question
ilyen, this sort
indul, he starts
ing, shirt
ingyen, free (of charge)
inkább, rather
innen, from here
interurbán, long distance
inyekció, injection
ipar, industry
ir, he writes
iroda, office
iró, author
iskola, school
ismer, he knows
ismerős, acquaintance
istálló, stable
Isten, God
iszik, he drinks
ital, drink
itt, here
itthon, here at home

J

jaj, ouch! *or* oh!
jár, he walks *or* passes
játszik, he plays
jegy, ticket
jelenleg, at present
jelent, it means
jellegzetes, typical
jég, ice
jobb, right, better
jó, good
jön, he comes
jövő, future
juhász, shepherd

K

kabát, coat
kalap, hat
kalapács, hammer
kalauz, conductor
kanál, spoon
kanász, swineherd
kap, he gets
kaszál, he reaps
kaszárnya, barracks
katona, soldier
kártyázik, he plays cards
kávé, coffee
kávéház, café
kedves, dear
kefe, brush
kelet, east
kellemes, agreeable
kendő, cloth
kenyér, bread
keres, he earns *or* looks for
kereskedelem, commerce
kereskedés, store
kereszt, cross
kertész, gardener
kerül, it costs
kerület, district
kettő, two
kevés, few *or* little
kezdődik, it begins
kezelő, operator
kék, blue
kép, picture
képviselő, representative
kér, he asks
kérdez, he questions
kés, knife
késik, he is late
késő, late
kész, ready
készit, he prepares
kéz, hand
ki, out
ki, who
kiabál, he shouts
kiállitás, exhibition
kifejlődik, he develops
kijárat, exit
kilenc, nine
kiló, kilogram
kimond, he pronounces
király, king
kirándulás, excursion
kis, small *or* little *or* some
kisasszony, Miss
kisgazda, small farmer

kiszolgálás, service
kiváncsi, he is curious
klozet, toilet
kocsi, car
komoly, serious
konzerv doboz, tin can
konyha, kitchen
kora, early
korcsolyázik, he skates
korház, hospital
kormányzó, regent
kosár, basket
költő, poet
könnyü, easy
könyv, book
könyvtár, library
körmenet, procession
körte, pear
körül, around *or* about
körülbelül, about
köszönöm, thank you
köt, he binds
kötél, rope
kötszer, bandage
követ, legate *or* ambassador *or* envoy
közben, meanwhile
közel, near
közép, middle
közlegény, private
központ, exchange
köztársaság, republic
kukorica, corn
kulacs, canteen
kultuszminisztérium, Ministry of Education
kut, well
küld, he sends
külföldi, foreigner
különös, special
külügyminisztérium, Ministry of Foreign Affairs

L

lakik, he dwells *or* lives at
lap, sheet *or* newspaper
lassu, slow
lámpa, lamp
lány, girl (daughter)
lát, he sees
látogat, he visits
látszik, he seems
láz, fever
le, down
lehet, it is possible
lengyel, Polish
lesz, will be
letartóztat, he arrests
levelezőlap, postcard
leves, soup
levél, letter
lé, juice
légerő, air force
lép, he steps
létra, ladder
lovasság, cavalry
ló, horse
lő, he shoots
lőszer, ammunition

M

ma (**máma**), today
maga, self *or* you
magas, high
magyaráz, he explains
Magyarország, Hungary
majdnem, almost
malom, mill
marad, he remains
már, already
másik, other
második, second
meddig, till when
meg, and *or* plus
meg, wholly
megáll, he stops
megbecsül, he esteems *or* appreciates
megelégedve, satisfied
megérkezik, he arrives
meghal, he dies
megjavit, he repairs
megmutat, he shows
megszólit, he addresses
megy, he goes
meleg, warm
mellett, by
melyik, which
mentők, ambulance
menyem, my daughter-in-law
mennyi, how much
merre, in which direction

mert, because
messze, far
mező, field
még, yet *or* still
mérgezés, poisoning
mérnök, engineer
mi, what
milyen, what sort
mindakét, both
minden, every
mindenki, everybody
mindig, always
mindjárt, immediately
minek, what for
minél . . . annál, by what . . . by that
miniszter, minister
minisztérium, ministry
minőség, quality
mint, than
minta, sample
miután, since
molnár, miller
mond, he says
mosás, laundry
mosdó, washbowl
most, now
mozi, movie
mögött, behind
mulató(hely), night club
mult, past
mulva, after
munka, work
must, must
muzeum, museum
mühely, workshop
müszaki csapat, engineers
müszer, instrument
müvész, artist

N

na, well
nadrág, trousers
nagy, great *or* large *or* big
nagyapám, my grandfather
nagybátyám, my uncle
nagyipar, heavy industry
nagynéném, my aunt
nagyszerü, terrific
nap, day
narancs, orange
ne, don't
negyed, quarter
nehéz, heavy
nem, no(t)
nemsokára, soon
nemzet, nation
nevet, he laughs
négy, four
néha, sometimes
néhány, a couple
nélkül, without
német, German
néném, my older sister
név, name
néz, he looks
nincs, there is not
nős, married (man)
nővérem, my sister
nulla, zero

Ny

nyár, summer
nyers, raw
nyitva, open
nyolc, eight
nyugat, west
nyul, he reaches

O

olasz, Italian
olcsó, cheap
oldal, side
olló, scissors
olvas, he reads
olvasni való, reading matter
olyan, that sort
opera, opera
operál, he operates
orosz, Russian
ország, country *or* nation
országház, parliament
országut, highway
orvos, doctor
orvosság, medicine
osztály, class
ott, there
otthon, at home there

ó

ól, roost *or* sty
óra, hour, watch
óta, since (time)

ö

öcsém, my younger brother
öltözik, he gets dressed
ön, you
öreg, old
örül, he is glad
összes, all *or* total
öt, five
ötlet, idea

ő

ő, he *or* she
őrmester, sergeant
őrnagy, major
ősz, fall (the season)

P

palota, palace
pap, priest
papir, paper
paprika, paprika
paradicsom, tomato
parancsol, he orders
parancsnokság, command
paraszt, peasant
part, shore
patkol, he shoes (a horse)
pálinka, brandy
pályaudvar, station
páncélos erő, armored command
pár, pair
penge, blade
pengő, pengő
perc, minute
persze, of course
példa, example
pénz, money
pénztár, cashier's office
pénzügyminisztérium, treasury
piac, market
pihenés, rest
pilóta, pilot
pince, cellar
pincér, waiter
pipa, pipe
piros, red
pisztoly, pistol
pite, pie
poggyász, baggage
pohár, glass
polgármester, mayor
pont, exactly *or* dot
porcellán, china
pósta(hivatal), post (office)
póstás, mailman
prés, press
puska, rifle

R

randevu, date
rang, rank
rádió, radio
ráér, he can wait
regény, novel
reggeli, of morning
reggeli, breakfast
reggelizik, he has breakfast
rendben van, it's OK
rendel, he orders
rendőr, policeman
remél, he hopes
repülő, flier *or* aviator
repülőgép, airplane
retek, radish
régi, old
részlet, detail
rokon, relative
román, Rumanian
rossz, bad
rozs, rye
rózsa, rose
rövid, short
rövidharisnya, socks
ruha, clothes

S

saját, own
sajnál, he is sorry
sajnos, unfortunately *or* alas
sakkozik, he plays chess
saláta, salad
sátor, tent
se(m), not either
seb, wound

sebesült, wounded
sebész, surgeon
segéd, helper, (store) clerk
segit, he helps
segitség, help
selyem, silk
semmi, nothing
siet, he hurries
sofór, driver
sok, much *or* many
soká, a long time
sonka, ham
sor, line
sógorom, (a kinship term)
sör, beer
sörözik, he is having beer
spárga, string
sulyos, heavy *or* serious
sürgöny, telegram

Sz

szabad, it is permitted *or* free
szabó, tailor
szakszervezet, trade union
szappan, soap
szavaz, he votes
szálloda, hotel
szállit, he transports
szám, number
számára, for him
számla, bill *or* check
szántás, ploughing
száz, hundred
százados, captain
szed, he picks *or* gathers
szegény, poor
szekér, cart
szemben, opposite
személy, person
személyvonat, local train
szent, saint
szerb, Serbian
szerelem, love
szerencse, luck
szeret, he likes *or* loves
szerez, he gets
szerszám, instrument
szervusz, hello
szék, chair
szén, coal
szép, beautiful *or* nice *or* pretty
sziget, island
szilva, plum
szinész, actor
szinház, theater
sziv, heart
szivesség, favor
szlovák, Slovak
szoba, room
szobalány, chambermaid
szobrász, sculptor
szokott, he does customarily
szolga, servant
szolgál, he serves
szomjas, thirsty
szomszéd, neighbor
szó, word
szól, he speaks *or* it rings
szórakozás, entertainment *or* fun
szög, nail
szövógyár, textile mill
szőló, grape
szunyogháló, mosquito netting
szurony, bayonet
szücs, furrier
szükség, need
szüleim, my parents
szüret, vintaging

T

takaró, blanket
talál, he finds
találkozik, he meets
talán, perhaps
tanár, professor
tank, tank
tanuló, student
tanya, farmstead
tart, he keeps
tavasz, spring
taxi, cab
tábor, camp
tábori rendőr, military police
tábornok, general
táncol, he dances
te, you (thou)
tea, tea
tegnap, yesterday
tehén, cow

viszontlátásra, good-bye
vissza, back (*adverb*, *preverb*)
viz, water
volt, (there) **was**
vonal, line
vonat, train
vörös, red
vőm, (kinship term; *see* **vejem**)

Z

zaj, noise
zárva, closed
zene, music
zeneakadémia, music academy
zöld, green

Zs

zseb, pocket
zsebkendő, handkerchief
zsemle, roll

blade, penge
blanket, takaró
bleeding, vérzés
blue, kék
boat, csónak
book, könyv
both, mindakettő
box, doboz
boy, fiu
boy scout, cserkész
brandy, pálinka
bread, kenyér
breakfast, reggeli
bridge, hid
brightness, fény
brings, hoz
broth, husleves
brother, my, fivérem
brother, my older, bátyám
brother, my younger, öcsém
brown, barna
brush, kefe
building, épület
builds, épit
Bulgarian, bolgár
bush, bokor
busy, he is, dolga van
but, de
butter, vaj
buys, vásárol, vesz
by, mellett

C

cab, taxi
café, kávéház
calls, hiv
camp, tábor
canteen, kulacs
capital, főváros
captain, százados
car, kocsi
cart, szekér
cashier's office, pénztár
castle, vár
cathedral, bazilika
cavalry, lovasság
cellar, pince
certainly not, dehogy
chair, szék
chambermaid, szobalány
changes, átöltözik
cheap, olcsó
check, csekk, számla
cherry, cseresznye
chess, he plays, sakkozik
chicken, csirke
chief, fő
child, gyerek
china, porcellán
chocolate, csokoládé
chooses, választ
church, templom
class, osztály
clean, tiszta
cleans, tisztit

clerk, hivatalnok
closed, zárva
cloth, kendő
clothes, ruha
clumsy, ügyetlen
coal, szén
coat, kabát
coffee, kávé
cold, hideg
cold, he is, fázik
colonel, ezredes
comes, jön
command, parancsnokság
commerce, kereskedelem
complete, egész
comrade, bajtárs
concept, fogalom
conductor, kalauz
consists of, áll
consumes, fogyaszt
conversation, beszéd
cooks, főz
cool, hüvös
corn, kukorica
corporal, tizedes
costs, kerül
cottage industry, házi ipar
cotton, vatta
country, ország, vidék, nemzet
county, vármegye
couple, néhány
court, udvar
cow, tehén

cross, kereszt
cucumber, uborka
cup, csésze
curious, he is, kiváncsi
customarily, he does, szokott
cuts, vág
Czech, cseh

D

dances, táncol
danger, veszély
date, randevu
daughter, lány
daughter-in-law, my, menyem
day, nap
dear, kedves
decides, elhatároz
department store, áruház
depends, függ
deposit, betét
dessert, tészta
detail, részlet
detective, detektiv
develops, kifejlődik
dies, meghal
diner, étkező(kocsi)
dining room, ebédlő
dinner, vacsora
disinfectant, fertőtlenitő
dismisses, elbocsát
district, kerület
division, hadosztály
doctor, doktor, orvos
does, csinál
donkey, little, csacsi
don't, ne
door, ajtó
dot, pont
dough, tészta
down, le
dozen, tucat
dressed, gets, öltözik
drink, ital
drinks, iszik
driver, sofőr
during, folyamán
dwells, lakik

E

early, kora
earns, keres
earth, föld
east, kelet
easy, könnyü
eats, eszik
economy, gazdaság
egg, tojás
eight, nyolc
electricity, villany
elects, választ
emperor, császár
end, vég
enemy, ellenség
engineer, mérnök
engineers, müszaki csapat
enters, beszáll
entertainment, szórakozás
entrance, bejárat
envelope, boriték
envoy, követ
equipment, felszerelés
esteems, megbecsül
every, minden
everybody, mindenki
exactly, pont
example, példa
exchange, központ
exchanges, vált
excursion, kirándulás
exhibit, kiállitás
exit, kijárat
expensive, drága
explains, magyaráz

F

face, arc
factory, gyár
fall, ősz
falls, esik
familiar, ismerős
family, család
famous, hires
far, messze
farmer, földmüvelő, földmüves
farmstead, tanya
fast, gyors
father, my, apám
father-in-law, my, apósom
favor, szivesség

feels, érez
fever, láz
few, kevés
field, mező
fills, tölt
finds, talál
first, első
first aid, első segély
first class, elsőrangu
fish, hal
fishing, he is, halászik
five, öt
flier, repülő
floor, emelet
flows, folyik
for you *or* **him,** számára
foreman, elő nunkás
forenoon, délelőtt
forest, erdő
foreign, külföldi
Foreign Office, külügyminisztérium
forgets, elfelejt
fork, villa
fort, erőd
fountain pen, töltőtoll
four, négy
free, ingyen
freezes, fagy
French, francia
fresh, friss
friend, barát
from here, innen
from where, honnan
fruit, gyümölcs
full, it is, tele van
fun, szórakozás
furniture, butor
furrier, szűcs
future, jövő

G

gardener, kertész
gathers, szed
general, tábornok
gentleman, úr
German, német
gets, kap, szerez
gets up, felkel
gift, ajándék
gipsy, cigány
girl, lány
gives, ad
glad, he is, örül
glass, pohár
God, Isten
goes, megy
good, jó
good-bye, viszontlátásra
grain, gabona
grandchild, my, unokám
grandfather, my, nagyapám
grandmother, my, nagyanyám
grape, szőlő
gratitude, hála
great, nagy
great-grandchild, my, dédunokám
great-grandfather, my, dédapám
great-grandmother, my, dédanyám
great-great-grandchild, my, ükunokám
great-great-grandfather, my, ükapám
great-great-grandmother, my, ükanyám
green, zöld
grenade, gránát
ground, föld

H

hair, haj
half, fél
ham, sonka
hammer, kalapács
hand, kéz
handkerchief, zsebkendő
handles, bánik
happens, történik
harvesting, aratás
hat, kalap
he, ő
head, fej, fő
headache, fejfájás
headwaiter, főpincér
hears, hall
heart, sziv
heavy, nehéz, sulyos
heavy industry, nagyipar
hello, szervusz
helper, segéd
helps, segit
here, itt
hides, bujik

high, magas
high sheriff, főispán
highway, országut
hired laborer, béres
hither, ide
holiday, ünnep
home, haza
home, here at, itthon
home, there at, otthon
honors, tisztel
hopes, remél
horse, ló
hospital, korház
hot, meleg
hotel, szálloda
hour, óra
how, hogy, milyen
how many, hány
however, azonban
hundred, száz
Hungarian, magyar
Hungary, Magyarország
hungry, éhes
hunts, vadászik
hurries, siet
hurts, it, fáj
husband, férj

I

I, én
ice, jég
ice cream, fagylalt
idea, ötlet
identification, igazolvány
identifies, igazol
if, ha
immediately, mindjárt
in that way, ugy
in this way, igy
industry, ipar
infantry, gyalogság
injection, inyekció
ink, tinta
instrument, müszer, szerszám
insurance company, biztositó intézet
interesting, érdekes
into, be
introduces, bemutat
iron, vas
island, sziget
Italy, Olaszország

J

jewel, ékszer
job, állás
joke, vicc
juice, lé
just, épen

K

keeps, tart
kilogram, kiló
king, király
kisses, csókol
kitchen, konyha
knife, kés
knows, ismer, tud

L

ladder, létra
lady, hölgy, urasszony
lake, tó
lamp, lámpa
large, nagy
late, késő
laughs, nevet
laundry, mosás
law, törvény
lawyer, ügyvéd
leaves, hagy
left, bal
legate, követ
lemon citrom
lets, enged, hagy
letter, levél
library, könyvtár
lies, fekszik
lieutenant, hadnagy
life, élet
light, the, fény
light, könnyü
light bulb, villanykörte
likes, szeret
line, sor, vonal
listens, hallgat
litter, hordágy
little, kevés, kis
lives at, lakik
local train, személyvonat

locks, bezár
long, hosszu
long distance, interurbán
long time, soká
looks, néz
looks for, keres
love, szerelem
loves, szeret
lower, alsó
luck, szerencse
lumber, deszka
lunch, ebéd

M

machine, gép
mailman, póstás
mails, felad
main, fő
major, őrnagy
makes, csinál
man, ember
man (male), férfi
many, sok
market, piac, vásár
married, he is, nős
married, she is, férjnél van
match, gyufa
mayor, polgármester
meal, étkezés
means, jelent
meanwhile, közben
meat, hus
medical corps, egészségügyi csapat
medic(al corps man), ápoló
medicine, gyógyszer, orvosság
meeting, gyülés
meets, találkozik
menu, étlap
middle, közép
military policeman, tábori rendőr
milk, tej
mill, malom
miller, molnár
mine, the, bánya
minister, miniszter
ministry, minisztérium
Ministry of Education, kultuszminisztérium
Ministry of Foreign Affairs, külügyminisztérium
Ministry of the Interior, belügyminisztérium
minute, perc
Miss, kisasszony
mistaken, he is, csalódik
money, pénz
month, hónap
more, több
moreover, azonkivül
mosquito netting, szunyogháló
mother, my, anyám
mother-in-law, my, anyósom
mountain, hegy
movie, mozi
Mr., ur
much, sok
museum, muzeum
music, zene
music academy, zene akadémia
must, the, must

N

nail, szög
name, név
nation, nemzet, ország
national defense, honvédelem
naturally, természetesen
near, közel
need, szükség
neighbor, szomszéd
new, uj
news, ujság
newspaper, ujság, lap
newsreel, hiradó
nice, szép
night, éjjel, éjszaka
night club, mulató(hely)
nine, kilenc
no(t), nem
noise, zaj
noncommissioned officer, altiszt
noon, dél
north, észak
not either, se(m)
nothing, semmi
notices, észre vesz
novel, regény
now, most
number, szám
nurse, ápolónő

tej, milk
tele van, it is full
telefonál, he phones
telek, plot (of ground)
templom, church
termés, produce
természetesen, naturally
testvérem, my brother *or* sister
tesz, he puts
tetszik, it pleases
textil, textile
tél, winter
tészta, dessert *or* dough
tinta, ink
tiszt, officer
tiszta, clean
tisztel, he honors
tiz, ten
tizedes, corporal
tojás, egg
tő, lake
több, more
tölt, he fills
töltőtoll, fountain pen
történik, it happens
törvény, law
tucat, dozen
tud, he knows
tudós, scientist
tul, too
tulajdonos, owner
tulórázik, he works overtime
türülköző, towel
tüzérség, artillery

U

uborka, cucumber
udvar, court
ugy, so
uj, new
ujság, news(paper)
unokám, my grandchild
ur, Mr. *or* gentleman
urasszony, lady
ut, road
utlevél, passport
utazik, he travels
után, after
utca (ucca), street

Ü

ügyetlen, clumsy
ügyvéd, lawyer
ükanyám, my great-great-grandmother
ükapám, my great-great-grandfather
ükunokám, my great-great-grandchild
ül, he sits
ünnep, holiday
üzlet, shop *or* store

V

vacsora, dinner
vacsorázik, he dines
vadászik, he hunts
vagy, or
vaj, butter
valami, some(thing)
vas, iron
vasal, he presses
vatta, cotton
vág, he cuts
válasz, reply
választ, he chooses *or* elects
vált, he exchanges
vár, he waits
vár, castle
vármegye, county
város, town
vásár, market
vásárol, he buys
vejem, my son-in-law
vendéglő, restaurant
ver, he beats
vers, poem
vesz, he buys
veszély, danger
veteményes kert, vegetable garden
vetés, sowing
vége, its end
vérzés, bleeding
vicc, joke
vidék, country *or* region
világ, world
villa, fork
villany, electricity
villanyos (villamos), street-car
villanykörte, light bulb
visz, he takes

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH–HUNGARIAN

A

a(n), egy
about, körül(belül)
accepts, elfogad
accident, baleset
acquaintance, ismerős
across, át
actor, szinész
address, cim
addresses, megszólit
admires, csodál
afraid, he is, fél
after, után
afternoon, délután
against, ellen
agreeable, kellemes
agriculture, gazdaság
ahead, előre
air force, légerő
airplane, repülőgép
alas, sajnos
all, összes, mind
allows, enged
almost, majdnem
already, már
always, mindig
ambassador, követ
ambulance, mentők
ammunition, lőszer
and, és, meg
animal, állat
announces, bejelent
answers, felel
apple, alma
appreciates, megbecsül
apricot, barack
aristocrat, arisztokrata
armored command, páncélos erő
arms, fegyver
army, hadsereg
around, körül
arrests, letartóztat
arrives, érkezik
artillery, tüzérség
artist, müvész
as, ahogy
asks, kér
aspirin, aszpirin
at present, jelenleg
aunt, my, nagynéném
author, iró
aviator, repülő
away, el

B

back, the, hát
back, vissza
bad, rossz
baggage, poggyász
bandage, kötszer
bank, bank
banker, bankár
barber, borbély
barley, árpa
barracks, kaszárnya
basket, kosár
bath, fürdő
bayonet, szurony
beats, ver
beautiful, szép
because, mert
bed, ágy
bedroom, háló(szoba)
beer, sör
before, előtt
begins, kezdődik
behind, mögött
believes, hisz
below, alatt
big, nagy
bicycle, bicikli
bill, számla
binds, köt
black, fekete

O

occupation, foglalkozás
occupies, foglal
of course, persze
office, iroda
officer, tiszt
official, hivatalos
oh, jaj
O.K., rendben van
old, öreg, régi
one, egy
onion, hagyma
only, csak
open, nyitva
opera, opera
operates, operál
operator, kezelő
opposite, szemben
or, vagy
orange, narancs
orders, parancsol, rendel
other, másik
out, ki
outfit, csapat
own, saját
owner, tulajdonos

P

package, csomag
packs, becsomagol
painter, festő
paints, fest
pair, pár
palace, palota
paper, papir
paprika, paprika
parachutist, ejtőernyős
pardon, I beg your, bocsánatot kérek
parents, my, szüleim
parliament, országház
passable, járható
passport, utlevél
past, mult
pays, fizet
peace, béke
pear, körte
peasant, paraszt
pencil, ceruza
pengő, pengő
penny, fillér
perhaps, talán
permitted, szabad
person, személy
person in question, illető
pharmacist, gyógyszerész
pharmacy, gyógyszertár
phones, telefonál
photo, fénykép
picks, szed
picture, film, kép
pie, pite
piece, darab
pig, disznó
pilot, pilóta
pipe, pipa
pistol, pisztoly
place, hely
play, darab
plays, they play, játszik, adnak
plays cards, kártyázik
pleases, tetszik
plot (of ground), telek
plough, eke
ploughing, szántás
plum, szilva
plus, meg
poem, vers
poet, költő
point, pont
poisoning, mérgezés
policeman, rendőr
Polish, lengyel
poor, szegény
porter, hordár
possible, lehet
postcard, levelezőlap
post office, pósta(hivatal)
potatoes, burgonya
poultry, baromfi
prepares, készit
present, ajándék
president, elnök
press, prés
presses, vasal
pretty, szép
price, ár
priest, pap
primate, hercegprimás
prisoner, fogoly

private, közlegény
processes, feldolgozik
procession, körmenet
produce, termés
professor, tanár
promises, igér
promptly, azonnal
pronounces, kimond
puts, tesz

Q

quality, minőség
quarter, negyed
quartermaster corps, hadbiztossági szolgálat
questions, kérdez
quickly, hamar
quite, egész

R

radish, retek
radio, rádió
rains, esik
rank, rang
rather, inkább
raw, nyers
razor, borotva
reaches, nyul
reads, olvas
ready, kész
reaps, kaszál
receives, kap
recommends, ajánl
red, piros, vörös
regent, kormányzó
regiment, ezred
region, vidék
registered, ajánlott
relative, rokon
remains, marad
remembers, emlékszik
rents, bérel
repairs, megjavit
reply, válasz
representative, képviselő
republic, köztársaság
rest, pihenés
restaurant, vendéglő
rich, gazdag
rifle, puska
right, jobb
rings, szól
river, folyó
road, ut
roll, zsemle
room, szoba
roost, ól
rope, kötél
rose, rósza
rows, evez
Rumanian, román
Russian, orosz
rye, rozs

S

saint, szent
salad, saláta
sample, minta
satisfied, megelégedve
says, mond
school, iskola
scientist, tudós
scissors, olló
sculptor, szobrász
sedative, fájdalomcsillapitó
seems, látszik
sees, lát
self, maga
sends, küld
Serbian, szerb
sergeant, őrmester
serious, sulyos, komoly
servant, szolga
service, kiszolgálás
serves, szolgál
seven, hét
shaves, borotvál
she, ő
sheet, lap
shepherd, juhász
ship, hajó
shirt, ing
shoe, cipő
shoemaker, cipész
shoes (horse), patkol
shoots, lő
shop, üzlet
shore, part
short, rövid
shorts, alsónadrág

shouts, kiabál
shovel, ásó
shows, mutat
sick, beteg
side, oldal
signal corps, hiradó osztály
signs, aláír
silk, selyem
silly, csacsi
similar, hasonló
simple, egyszerü
since, miután, óta
sings, énekel
sister, my, nővérem
sister, my older, néném
sister, my younger, hugom
sits, ül
six, hat
skates, korcsolyázik
skin, bőr
sleeps, alszik
Slovak, szlovák
slow, lassu
small, kis
small change, aprópénz
small farmer, kisgazda
smoker, dohányzó
sniper, éleslövő
snow, hó
soap, szappan
soccer, futbal
socks, rövidharisnya
soldier, katona
some, kis
something, valami
sometimes, néha
son, my, fiam
son-in-law, my, vejem, vőm
soon, nemsokára
sorry, he is, sajnál
soup, leves
south, dél
sowing, vetés
speaks, beszél, szól
special, különös
speech, beszéd
spoon, kanál
spring, tavasz
stable, istálló
stands, áll
starts, indul
state, állam
station, állomás, pályaudvar
steam, gőz
steps, lép
steps in, beszáll
still, még
stocking, harisnya
stomach, gyomor
stops, megáll
store, kereskedés, üzlet
straight, egyenes
stranger, idegen
strawberry, eper
street, utca, ucca
street-car, villanyos, villamos
string, spárga
student, diák, hallgató, tanuló
sty, ól
sugar, cukor
summer, nyár
surgeon, sebész
surprised, he is, csodál
sweet, édes
swineherd, kanász

T

table, asztal
tailor, szabó
takes, visz
tank, tank
tea, tea
telegram, sürgöny
ten, tiz
tent, sátor
terrible, borzasztó
terrific, nagyszerü
textile, textil
textile mill, szövőgyár
than, mint
thank you, köszönöm
that, az, hogy
that is, azaz
that sort, olyan
the, a(z)
theatre, szinház
there is not, nincs
thinks, gondol
thirsty, szomjas

this, ez
this sort, ilyen
this year, idén
thou (you), te
thousand, ezer
three, három
through, át
ticket, jegy
time, idő
tin can, konzerv doboz
tip, borravaló
tired, fáradt
tobacco, dohány
today, ma, máma
together, együtt
toilet, klozet
tomato, paradicsom
tomorrow, holnap
too, tul
tooth, fog
total, összes
toward, felé
towel, türülköző
town, város
trade union, szakszervezet
train, vonat
transports, szállit
travels, utazik
treasury, pénzügyminisztérium
tree, fa
trench, árok
trousers, nadrág
true, igaz
two, kettő
types, gépel
typical, jellegzetes

U

ugly, csunya
uncle, my, nagybátyám
understands, ért
unfortunately, sajnos
university, egyetem
up, fel, föl
uses, használ

V

vegetable, főzelék
vegetable garden, veteményes kert
village, falu
vintaging, szüret
visits, látogat
votes, szavaz

W

wait, it can, ráér
waiter, pincér
waits, vár
wants, akar, parancsol
war, háboru
warm, meleg
warm, he is, melege van
was, volt
washbowl, mosdó
water, viz
weather, idő
week, hét
well, hát, na
well, the, kut
west, nyugat
what, mi
what for, minek
what sort, milyen
wheat, buza
when, mikor
where, hol
where to, hova
which, melyik
white, fehér
who, ki
whole, egész
wholly, meg
wife, my, feleségem
will, fog
will be, lesz
window, ablak
wine, bor
winter, tél
wire, drót
within, alatt
without, nélkül
wonderful, gyönyörü
wool, gyapju
word, szó
work, munka
works, dolgozik
works overtime, tulórázik
workshop, műhely
world, világ

worth while, it is, érdemes
wound, seb
wounded, sebesült
writer, iró
writes, ir

Y

year, év
yes, igen
yesterday, tegnap
yet, még
you, ön, maga, te
young, fiatal

Z

zero, nulla

INDEX

(Numbers refer to pages. English meanings in italics. Hungarian meanings in bold face.)

a, pronounced, 13
aa, pronounced: *see* **á**
accent, 15
accommodations, 112, 146
adjective, comparison of, 271
adverbs, 256
agriculture, 421
as, suffix meaning, 75
at, suffix meaning, 75, 179
auxiliary vowel, 35
az, with suffixes, 157
á, pronounced, 13, 135
banks, 321
be: to be, 53
belonging, suffix meaning, 387
c, pronounced, 14, 89
can (verb), ways of saying, 327
collective suffix, 388
compounds, 427
conditional, present, 272
connective words, 342
cool: keeping cool, 236
coordinate phrases, 342
cs, pronounced, 14, 90
culture, 436
č, pronounced: *see* **cs**
dates, 192, 196
directions, 6, 81
double consonants, pronounced, 15, 49, 50, 71, 90, 91, 118, 136
dy, pronounced: *see* **gy**
e, pronounced, 13
eating, 18, 41, 59, 102, 150, 163, 202
ee, pronounced: *see* **é**
emergency expressions, 354
entertainment, 264, 282
ez, with suffixes, 157
é, pronounced, 13, 135
foods, 9
for, suffix meaning, 313
from, suffix meaning, 96, 179
from inside, suffix meaning, 119, 178
from surface, suffix meaning, 142, 179
g, pronounced, 14
games, 264
government, 380, 389, 391
greetings, 4
gy, pronounced, 14, 70
hospitals, 349
how, words for, 257
i, pronounced, 13
imperative, 289
industry, 409
infinitives, 193
information, 17, 126
inside, suffix meaning, 73, 178
into, suffix meaning, 74, 178
introductions, 40, 53
is, use of, 343
j, pronounced, 14, 49
judgment words, 341
kinship terms, 443
lack, suffix meaning, 357
lesz, pronounced, 90
ly, pronounced: *see* **j**
mail, 122, 306
meeting people, 28
miért, pronounced, 230
military, the, 395
names, 52
nouns: classification, 211; stems, 120; tables, 213
numbers, 12, 142, 174, 176
ny, pronounced, 14
o, pronounced, 13
object, suffix of the direct, 35
offices, 335
onto, suffix meaning, 74, 179
oo, pronounced: *see* **ó**
outing, 363
ó, pronounced, 13, 135
ö, pronounced, 33, 136, 157
öö, pronounced: *see* **ő**
ő, pronounced, 33, 135, 136, 157

past, 242
person, suffix meaning, 139, 159
pertaining to, suffix meaning, 229
plural, suffixes of, 51, 159
possessive pronouns, 139
preverbs, 257
price, 10
pronouns, 157, 197, 313
proverbs, 278, 371, 391, 404, 417, 432
questions, 368
r, pronounced, 69, 136
relatives, 59, 101, 443
s, pronounced (English): *see* **sz**
s, pronounced (Hungarian), 14, 118
shopping, 19, 100, 185, 203
sight-seeing, 167, 181
sounds, influence on each other, 70, 92, 137, 156
spelling, Hungarian, 71, 92, 211
sports, 264
sprucing up, 129
suffixed suffixes, 197
sz, pronounced, 14, 118
š, pronounced: *see* **s** (Hungarian)
time, 11, 195; suffix meaning, 119
to, suffix meaning, 141, 177, 179
trades, 44
travelling, 221
ts, pronounced: *see* **c**
ty, pronounced, 14, 70; *see also* **gy**
u, pronounced, 13
until, suffix meaning, 96
upon surface, suffix meaning, 177, 178
ü, pronounced, 33, 136, 157
verbs, 193, 227; changed to nouns, 356; other verbs, 388, 415; tables, 315, 328
visiting, 250
vowel harmony, 72, 142
weather, 84
when, words for, 257
where, words for, 256
wife of, suffix meaning, 388
with, suffix meaning, 96
word analysis, 400
y, pronounced: *see* **j**
you, ways of saying, 94
z, pronounced, 118
zs, pronounced, 117